



User's Guide

Converged Network Adapters

41xxx Series

Document Revision History	
Revision A, April 28, 2017	
Revision B, August 24, 2017	
Revision C, October 1, 2017	
Revision D, January 31, 2018	
Changes	Sections Affected
Updated EMI/EMC requirements: ■ CE Mark EMC Directive Compliance ■ Replaced EN55022 with EN55032. ■ VCCI ■ AS/NZS ■ Added CNS 13438:2006 Class A Added VCCI statement Updated product safety compliance: ■ Updated UL and UL CSA compliance for 2014 ■ Deleted the 2006/95/EC low voltage directive ■ Updated TUV EN60950-1 and TUV IEC 60950-1 Updated Table 3-5: ■ Added a column showing ESXi driver versions. ■ Added a footnote explaining that the NIC and RoCE drivers are packaged together for ESXi 6.5. Added a note to Step 4 stating that NPAR is not available on ports with a maximum speed of 1G. Updated the descriptions in Step 2 for 1 Gbps and SmartAN. Added a note explaining the difference between the source MAC address used by LLDP packets and the factory-assigned adapter Ethernet MAC address. Updated Table 6-1 to add a column for OFED 4.8-1 GA. Remove RHEL 7.2, SLES 11 SP4, and SLES 12 SP2. Add RHEL 7.4, SLES 12 SP3, CentOS 7.3, and CentOS 7.4 Updated Step 2 to add the Dynamic option.	“EMI and EMC Requirements” on page xxii “VCCI: Class A” on page xxiv “Product Safety Compliance” on page xxiv “VMware Drivers and Driver Packages” on page 27 “Getting Started” on page 39 “Configuring NIC Parameters” on page 44 “Configuring Data Center Bridging” on page 47 “Supported Operating Systems and OFED” on page 63 “Preparing the Adapter” on page 65

Updated Table 6-2 to add the Quality of Service property Removed RoCE Applications and Usage subsections and promoted “Configuring a Paravirtual RDMA Device (PVRDMA)” on page 83 Updated the procedure introduction to read: <i>To configure iWARP through HII in Default mode.</i> Updated Step 4b, to remove the IWARP+RoCE option. Updated Step 8, to correct DCB to iWARP. Deleted former Step 2: <i>Unzip rdma-core-master.zip, and then issue following commands . . .</i> Moved the former <i>Chapter 11, iSER Configuration</i> to following <i>Chapter 7, iWARP Configuration</i>. Updated the second paragraph to remove the non-offload method (iSCSI SW) and to rename the offload method (iSCSI HW) as UEFI iSCSI HBA. Updated Step 5 to select Boot Protocol, and then press ENTER to select UEFI iSCSI HBA. Replaced Figure 9-5. Updated the first sentence to read <i>To install RHEL 7.4. and later:</i> Updated Step 4 to include <code>modprobe.blacklist=qedr</code> in the command line. Updated the command line in Step 12. Added Steps 13 through 18. Updated Step 1 to set Boot Protocol to Legacy PXE. Updated Step 3, boot parameter command for RHEL 6.x and 7.x, removing SLES 12 (first bullet) and added a boot parameter command for SLES 11 SP4 and SLES 12 SP1/SP2/SP3 (second bullet). Replaced migration steps with Step 5 to include L4 offload boot migration instructions for RHEL 6.9, RHEL 7.2/7.3/7.4, SLES 11 SP4, SLES 12 SP1/SP2, and SLES12 SP1/SP2 with MPIO.	“Configuring RoCE on the Adapter for Windows Server” on page 67 “Configuring RoCE on the Adapter for ESX” on page 80 “Preparing the Adapter for iWARP” on page 86 “iWARP RDMA-Core Support on SLES 12 SP3, RHEL 7.4, and OFED 4.8x” on page 96 Chapter 8 iSER Configuration “iSCSI Boot” on page 107 “Adapter UEFI Boot Mode Configuration” on page 111 “Configuring iSCSI Boot from SAN for RHEL 7.4” on page 129 “Open-iSCSI and Boot from SAN Considerations” on page 145
---	---

Moved, renamed, and revised the section formerly known as Configuring iSCSI Boot from SAN for SLES 12 SP1/SP2. In Step 1, changed the command <code># lsmod grep qedf libfcoe</code> to <code># lsmod grep qedf</code> Added the procedure to blacklist inbox drivers for RHEL 7.4 boot from SAN Added a note to mount the DUD ISO image through virtual media for SLES 12 SPx. Updated Step 5 and Figure 11-2 to include NPAR + SR-IOV. Updated Step 13 to obtain the most recent adapter drivers for your OS, and not to use inbox drivers. Updated Step 16 to obtain the most recent adapter drivers for your OS, not to use inbox drivers, and to match driver versions on the host and VM. Updated Step 17 to obtain the most recent adapter drivers for your OS, not to use inbox drivers, and to match driver versions on the host and VM. Added an introductory paragraph explaining that target server configuration follows server reboot. In Step 1, added instructions to issue commands after each server reboot; added the <code>modprobe qedr</code> command In Table 12-1, added explanation to the <code>echo 1.1.1.1</code> command and changed the <code>echo 1023</code> command to <code>echo 4420</code>. In Step 6, updated the port number in the command output to 4420.	“SLES 12 SP1/SP2 iSCSI L4 Boot from SAN Migration Using MPIO” on page 154 “Verifying FCoE Devices in Linux” on page 167 “Boot from SAN Considerations” on page 168 “Configuring SR-IOV on Windows” on page 169 “Configuring SR-IOV on Windows” on page 169 “Configuring SR-IOV on Linux” on page 176 “Configuring SR-IOV on VMware” on page 181 “Configuring the Target Server” on page 189
--	---

Added an introductory paragraph explaining that initiator server configuration follows server reboot. In Step 1, added instructions to issue commands after each server reboot; added the <code>modprobe qedr</code> command In Step 2, added instructions to issue commands on first configuration. In Step 4, added explanation that the <code>subnqn</code> is for use in Step 6. In Step 4, added explanation that the <code>subnqn</code> is for use in Step 6. In Step 5, added instructions to issue the command after each server reboot. In Step 6, added the command. Added a problem/solution about the VI-Client's inability to access the ESXi host with the iSCSI driver installed, Removed the bullet stating that the NPAR+SR-IOV option is not supported in the HII mapping specification. Added Link Layer Discovery Protocol (LLDP) to the glossary	“Configuring the Initiator Server” on page 191 “Miscellaneous Issues” on page 242 “NPAR Configuration Is Not Supported if SR-IOV Is Already Configured” on page 251 “Glossary” on page 253
---	--

Table of Contents

Preface

Supported Products	xvii
Intended Audience	xvii
What Is in This Guide	xviii
Documentation Conventions	xix
License Agreements	xxi
Legal Notices	xxi
Warranty	xxi
Laser Safety—FDA Notice	xxii
Agency Certification	xxii
EMI and EMC Requirements	xxii
KCC: Class A	xxiii
VCCI: Class A	xxiv
Product Safety Compliance	xxiv

1 Product Overview

Functional Description	1
Features	1
Adapter Specifications	3
Physical Characteristics	3
Standards Specifications	3

2 Hardware Installation

System Requirements	5
Safety Precautions	6
Preinstallation Checklist	6
Installing the Adapter	7

3 Driver Installation

Installing Linux Driver Software	8
--	---

	Installing the Linux Drivers Without RDMA	10
	Removing the Linux Drivers	10
	Installing Linux Drivers Using the src RPM Package	12
	Installing Linux Drivers Using the kmp/kmod RPM Package	13
	Installing Linux Drivers Using the TAR File.	14
	Installing the Linux Drivers with RDMA	14
	Linux Driver Optional Parameters	15
	Linux Driver Operation Defaults	16
	Linux Driver Messages	16
	Statistics	16
	Installing Windows Driver Software	17
	Installing the Windows Drivers	17
	Running the DUP in the GUI.	17
	DUP Installation Options.	23
	DUP Installation Examples.	24
	Removing the Windows Drivers	24
	Managing Adapter Properties	25
	Setting Power Management Options.	26
	Installing VMware Driver Software	27
	VMware Drivers and Driver Packages.	27
	Installing VMware Drivers	28
	VMware Driver Optional Parameters.	30
	VMware Driver Parameter Defaults.	31
	Removing the VMware Driver	32
	FCoE Support	32
	iSCSI Support	32
4	Upgrading the Firmware	
	Running the DUP by Double-Clicking	33
	Running the DUP from a Command Line.	35
	Running the DUP Using the .bin File	36
5	Adapter Preboot Configuration	
	Getting Started	39
	Displaying Firmware Image Properties	42
	Configuring Device-level Parameters.	43
	Configuring NIC Parameters	44
	Configuring Data Center Bridging	47
	Configuring FCoE Boot	48
	Configuring iSCSI Boot	50

	Configuring Partitions	55
	Partitioning for VMware ESXi 6.0 and ESXi 6.5	60
6	RoCE Configuration	
	Supported Operating Systems and OFED	63
	Planning for RoCE	64
	Preparing the Adapter	65
	Preparing the Ethernet Switch	65
	Configuring the Cisco Nexus 6000 Ethernet Switch	65
	Configuring the Dell Z9100 Ethernet Switch	67
	Configuring RoCE on the Adapter for Windows Server	67
	Configuring RoCE on the Adapter for Linux	69
	RoCE Configuration for RHEL	70
	RoCE Configuration for SLES	70
	Verifying the RoCE Configuration on Linux	71
	VLAN Interfaces and GID Index Values	73
	RoCE v2 Configuration for Linux	74
	Identifying RoCE v2 GID Index or Address	75
	Verifying RoCE v1 or RoCE v2 GID Index and Address from sys and class Parameters	75
	Verifying RoCE v1 or RoCE v2 Function Through perftest Applications	76
	Configuring RoCE on the Adapter for ESX	80
	Configuring RDMA Interfaces	80
	Configuring MTU	81
	RoCE Mode and Statistics	82
	Configuring a Paravirtual RDMA Device (PVRDMA)	83
7	iWARP Configuration	
	Preparing the Adapter for iWARP	86
	Configuring iWARP on Windows	87
	Configuring iWARP on Linux	91
	Installing the Driver	91
	Configuring iWARP and RoCE	91
	Detecting the Device	92
	Supported iWARP Applications	93
	Running Perftest for iWARP	93
	Configuring NFS-RDMA	94
	iWARP RDMA-Core Support on SLES 12 SP3, RHEL 7.4, and OFED 4.8x	96

8	iSER Configuration	
	Before You Begin	98
	Configuring iSER for RHEL	98
	Configuring iSER for SLES 12	102
	Using iSER with iWARP on RHEL and SLES.	103
	Optimizing Linux Performance	104
	Configuring CPUs to Maximum Performance Mode	105
	Configuring Kernel sysctl Settings.	105
	Configuring IRQ Affinity Settings	105
	Configuring Block Device Staging	106
9	iSCSI Configuration	
	iSCSI Boot	107
	iSCSI Boot Setup.	108
	Selecting the Preferred iSCSI Boot Mode	108
	Configuring the iSCSI Target	109
	Configuring iSCSI Boot Parameters	110
	Adapter UEFI Boot Mode Configuration	111
	Configuring iSCSI Boot	115
	Static iSCSI Boot Configuration.	115
	Dynamic iSCSI Boot Configuration	122
	Enabling CHAP Authentication	124
	Configuring the DHCP Server to Support iSCSI Boot	125
	DHCP iSCSI Boot Configurations for IPv4	125
	DHCP Option 17, Root Path.	125
	DHCP Option 43, Vendor-specific Information	126
	Configuring the DHCP Server	127
	Configuring DHCP iSCSI Boot for IPv6.	127
	DHCPv6 Option 16, Vendor Class Option	127
	DHCPv6 Option 17, Vendor-Specific Information.	127
	Configuring VLANs for iSCSI Boot	128
	Configuring iSCSI Boot from SAN for RHEL 7.4	129
	iSCSI Offload in Windows Server.	132
	Installing QLogic Drivers	132
	Installing the Microsoft iSCSI Initiator	132
	Configuring Microsoft Initiator to Use QLogic's iSCSI Offload.	133
	iSCSI Offload FAQs.	139
	Windows Server 2012 R2 and 2016 iSCSI Boot Installation.	140
	iSCSI Crash Dump	140
	iSCSI Offload in Linux Environments	141

	Differences from bnx2i	141
	Configuring qedi.ko	142
	Verifying iSCSI Interfaces in Linux	142
	Open-iSCSI and Boot from SAN Considerations	145
	RHEL 6.9 iSCSI L4 Boot from SAN Migration	146
	RHEL 7.2/7.3 iSCSI L4 Boot from SAN Migration	149
	SLES 11 SP4 iSCSI L4 Boot from SAN Migration	151
	SLES 12 SP1/SP2 iSCSI L4 Boot from SAN Migration	152
	SLES 12 SP1/SP2 iSCSI L4 Boot from SAN Migration Using MPIO	154
10	FCoE Configuration	
	FCoE Boot from SAN	156
	Preparing System BIOS for FCoE Build and Boot.	157
	Specifying the BIOS Boot Protocol	157
	Configuring Adapter UEFI Boot Mode	157
	Windows FCoE Boot from SAN	162
	Windows Server 2012 R2 and 2016 FCoE Boot Installation	162
	Configuring FCoE	163
	FCoE Crash Dump	163
	Injecting (Slipstreaming) Adapter Drivers into Windows Image Files	164
	Configuring Linux FCoE Offload	165
	Differences Between qedf and bnx2fc	166
	Configuring qedf.ko	166
	Verifying FCoE Devices in Linux	167
	Boot from SAN Considerations	168
11	SR-IOV Configuration	
	Configuring SR-IOV on Windows	169
	Configuring SR-IOV on Linux	176
	Configuring SR-IOV on VMware	181
12	NVMe-oF Configuration with RDMA	
	Installing Device Drivers on Both Servers	189
	Configuring the Target Server	189
	Configuring the Initiator Server	191
	Preconditioning the Target Server	192
	Testing the NVMe-oF Devices	193
	Optimizing Performance	194
	.IRQ Affinity (multi_rss-affin.sh)	196
	CPU Frequency (cpufreq.sh)	197

13

Windows Server 2016

Configuring RoCE Interfaces with Hyper-V	198
Creating a Hyper-V Virtual Switch with an RDMA Virtual NIC	199
Adding a VLAN ID to Host Virtual NIC.	200
Verifying If RoCE is Enabled	201
Adding Host Virtual NICs (Virtual Ports)	201
Mapping the SMB Drive and Running RoCE Traffic	202
RoCE over Switch Embedded Teaming	203
Creating a Hyper-V Virtual Switch with SET and RDMA Virtual NICs	204
Enabling RDMA on SET	204
Assigning a VLAN ID on SET	204
Running RDMA Traffic on SET	205
Configuring QoS for RoCE	205
Configuring QoS by Disabling DCBX on the Adapter	205
Configuring QoS by Enabling DCBX on the Adapter	210
Configuring VMMQ	213
Enabling VMMQ on the Adapter	214
Setting the VMMQ Max QPs Default and Non-Default VPort	215
Creating a Virtual Machine Switch with or Without SR-IOV	215
Enabling VMMQ on the Virtual Machine Switch	217
Getting the Virtual Machine Switch Capability	217
Creating a VM and Enabling VMMQ on VMNetworkadapters in the VM	218
Default and Maximum VMMQ Virtual NIC	219
Enabling and Disabling VMMQ on a Management NIC	219
Monitoring Traffic Statistics	220
Configuring VXLAN	220
Enabling VXLAN Offload on the Adapter	220
Deploying a Software Defined Network	221
Configuring Storage Spaces Direct	221
Configuring the Hardware	222
Deploying a Hyper-Converged System	222
Deploying the Operating System	223
Configuring the Network	223
Configuring Storage Spaces Direct	225
Deploying and Managing a Nano Server	228
Roles and Features	228
Deploying a Nano Server on a Physical Server	230

	Deploying a Nano Server in a Virtual Machine	232
	Managing a Nano Server Remotely	234
	Managing a Nano Server with Windows PowerShell Remoting	234
	Adding the Nano Server to a List of Trusted Hosts	235
	Starting the Remote Windows PowerShell Session	235
	Managing QLogic Adapters on a Windows Nano Server	235
	RoCE Configuration	235
14	Troubleshooting	
	Troubleshooting Checklist	239
	Verifying that Current Drivers Are Loaded	240
	Verifying Drivers in Windows	240
	Verifying Drivers in Linux	240
	Verifying Drivers in VMware	241
	Testing Network Connectivity	241
	Testing Network Connectivity for Windows	241
	Testing Network Connectivity for Linux	242
	Microsoft Virtualization with Hyper-V	242
	Linux-specific Issues	242
	Miscellaneous Issues	242
	Collecting Debug Data	243
A	Adapter LEDS	
B	Cables and Optical Modules	
	Supported Specifications	245
	Tested Cables and Optical Modules	246
	Tested Switches	248
C	Dell Z9100 Switch Configuration	
D	Feature Constraints	
	Glossary	

List of Figures

Figure	Page
3-1	Dell Update Package Window 17
3-2	QLogic InstallShield Wizard: Welcome Window 18
3-3	QLogic InstallShield Wizard: License Agreement Window. 19
3-4	InstallShield Wizard: Setup Type Window 20
3-5	InstallShield Wizard: Custom Setup Window. 21
3-6	InstallShield Wizard: Ready to Install the Program Window 21
3-7	InstallShield Wizard: Completed Window 22
3-8	Dell Update Package Window 23
3-9	Setting Advanced Adapter Properties 25
3-10	Power Management Options 26
4-1	Dell Update Package: Splash Screen 33
4-2	Dell Update Package: Loading New Firmware 34
4-3	Dell Update Package: Installation Results 34
4-4	Dell Update Package: Finish Installation 35
4-5	DUP Command Line Options. 36
5-1	System Setup. 39
5-2	System Setup: Device Settings 39
5-3	Main Configuration Page 40
5-4	Main Configuration Page, Setting Partitioning Mode to NPAR. 40
5-5	Firmware Image Properties 42
5-6	Device Level Configuration 43
5-7	NIC Configuration. 44
5-8	System Setup: Data Center Bridging (DCB) Settings 48
5-9	FCoE General Parameters. 49
5-10	FCoE Target Configuration. 49
5-11	iSCSI General Parameters. 52
5-12	iSCSI Initiator Configuration Parameters 53
5-13	iSCSI First Target Parameters 53
5-14	iSCSI Second Target Parameters 54
5-15	NIC Partitioning Configuration, Global Bandwidth Allocation. 55
5-16	Global Bandwidth Allocation Page 56
5-17	Partition 1 Configuration. 57
5-18	Partition 2 Configuration: FCoE Offload. 58
5-19	Partition 3 Configuration: iSCSI Offload. 59
5-20	Partition 4 Configuration: Ethernet. 59
6-1	Configuring RoCE Properties. 68
6-2	Switch Settings, Server 78
6-3	Switch Settings, Client 78
6-4	Configuring RDMA_CM Applications: Server. 79
6-5	Configuring RDMA_CM Applications: Client 79
6-6	Configuring a New Distributed Switch 83
6-7	Assigning a vmknics for PVRDMA. 84
6-8	Setting the Firewall Rule 85

7-1	Windows PowerShell Command: Get-NetAdapterRdma	87
7-2	Windows PowerShell Command: Get-NetOffloadGlobalSetting	88
7-3	Perfmon: Add Counters	89
7-4	Perfmon: Verifying iWARP Traffic.	90
8-1	RDMA Ping Successful	99
8-2	iSER Portal Instances	100
8-3	Iface Transport Confirmed	101
8-4	Checking for New iSCSI Device.	101
8-5	LIO Target Configuration	103
9-1	System Setup: NIC Configuration	108
9-2	System Setup: Boot Settings	111
9-3	System Setup: Device Settings Configuration Utility	112
9-4	Selecting NIC Configuration.	113
9-5	System Setup: NIC Configuration, Boot Protocol.	114
9-6	System Setup: iSCSI Configuration	115
9-7	System Setup: Selecting General Parameters.	116
9-8	System Setup: iSCSI General Parameters	117
9-9	System Setup: Selecting iSCSI Initiator Parameters	117
9-10	System Setup: iSCSI Initiator Parameters	119
9-11	System Setup: Selecting iSCSI First Target Parameters	119
9-12	System Setup: iSCSI First Target Parameters	120
9-13	System Setup: iSCSI Second Target Parameters	121
9-14	System Setup: Saving iSCSI Changes	122
9-15	System Setup: iSCSI General Parameters	124
9-16	System Setup: iSCSI General Parameters, VLAN ID	129
9-17	Prompt for Out-of-Box Installation	130
9-18	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7.4 Configuration.	131
9-19	iSCSI Initiator Properties, Configuration Page	133
9-20	iSCSI Initiator Node Name Change	134
9-21	iSCSI Initiator—Discover Target Portal	135
9-22	Target Portal IP Address	136
9-23	Selecting the Initiator IP Address	137
9-24	Connecting to the iSCSI Target	138
9-25	Connect To Target Dialog Box	139
10-1	System Setup: Selecting Device Settings	157
10-2	System Setup: Device Settings, Port Selection	158
10-3	System Setup: NIC Configuration	159
10-4	System Setup: FCoE Mode Enabled	160
10-5	System Setup: FCoE General Parameters	161
10-6	System Setup: FCoE General Parameters	162
11-1	System Setup for SR-IOV: Integrated Devices	170
11-2	System Setup for SR-IOV: Device Level Configuration	170
11-3	Adapter Properties, Advanced: Enabling SR-IOV	171
11-4	Virtual Switch Manager: Enabling SR-IOV.	172
11-5	Settings for VM: Enabling SR-IOV	174

11-6	Device Manager: VM with QLogic Adapter	175
11-7	Windows PowerShell Command: Get-NetadapterSriovVf	175
11-8	System Setup: Processor Settings for SR-IOV	176
11-9	System Setup for SR-IOV: Integrated Devices	177
11-10	Editing the grub.conf File for SR-IOV	178
11-11	Command Output for sriov_numvfs	179
11-12	Command Output for ip link show Command	179
11-13	RHEL68 Virtual Machine	180
11-14	Add New Virtual Hardware	181
11-15	VMware Host Edit Settings	185
12-1	NVMe-oF Network	188
12-2	Subsystem NQN	191
12-3	Confirm NVMe-oF Connection	192
12-4	FIO Utility Installation	193
13-1	Enabling RDMA in Host Virtual NIC	199
13-2	Hyper-V Virtual Ethernet Adapter Properties	200
13-3	Windows PowerShell Command: Get-VMNetworkAdapter	200
13-4	Windows PowerShell Command: Get-NetAdapterRdma	201
13-5	Add Counters Dialog Box	202
13-6	Performance Monitor Shows RoCE Traffic	203
13-7	Windows PowerShell Command: New-VMSwitch	204
13-8	Windows PowerShell Command: Get-NetAdapter	204
13-9	Advanced Properties: Enable QoS	206
13-10	Advanced Properties: Setting VLAN ID	207
13-11	Advanced Properties: Enabling QoS	211
13-12	Advanced Properties: Setting VLAN ID	212
13-13	Advanced Properties: Enabling Virtual Switch RSS	214
13-14	Advanced Properties: Setting VMMQ	215
13-15	Virtual Switch Manager	216
13-16	Windows PowerShell Command: Get-VMSwitch	217
13-17	Advanced Properties: Enabling VXLAN	220
13-18	Example Hardware Configuration	222
13-19	Windows PowerShell Command: Get-NetAdapter	236
13-20	Windows PowerShell Command: Get-NetAdapterRdma	236
13-21	Windows PowerShell Command: New-Item	237
13-22	Windows PowerShell Command: New-SMBShare	237
13-23	Windows PowerShell Command: Get-NetAdapterStatistics	238

List of Tables

Table	Page
2-1 Host Hardware Requirements	5
2-2 Minimum Host Operating System Requirements	5
3-1 QLogic 41xxx Series Adapters Linux Drivers	8
3-2 qede Driver Optional Parameters	15
3-3 Linux Driver Operation Defaults	16
3-4 VMware Drivers	27
3-5 ESXi Driver Packages by Release	27
3-6 VMware Driver Optional Parameters	30
3-7 VMware Driver Parameter Defaults	31
3-8 QLogic 41xxx Series Adapter VMware FCoE Driver	32
3-9 QLogic 41xxx Series Adapter iSCSI Driver	32
5-1 Adapter Properties	41
6-1 OS Support for RoCE v1, RoCE v2, iWARP, and OFED	63
6-2 Advanced Properties for RoCE	67
9-1 Configuration Options	110
9-2 DHCP Option 17 Parameter Definitions	125
9-3 DHCP Option 43 Sub-option Definitions	126
9-4 DHCP Option 17 Sub-option Definitions	128
12-1 Target Parameters	190
13-1 Roles and Features of Nano Server	228
14-1 Collecting Debug Data Commands	243
A-1 Adapter Port Link and Activity LEDs	244
B-1 Tested Cables and Optical Modules	246
B-2 Switches Tested for Interoperability	248

Preface

This preface lists the supported products, specifies the intended audience, explains the typographic conventions used in this guide, and describes legal notices.

Supported Products

This user's guide describes the following Cavium® products:

- QL41112HFCU-DE 10Gb Converged Network Adapter, full-height bracket
- QL41112HLCU-DE 10Gb Converged Network Adapter, low-profile bracket
- QL41162HFRJ-DE 10Gb Converged Network Adapter, full-height bracket
- QL41162HLRJ-DE 10Gb Converged Network Adapter, low-profile bracket
- QL41162HMRJ-DE 10Gb Converged Network Adapter
- QL41164HMCU-DE 10Gb Converged Network Adapter
- QL41164HMRJ-DE 10Gb Converged Network Adapter
- QL41262HFCU-DE 10/25Gb Converged Network Adapter, full-height bracket
- QL41262HLCU-DE 10/25Gb Converged Network Adapter, low-profile bracket
- QL41262HMCU-DE 10/25Gb Converged Network
- QL41264HMCU-DE 10/25Gb Converged Network Adapter

Intended Audience

This guide is intended for system administrators and other technical staff members responsible for configuring and managing adapters installed on Dell® PowerEdge® servers in Windows®, Linux®, or VMware® environments.

What Is in This Guide

Following this preface, the remainder of this guide is organized into the following chapters and appendices:

- [Chapter 1 Product Overview](#) provides a product functional description, a list of features, and the adapter specifications.
- [Chapter 2 Hardware Installation](#) describes how to install the adapter, including the list of system requirements and a preinstallation checklist.
- [Chapter 3 Driver Installation](#) describes the installation of the adapter drivers on Windows, Linux, and VMware.
- [Chapter 4 Upgrading the Firmware](#) describes how to use the Dell Update Package (DUP) to upgrade the adapter firmware,
- [Chapter 5 Adapter Preboot Configuration](#) describes the preboot adapter configuration tasks using the Human Infrastructure Interface (HII) application.
- [Chapter 6 RoCE Configuration](#) describes how to configure the adapter, the Ethernet switch, and the host to use RDMA over converged Ethernet (RoCE).
- [Chapter 7 iWARP Configuration](#) provides procedures for configuring Internet wide area RDMA protocol (iWARP) on Windows and Linux systems.
- [Chapter 8 iSER Configuration](#) describes how to configure iSCSI Extensions for RDMA (iSER) for Linux RHEL and SLES.
- [Chapter 9 iSCSI Configuration](#) describes iSCSI boot, iSCSI crash dump, and iSCSI offload for Windows and Linux.
- [Chapter 10 FCoE Configuration](#) describes Fibre Channel over Ethernet (FCoE) boot from SAN and booting from SAN after installation.
- [Chapter 11 SR-IOV Configuration](#) provides procedures for configuring single root input/output virtualization (SR-IOV) on Windows, Linux, and VMware systems.
- [Chapter 12 NVMe-oF Configuration with RDMA](#) demonstrates how to configure NVMe-oF on a simple network.
- [Chapter 13 Windows Server 2016](#) describes the Windows Server 2016 features.
- [Chapter 14 Troubleshooting](#) describes a variety of troubleshooting methods and resources.
- [Appendix A Adapter LEDs](#) lists the adapter LEDs and their significance.

- [Appendix B Cables and Optical Modules](#) lists the cables and optical modules that the 41xxx Series Adapters support.
- [Appendix C Dell Z9100 Switch Configuration](#) describes how to configure the Dell Z9100 switch port for 25Gbps.
- [Appendix D Feature Constraints](#) provides information about feature constraints implemented in the current release.

At the end of this guide is a glossary of terms.

Documentation Conventions

This guide uses the following documentation conventions:

- **NOTE** provides additional information.
- **CAUTION** without an alert symbol indicates the presence of a hazard that could cause damage to equipment or loss of data.
-  **CAUTION** with an alert symbol indicates the presence of a hazard that could cause minor or moderate injury.
-  **WARNING** indicates the presence of a hazard that could cause serious injury or death.
- Text in [blue](#) font indicates a hyperlink (jump) to a figure, table, or section in this guide, and links to Web sites are shown in [underlined blue](#). For example:
 - ❑ [Table 9-2](#) lists problems related to the user interface and remote agent.
 - ❑ See [“Installation Checklist” on page 6](#).
 - ❑ For more information, visit www.cavium.com.
- Text in **bold** font indicates user interface elements such as a menu items, buttons, check boxes, or column headings. For example:
 - ❑ Click the **Start** button, point to **Programs**, point to **Accessories**, and then click **Command Prompt**.
 - ❑ Under **Notification Options**, select the **Warning Alarms** check box.
- Text in `Courier` font indicates a file name, directory path, or command line text. For example:
 - ❑ To return to the root directory from anywhere in the file structure:
Type `cd /root` and press ENTER.
 - ❑ Issue the following command: `sh ./install.bin`

- Key names and key strokes are indicated with UPPERCASE:
 - Press CTRL+P.
 - Press the UP ARROW key.
 - Text in *italics* indicates terms, emphasis, variables, or document titles. For example:
 - For a complete listing of license agreements, refer to the *Software End User License Agreement*.
 - What are *shortcut keys*?
 - To enter the date, type *mm/dd/yyyy* (where *mm* is the month, *dd* is the day, and *yyyy* is the year).
 - Topic titles between quotation marks identify related topics either within this manual or in the online help, which is also referred to as *the help system* throughout this document.
 - Command line interface (CLI) command syntax conventions include the following:
 - Plain text indicates items that you must type as shown. For example:
 - **qauccli -pr nic -ei**
 - < > (angle brackets) indicate a variable whose value you must specify. For example:
 - <serial_number>
-
- NOTE**
- For CLI commands only, variable names are always indicated using angle brackets instead of *italics*.
-
- [] (square brackets) indicate an optional parameter. For example:
 - [<file_name>] means specify a file name, or omit it to select the default file name.
 - | (vertical bar) indicates mutually exclusive options; select one option only. For example:
 - on|off
 - 1|2|3|4

- ❑ ... (ellipsis) indicates that the preceding item may be repeated. For example:
 - $x \dots$ means *one* or more instances of x .
 - $[x \dots]$ means *zero* or more instances of x .
- ❑ Vertical ellipses within command example output indicate where portions of repetitious output data have been intentionally omitted.
- ❑ () (parentheses) and { } (braces) are used to avoid logical ambiguity. For example:
 - $a|b\ c$ is ambiguous
 - $\{(a|b)\ c\}$ means a or b , followed by c
 - $\{a|(b\ c)\}$ means either a , or $b\ c$

License Agreements

Refer to the *Software End User License Agreement* for a complete listing of all license agreements affecting this product.

Legal Notices

Legal notices covered in this section include warranty, laser safety (FDA notice), agency certification, and product safety compliance.

Warranty

For warranty details, please check the QLogic® Web site:

www.qlogic.com/Support/Pages/Warranty.aspx

Laser Safety—FDA Notice

This product complies with DHHS Rules 21CFR Chapter I, Subchapter J. This product has been designed and manufactured according to IEC60825-1 on the safety label of laser product.

CLASS I LASER

Class 1 Laser Product	Caution —Class 1 laser radiation when open Do not view directly with optical instruments
Appareil laser de classe 1	Attention —Radiation laser de classe 1 Ne pas regarder directement avec des instruments optiques
Produkt der Laser Klasse 1	Vorsicht —Laserstrahlung der Klasse 1 bei geöffneter Abdeckung Direktes Ansehen mit optischen Instrumenten vermeiden
Luokan 1 Laserlaite	Varoitus —Luokan 1 lasersäteilyä, kun laite on auki Älä katso suoraan laitteeseen käyttämällä optisia instrumenttejä

Agency Certification

The following sections summarize the EMC and EMI test specifications performed on the 41xxx Series Adapters to comply with emission, immunity, and product safety standards.

EMI and EMC Requirements

FCC Part 15 compliance: Class A

FCC compliance information statement: This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

ICES-003 Compliance: Class A

This Class A digital apparatus complies with Canadian ICES-003. Cet appareil numérique de la classe A est conforme à la norme NMB-003 du Canada.

CE Mark 2014/30/EU, 2014/35/EU EMC Directive Compliance:

EN55032:2012/ CISPR 32:2015 Class A

EN55024:2010

EN61000-3-2 : Harmonic Current Emission

EN61000-3-3 : Voltage Fluctuation and Flicker

Immunity Standards

EN61000-4-2 : ESD

EN61000-4-3 : RF Electro Magnetic Field

EN61000-4-4 : Fast Transient/Burst

EN61000-4-5 : Fast Surge Common/ Differential

EN61000-4-6 : RF Conducted Susceptibility

EN61000-4-8 : Power Frequency Magnetic Field

EN61000-4-11: Voltage Dips and Interrupt

VCCI: 2015-04; Class A

AS/NZS; CISPR 32: 2015 Class A

CNS 13438: 2006 Class A

KCC: Class A

Korea RRA Class A Certified



Product Name/Model: Converged Network Adapters and
Intelligent Ethernet Adapters

Certification holder: QLogic Corporation

Manufactured date: Refer to date code listed on product

Manufacturer/Country of origin: QLogic Corporation/USA

A class equipment
(Business purpose
info/telecommunications
equipment)

As this equipment has undergone EMC registration for business purpose, the seller and/or the buyer is asked to beware of this point and in case a wrongful sale or purchase has been made, it is asked that a change to household use be made.

Korean Language Format—Class A

A급 기기 (업무용 정보통신기기)

이 기기는 업무용으로 전자파적합등록을 한 기기이오니
판매자 또는 사용자는 이 점을 주의하시기 바라며, 만약
잘못판매 또는 구입하였을 때에는 가정용으로 교환하시기
바랍니다.

VCCI: Class A

This is a Class A product based on the standard of the Voluntary Control Council for Interference (VCCI). If this equipment is used in a domestic environment, radio interference may occur, in which case the user may be required to take corrective actions.

この装置は、クラスA情報技術装置です。この装置を家庭環境で使用すると電波妨害を引き起こすことがあります。この場合には使用者が適切な対策を講ずるよう要求されることがあります。 VCCI-A

Product Safety Compliance

UL, cUL product safety:

UL 60950-1 (2nd Edition) A1 + A2 2014-10-14

CSA C22.2 No.60950-1-07 (2nd Edition) A1 +A2 2014-10

Use only with listed ITE or equivalent.

Complies with 21 CFR 1040.10 and 1040.11, 2014/30/EU, 2014/35/EU.

2006/95/EC low voltage directive:

TUV EN60950-1:2006+A11+A1+A12+A2 2nd Edition

TUV IEC 60950-1: 2005 2nd Edition Am1: 2009 + Am2: 2013 CB

CB Certified to IEC 60950-1 2nd Edition

1 Product Overview

This chapter provides the following information for the 41xxx Series Adapters:

- [Functional Description](#)
- [Features](#)
- [Adapter Specifications](#)

Functional Description

The QLogic FastLinQ 41000 Series Adapters include 10 and 25Gb Converged Network Adapters and Intelligent Ethernet Adapters that are designed to perform accelerated data networking for server systems. The 41000 Series Adapter includes a 10/25Gb Ethernet MAC with full-duplex capability.

Using the operating system's teaming feature, you can split your network into virtual LANs (VLANs), as well as group multiple network adapters together into teams to provide network load balancing and fault tolerance. For more information about teaming, see your operating system documentation.

Features

The 41xxx Series Adapters provide the following features. Some features may not be available on all adapters:

- NIC partitioning (NPAR)
- Single-chip solution:
 - ❑ 10/25Gb MAC
 - ❑ SerDes interface for direct attach copper (DAC) transceiver connection
 - ❑ PCIe® 3.0 x8
 - ❑ Zero copy capable hardware
- Performance features:
 - ❑ TCP, IP, UDP checksum offloads
 - ❑ TCP segmentation offload (TSO)
 - Large segment offload (LSO)

- Generic segment offload (GSO)
- Large receive offload (LRO)
- Receive segment coalescing (RSC)
- Microsoft® dynamic virtual machine queue (VMQ), and Linux multiqueue
- Adaptive interrupts:
 - Transmit/receive side scaling (TSS/RSS)
 - Stateless offloads for Network Virtualization using Generic Routing Encapsulation (NVGRE) and virtual LAN (VXLAN) L2/L3 GRE tunneled traffic¹
- Manageability:
 - System management bus (SMB) controller
 - *Advanced Configuration and Power Interface* (ACPI) 1.1a compliant (multiple power modes)
 - Network controller-sideband interface (NC-SI) support
- Advanced network features:
 - Jumbo frames (up to 9,600 bytes). The OS and the link partner must support jumbo frames.
 - Virtual LANs (VLAN)
 - Flow control (IEEE Std 802.3x)
- Logical link control (IEEE Std 802.2)
- High-speed on-chip reduced instruction set computer (RISC) processor
- Integrated 96KB frame buffer memory (not applicable to all models)
- 1,024 classification filters (not applicable to all models)
- Support for multicast addresses through 128-bit hashing hardware function
- Serial flash NVRAM memory
- *PCI Power Management Interface* (v1.1)
- 64-bit base address register (BAR) support
- EM64T processor support
- iSCSI and FCoE boot support²

¹ This feature requires OS or Hypervisor support to use the offloads.

² Hardware support limit of SR-IOV VFs varies. The limit may be lower on some OS environments; refer to the appropriate section for your OS.

Adapter Specifications

The 41xxx Series Adapter specifications include the adapter's physical characteristics and standards-compliance references.

Physical Characteristics

The 41xxx Series Adapters are standard PCIe cards and ship with either a full-height or a low-profile bracket for use in a standard PCIe slot.

Standards Specifications

Supported standards specifications include:

- *PCI Express Base Specification*, rev. 3.1
- *PCI Express Card Electromechanical Specification*, rev. 3.0
- *PCI Bus Power Management Interface Specification*, rev. 1.2
- IEEE Specifications:
 - ❑ *802.3-2015 IEEE Standard for Ethernet* (flow control)
 - ❑ 802.1q (VLAN)
 - ❑ 802.1AX (Link Aggregation)
 - ❑ 802.1ad (QinQ)
 - ❑ 802.1p (Priority Encoding)
 - ❑ 1588-2002 PTPv1 (Precision Time Protocol)
 - ❑ 1588-2008 PTPv2
 - ❑ IEEE 802.3az Energy Efficient Ethernet (EEE)
- IPv4 (RFC 791)
- IPv6 (RFC 2460)

2 Hardware Installation

This chapter provides the following hardware installation information:

- [System Requirements](#)
- [Safety Precautions](#)
- [Preinstallation Checklist](#)
- [Installing the Adapter](#)

System Requirements

Before you install a QLogic 41xxx Series Adapter, verify that your system meets the hardware and operating system requirements shown in [Table 2-1](#) and [Table 2-2](#). For a complete list of supported operating systems, visit the Cavium Web site:

Table 2-1. Host Hardware Requirements

Hardware	Requirement
Architecture	IA-32 or EMT64 that meets operating system requirements
PCIe	PCIe Gen2 x8 (2x10G NIC) PCIe Gen3 x8 (2x25G NIC) Full dual-port 25Gb bandwidth is supported on PCIe Gen3 x8 or faster slots.
Memory	8GB RAM (minimum)
Cables and Optical Modules	The 41xxx Series Adapters have been tested for interoperability with a variety of 1G, 10G and 25G cables and optical modules. See “Tested Cables and Optical Modules” on page 246.

Table 2-2. Minimum Host Operating System Requirements

Operating System	Requirement
Windows Server	2012, 2012 R2, 2016 (including Nano)
Linux	RHEL [®] 6.8, 6.9, 7.2, 7.3, 7.4 SLES [®] 11 SP4, SLES 12 SP2, SLES 12 SP3
VMware	ESXi 6.0 u3 and later for 25G adapters

NOTE

[Table 2-2](#) denotes minimum host OS requirements. For a complete list of supported operating systems, visit the Cavium Web site.

Safety Precautions

WARNING

The adapter is being installed in a system that operates with voltages that can be lethal. Before you open the case of your system, observe the following precautions to protect yourself and to prevent damage to the system components.

- Remove any metallic objects or jewelry from your hands and wrists.
- Make sure to use only insulated or nonconducting tools.
- Verify that the system is powered OFF and is unplugged before you touch internal components.
- Install or remove adapters in a static-free environment. The use of a properly grounded wrist strap or other personal antistatic devices and an antistatic mat is strongly recommended.

Preinstallation Checklist

Before installing the adapter, complete the following:

1. Verify that your system meets the hardware and software requirements listed under [“System Requirements” on page 5](#).
2. Verify that your system is using the latest BIOS.

NOTE

If you acquired the adapter software from the Cavium Web site, verify the path to the adapter driver files.

-
3. If your system is active, shut it down.
 4. When system shutdown is complete, turn off the power and unplug the power cord.
 5. Remove the adapter from its shipping package and place it on an anti-static surface.
 6. Check the adapter for visible signs of damage, particularly on the edge connector. Never attempt to install a damaged adapter.

Installing the Adapter

The following instructions apply to installing the QLogic 41xxx Series Adapters in most systems. For details about performing these tasks, refer to the manuals that were supplied with your system.

To install the adapter:

1. Review [“Safety Precautions” on page 6](#) and [“Preinstallation Checklist” on page 6](#). Before you install the adapter, ensure that the system power is OFF, the power cord is unplugged from the power outlet, and that you are following proper electrical grounding procedures.
2. Open the system case, and select the slot that matches the adapter size, which can be PCIe Gen 2 x8 or PCIe Gen 3 x8. A lesser width adapter can be seated into a greater width slot (x8 in an x16), but a greater width adapter cannot be seated into a lesser width slot (x8 in an x4). If you do not know how to identify a PCIe slot, refer to your system documentation.
3. Remove the blank cover-plate from the slot that you selected.
4. Align the adapter connector edge with the PCIe connector slot in the system.
5. Applying even pressure at both corners of the card, push the adapter card into the slot until it is firmly seated. When the adapter is properly seated, the adapter port connectors are aligned with the slot opening, and the adapter faceplate is flush against the system chassis.

CAUTION

Do not use excessive force when seating the card, as this may damage the system or the adapter. If you have difficulty seating the adapter, remove it, realign it, and try again.

6. Secure the adapter with the adapter clip or screw.
7. Close the system case and disconnect any personal anti-static devices.

3 Driver Installation

This chapter provides the following information about driver installation:

- [Installing Linux Driver Software](#)
- [“Installing Windows Driver Software” on page 17](#)
- [“Installing VMware Driver Software” on page 27](#)

Installing Linux Driver Software

This section describes how to install Linux drivers with or without remote direct memory access (RDMA). It also describes the Linux driver optional parameters, default values, messages, and statistics.

- [Installing the Linux Drivers Without RDMA](#)
- [Installing the Linux Drivers with RDMA](#)
- [Linux Driver Optional Parameters](#)
- [Linux Driver Operation Defaults](#)
- [Linux Driver Messages](#)
- [Statistics](#)

The 41xxx Series Adapter Linux drivers and supporting documentation are available on the Dell Support page:

dell.support.com

[Table 3-1](#) describes the 41xxx Series Adapter Linux drivers.

Table 3-1. QLogic 41xxx Series Adapters Linux Drivers

Linux Driver	Description
qed	The qed core driver module directly controls the firmware, handles interrupts, and provides the low-level API for the protocol specific driver set. The qed interfaces with the qede, qedr, qedi, and qedf drivers. The Linux core module manages all PCI device resources (registers, host interface queues, and so on). The qed core module requires Linux kernel version 2.6.32 or later. Testing was concentrated on the x86_64 architecture.

Table 3-1. QLogic 41xxx Series Adapters Linux Drivers (Continued)

Linux Driver	Description
qede	Linux Ethernet driver for the 41xxx Series Adapter. This driver directly controls the hardware and is responsible for sending and receiving Ethernet packets on behalf of the Linux host networking stack. This driver also receives and processes device interrupts on behalf of itself (for L2 networking). The qede driver requires Linux kernel version 2.6.32 or later. Testing was concentrated on the x86_64 architecture.
qedr	Linux RDMA over converged Ethernet (RoCE) driver. This driver works in the OpenFabrics Enterprise Distribution (OFED™) environment in conjunction with the qed core module and the qede Ethernet driver. RDMA user space applications also require that the libqedr user library is installed on the server.
qedi	Linux iSCSI-Offload driver for the 41xxx Series Adapters. This driver works with the Open iSCSI library.
qedf	Linux FCoE-Offload driver for the 41xxx Series Adapters. This driver works with Open FCoE library.

The Linux drivers can be installed using a source Red Hat® Package Manager (RPM) package or a kmod RPM package. The RHEL RPM packages are as follows:

- qlgc-fastlinq-<version>.<OS>.src.rpm
- qlgc-fastlinq-kmp-default-<version>.<arch>.rpm

The SLES source and kmp RPM packages are as follows:

- qlgc-fastlinq-<version>.<OS>.src.rpm
- qlgc-fastlinq-kmp-default-<version>.<OS>.<arch>.rpm

The following kernel module (kmod) RPM installs Linux drivers on SLES hosts running the Xen Hypervisor:

- qlgc-fastlinq-kmp-xen-<version>.<OS>.<arch>.rpm

The following source RPM installs the RDMA library code on RHEL and SLES hosts:

- qlgc-libqedr-<version>.<OS>.<arch>.src.rpm

The following source code TAR BZip2 (BZ2) compressed file installs Linux drivers on RHEL and SLES hosts:

- `fastlinq-<version>.tar.bz2`

NOTE

For network installations through NFS, FTP, or HTTP (using a network boot disk), a driver disk that contains the qede driver may be needed. Linux boot drivers can be compiled by modifying the makefile and the make environment.

Installing the Linux Drivers Without RDMA

To install the Linux drivers without RDMA:

1. Download the 41xxx Series Adapter Linux drivers from Dell:
dell.support.com
2. Remove the existing Linux drivers, as described in “[Removing the Linux Drivers](#)” on page 10.
3. Install the new Linux drivers using one of the following methods:
 - ❑ [Installing Linux Drivers Using the src RPM Package](#)
 - ❑ [Installing Linux Drivers Using the kmp/kmod RPM Package](#)
 - ❑ [Installing Linux Drivers Using the TAR File](#)

Removing the Linux Drivers

There are two procedures for removing Linux drivers: one for a non-RDMA environment and another for an RDMA environment. Choose the procedure that matches your environment.

To remove Linux drivers in a non-RDMA environment, unload and remove the drivers:

Follow the procedure that relates to the original installation method and the OS.

- If the Linux drivers were installed using an RPM package, issue the following commands:

```
rmmod qede
rmmod qed
depmod -a
rpm -e qlgc-fastlinq-kmp-default-<version>.<arch>
```

- If the Linux drivers were installed using a TAR file, issue the following commands:

```
rmmod qede  
rmmod qed  
depmod -a
```

- For RHEL:

```
cd /lib/modules/<version>/extra/qlgc-fastlinq  
rm -rf qed.ko qede.ko qedr.ko
```

- For SLES:

```
cd /lib/modules/<version>/updates/qlgc-fastlinq  
rm -rf qed.ko qede.ko qedr.ko
```

To remove Linux drivers in a non-RDMA environment:

1. To get the path to the currently installed drivers, issue the following command:

```
modinfo <driver name>
```

2. Unload and remove the Linux drivers.

- If the Linux drivers were installed using an RPM package, issue the following commands:

```
modprobe -r qede  
depmod -a  
rpm -e qlgc-fastlinq-kmp-default-<version>.<arch>
```

- If the Linux drivers were installed using a TAR file, issue the following commands:

```
modprobe -r qede  
depmod -a
```

NOTE

If the qedr is present, issue the `modprobe -r qedr` command instead.

3. Delete the `qed.ko`, `qede.ko`, and `qedr.ko` files from the directory in which they reside. For example, in SLES, issue the following commands:

```
cd /lib/modules/<version>/updates/qlgc-fastlinq
rm -rf qed.ko
rm -rf qede.ko
rm -rf qedr.ko
depmod -a
```

To remove Linux drivers in an RDMA environment:

1. To get the path to the installed drivers, issue the following command:

```
modinfo <driver name>
```

2. Unload and remove the Linux drivers.

```
modprobe -r qedr
modprobe -r qede
modprobe -r qed
depmod -a
```

3. Remove the driver module files:

- ❑ If the drivers were installed using an RPM package, issue the following command:

```
rpm -e qlgc-fastlinq-kmp-default-<version>.<arch>
```

- ❑ If the drivers were installed using a TAR file, issue the following commands for your operating system:

For RHEL:

```
cd /lib/modules/<version>/extra/qlgc-fastlinq
rm -rf qed.ko qede.ko qedr.ko
```

For SLES:

```
cd /lib/modules/<version>/updates/qlgc-fastlinq
rm -rf qed.ko qede.ko qedr.ko
```

Installing Linux Drivers Using the src RPM Package

To install Linux drivers using the src RPM package:

1. Issue the following at a command prompt:

```
rpm -ivh RPMS/<arch>/qlgc-fastlinq-<version>.src.rpm
```

2. Change the directory to the RPM path and build the binary RPM for the kernel.

For RHEL:

```
cd /root/rpmbuild  
rpmbuild -bb SPECS/fastlinq-<version>.spec
```

For SLES:

```
cd /usr/src/packages  
rpmbuild -bb SPECS/fastlinq-<version>.spec
```

3. Install the newly compiled RPM:

```
rpm -ivh RPMS/<arch>/qlgc-fastlinq-<version>.<arch>.rpm
```

NOTE

The `--force` option may be needed on some Linux distributions if conflicts are reported.

The drivers will be installed in the following paths.

For SLES:

```
/lib/modules/<version>/updates/qlgc-fastlinq
```

For RHEL:

```
/lib/modules/<version>/extra/qlgc-fastlinq
```

4. Turn on all ethX interfaces as follows:
ifconfig <ethX> up
5. For SLES, use YaST to configure the Ethernet interfaces to automatically start at boot by setting a static IP address or enabling DHCP on the interface.

Installing Linux Drivers Using the kmp/kmod RPM Package

To install kmod RPM package:

1. Issue the following command at a command prompt:
rpm -ivh qlgc-fastlinq-<version>.<arch>.rpm
2. Reload the driver:
modprobe -r qede
modprobe qede

Installing Linux Drivers Using the TAR File

To install Linux drivers using the TAR file:

1. Create a directory and extract the TAR files to the directory:
2. Change to the recently created directory, and then install the drivers:

```
tar xjvf fastlinq-<version>.tar.bz2
```

```
cd fastlinq-<version>  
make clean; make install
```

The qed and qede drivers will be installed in the following paths.

For SLES:

```
/lib/modules/<version>/updates/qlgc-fastlinq
```

For RHEL:

```
/lib/modules/<version>/extra/qlgc-fastlinq
```

3. Test the drivers by loading them (unload the existing drivers first, if necessary):

```
rmmod qede  
rmmod qed  
modprobe qed  
modprobe qede
```

Installing the Linux Drivers with RDMA

To install Linux drivers in an inbox OFED environment:

1. Download the 41xxx Series Adapter Linux drivers from the Dell:
dell.support.com
2. Configure RoCE on the adapter, as described in “Configuring RoCE on the Adapter for Linux” on page 69.
3. Remove existing Linux drivers, as described in “Removing the Linux Drivers” on page 10.
4. Install the new Linux drivers using one of the following methods:
 - ☐ [Installing Linux Drivers Using the kmp/kmod RPM Package](#)
 - ☐ [Installing Linux Drivers Using the TAR File](#)

5. Install libqedr libraries to work with RDMA user space applications. The libqedr RPM is available only for inbox OFED. You must select which RDMA (RoCE, RoCEv2 or iWARP) is used in UEFI until concurrent RoCE+iWARP capability is supported in the firmware). None is enabled by default. Issue the following command:

```
rpm -ivh qlgc-libqedr-<version>.<arch>.rpm
```

6. To build and install the libqedr user space library, issue the following command:

```
'make libqedr_install'
```

7. Test the drivers by loading them as follows:

```
modprobe qedr  
make install_libeqdr
```

Linux Driver Optional Parameters

[Table 3-2](#) describes the optional parameters for the qede driver.

Table 3-2. qede Driver Optional Parameters

Parameter	Description
debug	Controls driver verbosity level similar to <code>ethtool -s <dev> msglvl</code> .
int_mode	Controls interrupt mode other than MSI-X.
gro_enable	Enables or disables the hardware generic receive offload (GRO) feature. This feature is similar to the kernel's software GRO, but is only performed by the device hardware.
err_flags_override	A bitmap for disabling or forcing the actions taken in case of a hardware error: ■ bit #31 – An enable bit for this bitmask ■ bit #0 – Prevent hardware attentions from being reasserted ■ bit #1 – Collect debug data ■ bit #2 – Trigger a recovery process ■ bit #3 – Call WARN to get a call trace of the flow that led to the error

Linux Driver Operation Defaults

Table 3-3 lists the qed and qede Linux driver operation defaults.

Table 3-3. Linux Driver Operation Defaults

Operation	qed Driver Default	qede Driver Default
Speed	Auto-negotiation with speed advertised	Auto-negotiation with speed advertised
MSI/MSI-X	Enabled	Enabled
Flow Control	—	Auto-negotiation with RX and TX advertised
MTU	—	1500 (range is 46–9600)
Rx Ring Size	—	1000
Tx Ring Size	—	4078 (range is 128–8191)
Coalesce Rx Microseconds	—	24 (range is 0–255)
Coalesce Tx Microseconds	—	48
TSO	—	Enabled

Linux Driver Messages

To set the Linux driver message detail level, issue one of the following commands:

- **ethtool -s <interface> msglvl <value>**
- **modprobe qede debug=<value>**

Where <value> represents bits 0–15, which are standard Linux networking values, and bits 16 and greater are driver-specific.

Statistics

To view detailed statistics and configuration information, use the ethtool utility. See the ethtool man page for more information.

Installing Windows Driver Software

For information on iWARP, see [Chapter 7 iWARP Configuration](#).

- [Installing the Windows Drivers](#)
- [Removing the Windows Drivers](#)
- [Managing Adapter Properties](#)
- [Setting Power Management Options](#)

Installing the Windows Drivers

Install Windows driver software using the Dell Update Package (DUP):

- [Running the DUP in the GUI](#)
- [DUP Installation Options](#)
- [DUP Installation Examples](#)

Running the DUP in the GUI

To run the DUP in the GUI:

1. Double-click the icon representing the Dell Update Package file.

NOTE

The actual file name of the Dell Update Package varies.

2. In the Dell Update Package window ([Figure 3-1](#)), click **Install**.

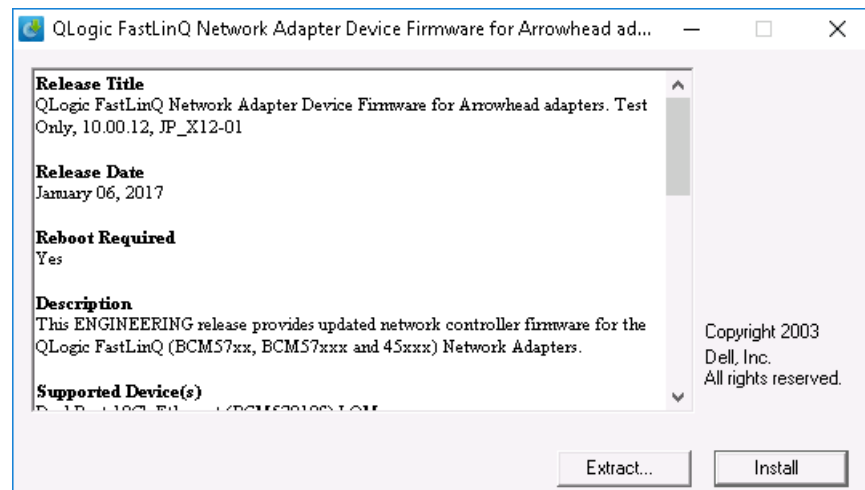


Figure 3-1. Dell Update Package Window

3. In the QLogic Super Installer—InstallShield® Wizard's Welcome window (Figure 3-2), click **Next**.

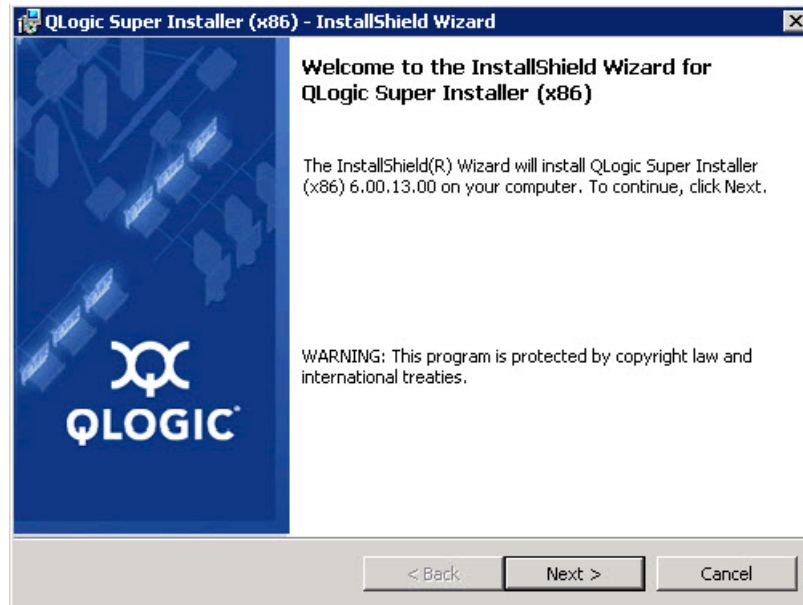


Figure 3-2. QLogic InstallShield Wizard: Welcome Window

4. Complete the following in the wizard's License Agreement window (Figure 3-3):
 - a. Read the QLogic End User Software License Agreement.
 - b. To continue, select **I accept the terms in the license agreement**.

- c. Click **Next**.

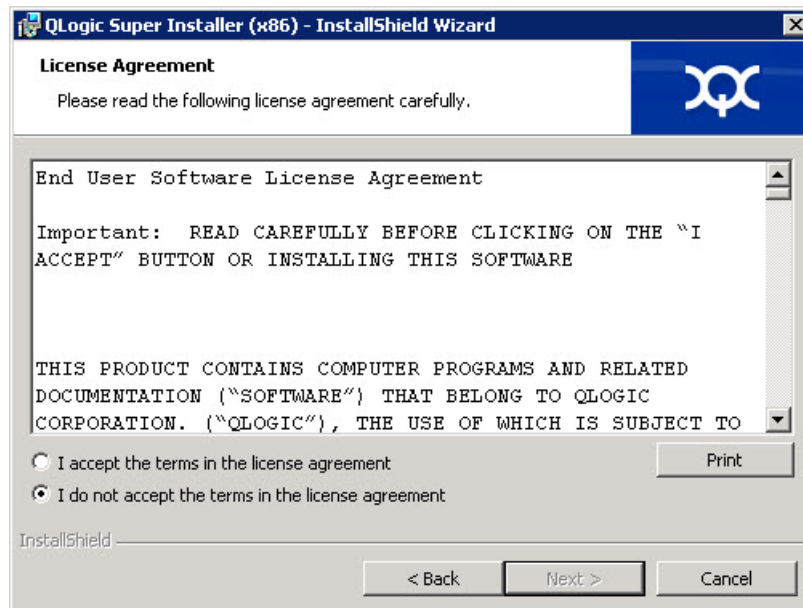


Figure 3-3. QLogic InstallShield Wizard: License Agreement Window

5. Complete the wizard's Setup Type window ([Figure 3-4](#)) as follows:
- Select one of the following setup types:
 - Click **Complete** to install all program features.
 - Click **Custom** to manually select the features to be installed.
 - To continue, click **Next**.

If you clicked **Complete**, proceed directly to [Step 6b](#).

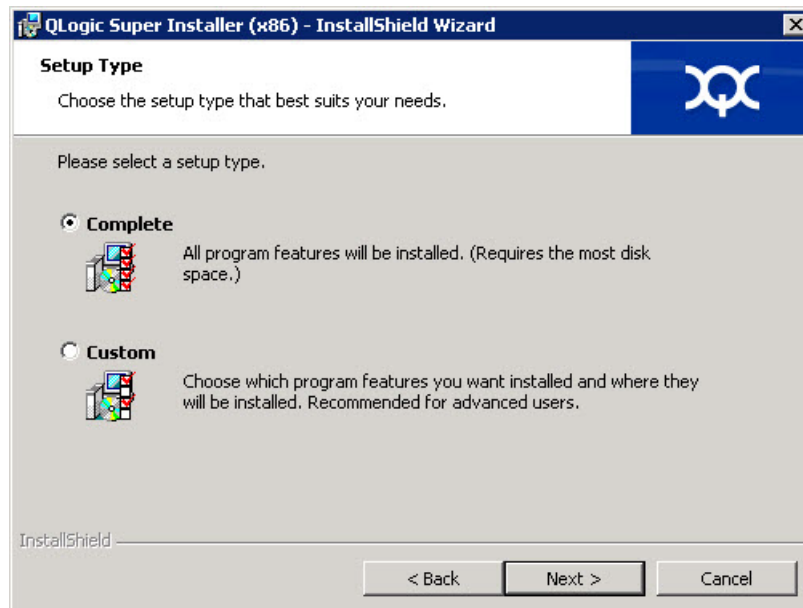


Figure 3-4. InstallShield Wizard: Setup Type Window

6. If you selected **Custom** in [Step 5](#), complete the Custom Setup window ([Figure 3-5](#)) as follows:
 - a. Select the features to install. By default, all features are selected. To change a feature's install setting, click the icon next to it, and then select one of the following options:
 - **This feature will be installed on the local hard drive**—Marks the feature for installation without affecting any of its subfeatures.
 - **This feature, and all subfeatures, will be installed on the local hard drive**—Marks the feature and all of its subfeatures for installation.
 - **This feature will not be available**—Prevents the feature from being installed.

- b. Click **Next** to continue.

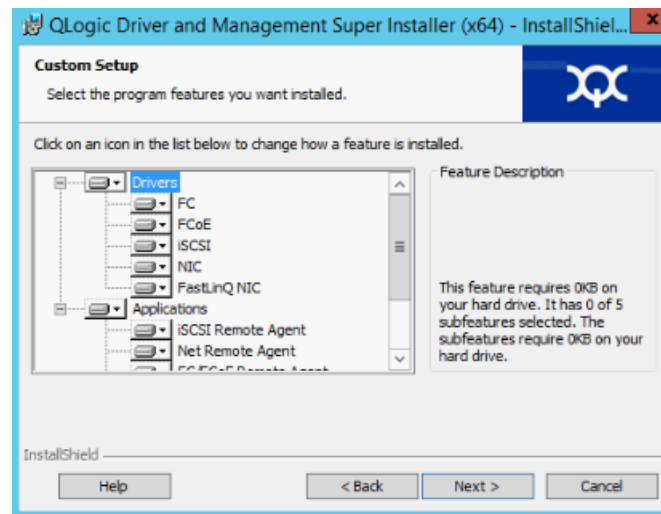


Figure 3-5. InstallShield Wizard: Custom Setup Window

7. In the InstallShield Wizard's Ready To Install window (Figure 3-6), click **Install**. The InstallShield Wizard installs the QLogic Adapter drivers and Management Software Installer.

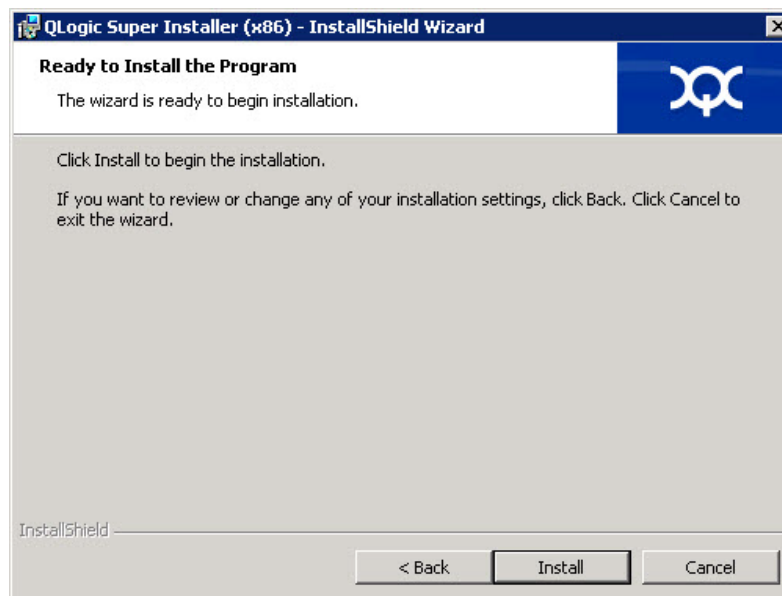


Figure 3-6. InstallShield Wizard: Ready to Install the Program Window

8. When the installation is complete, the InstallShield Wizard Completed window appears (Figure 3-7). Click **Finish** to dismiss the installer.

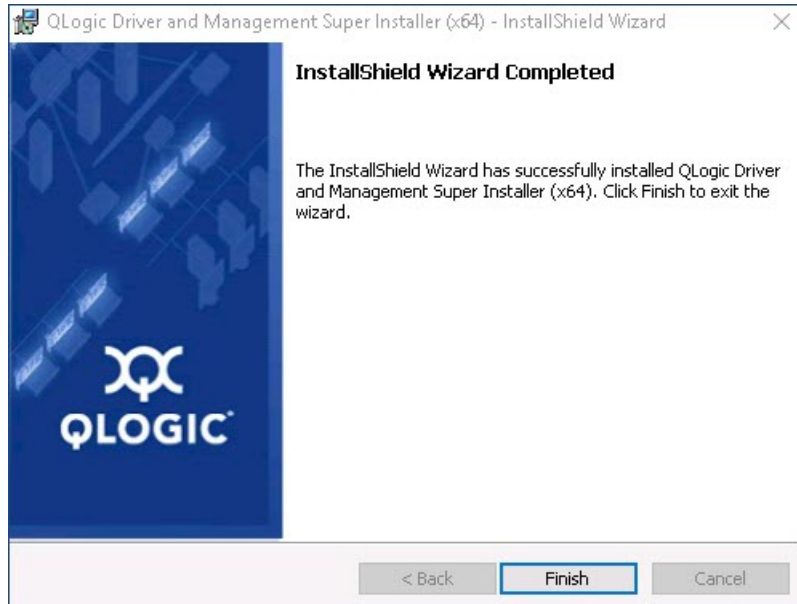


Figure 3-7. InstallShield Wizard: Completed Window

9. In the Dell Update Package window (Figure 3-8), “Update installer operation was successful” indicates completion.
 - ☐ (Optional) To open the log file, click **View Installation Log**. The log file shows the progress of the DUP installation, any previous installed versions, any error messages, and other information about the installation.
 - ☐ To close the Update Package window, click **CLOSE**.

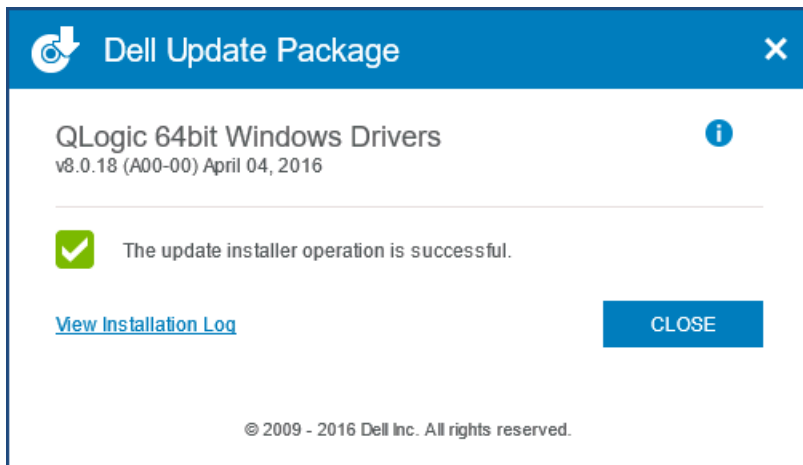


Figure 3-8. Dell Update Package Window

DUP Installation Options

To customize the DUP installation behavior, use the following command line options.

- To extract only the driver components to a directory:
/drivers=<path>

NOTE

This command requires the **/s** option.

- To install or update only the driver components:
/driveronly

NOTE

This command requires the **/s** option.

- (Advanced) Use the `/passthrough` option to send all text following `/passthrough` directly to the QLogic installation software of the DUP. This mode suppresses any provided GUIs, but not necessarily those of the QLogic software.
`/passthrough`
- (Advanced) To return a coded description of this DUP's supported features:
`/capabilities`

NOTE

This command requires the `/s` option.

DUP Installation Examples

The following examples show how to use the installation options.

To update the system silently:

```
<DUP_file_name>.exe /s
```

To extract the update contents to the `C:\mydir\` directory:

```
<DUP_file_name>.exe /s /e=C:\mydir
```

To extract the driver components to the `C:\mydir\` directory:

```
<DUP_file_name>.exe /s /drivers=C:\mydir
```

To install only the driver components:

```
<DUP_file_name>.exe /s /driveronly
```

To change from the default log location to `C:\my path with spaces\log.txt`:

```
<DUP_file_name>.exe /l="C:\my path with spaces\log.txt"
```

Removing the Windows Drivers

To remove the Windows drivers:

1. In the Control Panel, click **Programs**, and then click **Programs and Features**.
2. In the list of programs, select **QLogic FastLinQ Driver Installer**, and then click **Uninstall**.
3. Follow the instructions to remove the drivers.

Managing Adapter Properties

To view or change the 41xxx Series Adapter properties:

1. In the Control Panel, click **Device Manager**.
2. On the properties of the selected adapter, click the **Advanced** tab.
3. On the Advanced page (Figure 3-9), select an item under **Property** and then change the **Value** for that item as needed.

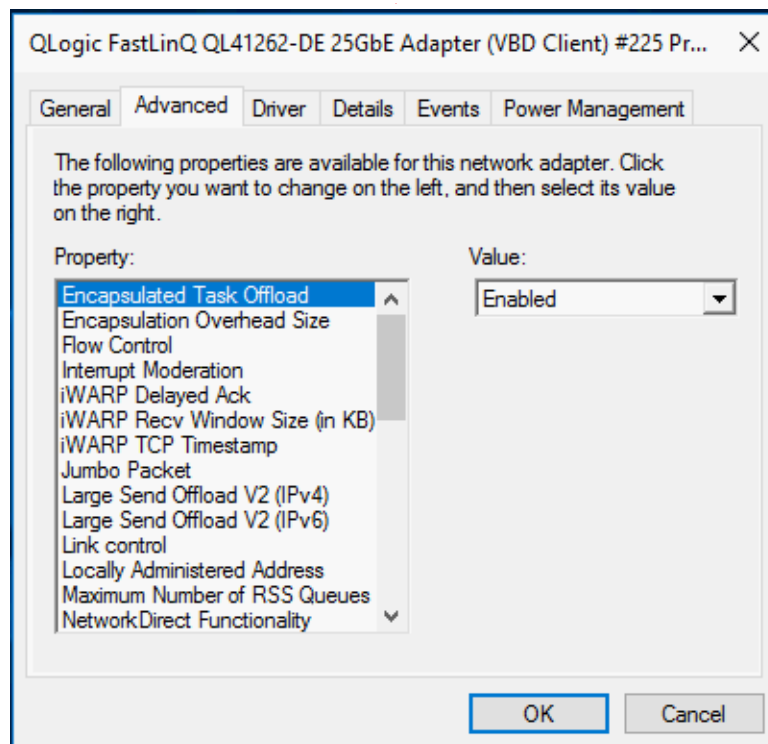


Figure 3-9. Setting Advanced Adapter Properties

Setting Power Management Options

You can set power management options to allow the operating system to turn off the controller to save power or to allow the controller to wake up the computer. If the device is busy (servicing a call, for example), the operating system will not shut down the device. The operating system attempts to shut down every possible device only when the computer attempts to go into hibernation. To have the controller remain on at all times, do not select the **Allow the computer to turn off the device to save power** check box (Figure 3-10).

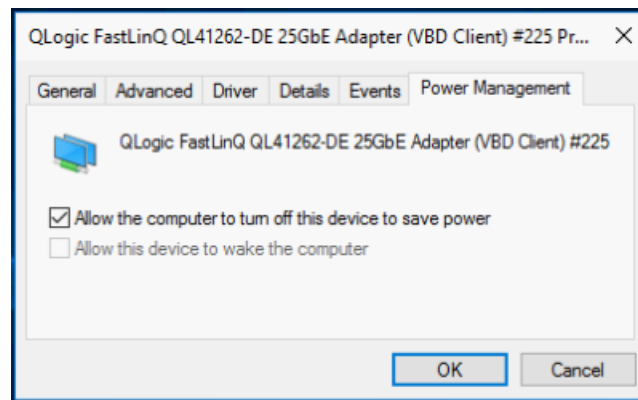


Figure 3-10. Power Management Options

NOTE

- The Power Management page is available only for servers that support power management.
 - Do not select **Allow the computer to turn off the device to save power** for any adapter that is a member of a team.
-

Installing VMware Driver Software

This section describes the qedentv VMware ESXi driver for the 41xxx Series Adapters:

- [VMware Drivers and Driver Packages](#)
- [Installing VMware Drivers](#)
- [VMware Driver Optional Parameters](#)
- [VMware Driver Parameter Defaults](#)
- [Removing the VMware Driver](#)
- [FCoE Support](#)
- [iSCSI Support](#)

VMware Drivers and Driver Packages

[Table 3-4](#) lists the VMware ESXi drivers for the protocols.

Table 3-4. VMware Drivers

VMware Drivers	Description
qedentv	Native networking driver
qedrntv	Native RDMA-Offload (RoCE and RoCEv2) driver ^a
qedf	Native FCoE-Offload driver
qedil	Legacy iSCSI-Offload driver

^a The certified RoCE driver is not included in this release. The uncertified driver may be available as an early preview.

The ESXi drivers are included as individual driver packages and are not bundled together, except as noted. [Table 3-5](#) lists the ESXi versions and applicable driver versions.

Table 3-5. ESXi Driver Packages by Release

ESXi Release	Protocol	Driver Name	Driver Version
ESXi 6.5 ^a	NIC	qedentv	3.0.7.5
	FCoE	qedf	1.2.24.0
	iSCSI	qedil	1.0.19.0
	RoCE	qedrntv	3.0.7.5.1

Table 3-5. ESXi Driver Packages by Release (Continued)

ESXi Release	Protocol	Driver Name	Driver Version
ESXi 6.0u3	NIC	qedentv	2.0.7.5
	FCoE	qedf	1.2.24.0
	iSCSI	qedil	1.0.19.0

^a For ESXi 6.5, the NIC and RoCE drivers have been packaged together and can be installed as a single offline bundle using the standard ESXi installation commands. The package name is *qedentv_3.0.7.5_qedrntv_3.0.7.5.1_signed_drivers.zip*. The recommended installation sequence is NIC and RoCE drivers, followed by FCoE and iSCSI drivers.

Install individual drivers using either:

- Standard ESXi package installation commands (see [Installing VMware Drivers](#))
- Procedures in the individual driver Read Me files
- Procedures in the following VMware KB article:
https://kb.vmware.com/selfservice/microsites/search.do?language=en_US&cmd=displayKC&externalId=2137853

You should install the NIC driver first, followed by the storage drivers.

Installing VMware Drivers

You can use the driver ZIP file to install a new driver or update an existing driver. Be sure to install the entire driver set from the same driver ZIP file. Mixing drivers from different ZIP files will cause problems.

To install the VMware driver:

1. Download the VMware driver for the 41xxx Series Adapter from the VMware support page:
www.vmware.com/support.html
2. Power up the ESX host, and then log into an account with administrator authority.
3. Unzip the driver ZIP file, and then extract the `.vib` file.
4. Use the Linux `scp` utility to copy a `.vib` file from a local system into the `/tmp` directory on an ESX server with IP address 10.10.10.10. For example, issue the following command:

```
#scp qedentv-1.0.3.11-10EM.550.0.0.1331820.x86_64.vib root@10.10.10.10:/tmp
```

You can place the file anywhere that is accessible to the ESX console shell.

NOTE

If you do not have a Linux machine, you can use the vSphere datastore file browser to upload the files to the server.

5. Place the host in maintenance mode by issuing the following command:
#esxcli --maintenance-mode
6. Select one of the following installation options:
 - ☐ **Option 1:** Install the `.vib` directly on an ESX server using either the CLI or the VMware Update Manager (VUM):
 - To install the `.vib` file using the CLI, issue the following command. Be sure to specify the full `.vib` file path.

```
# esxcli software vib install -v  
/tmp/qedentv-1.0.3.11-10EM.550.0.0.1331820.x86_64.vib
```
 - To install the `.vib` file using the VUM, see the knowledge base article [here](#):
[Updating an ESXi/ESX host using VMware vCenter Update Manager 4.x and 5.x \(1019545\)](#)
 - ☐ **Option 2:** Install all of the individual VIBs at one time by issuing the following command:

```
# esxcli software vib install -d  
/tmp/qedentv-bundle-2.0.3.zip
```

To upgrade an existing driver:

Follow the steps for a new installation, except replace the command in the preceding Option 1 with the following:

```
#esxcli software vib update -v  
/tmp/qedentv-1.0.3.11-10EM.550.0.0.1331820.x86_64.vib
```

VMware Driver Optional Parameters

Table 3-6 describes the optional parameters that can be supplied as command line arguments to the `esxcfg-module` command.

Table 3-6. VMware Driver Optional Parameters

Parameter	Description
<code>hw_vlan</code>	Globally enables (1) or disables (0) hardware VLAN insertion and removal. Disable this parameter when the upper layer needs to send or receive fully formed packets. <code>hw_vlan=1</code> is the default.
<code>num_queues</code>	Specifies the number of TX/RX queue pairs. <code>num_queues</code> can be 1–11 or one of the following: ■ -1 allows the driver to determine the optimal number of queue pairs (default). ■ 0 uses the default queue. You can specify multiple values delimited by commas for multiport or multi-function configurations.
<code>multi_rx_filters</code>	Specifies the number of RX filters per RX queue, excluding the default queue. <code>multi_rx_filters</code> can be 1–4 or one of the following values: ■ -1 uses the default number of RX filters per queue. ■ 0 disables RX filters.
<code>disable_tpa</code>	Enables (0) or disables (1) the TPA (LRO) feature. <code>disable_tpa=0</code> is the default.
<code>max_vfs</code>	Specifies the number of virtual functions (VFs) per physical function (PF). <code>max_vfs</code> can be 0 (disabled) or 64 VFs on a single port (enabled). The 64 VF maximum support for ESXi is an OS resource allocation constraint.
RSS	Specifies the number of receive side scaling queues used by the host or virtual extensible LAN (VXLAN) tunneled traffic for a PF. RSS can be 2, 3, 4, or one of the following values: ■ -1 uses the default number of queues. ■ 0 or 1 disables RSS queues. You can specify multiple values delimited by commas for multiport or multi-function configurations.
<code>debug</code>	Specifies the level of data that the driver records in the <code>vmkernel</code> log file. <code>debug</code> can have the following values, shown in increasing amounts of data: ■ 0x80000000 indicates Notice level. ■ 0x40000000 indicates Information level (includes the Notice level). ■ 0x3FFFFFFF indicates Verbose level for all driver submodules (includes the Information and Notice levels).

Table 3-6. VMware Driver Optional Parameters (Continued)

Parameter	Description
auto_fw_reset	Enables (1) or disables (0) the driver automatic firmware recovery capability. When this parameter is enabled, the driver attempts to recover from events such as transmit timeouts, firmware asserts, and adapter parity errors. The default is auto_fw_reset=1.
vxlan_filter_en	Enables (1) or disables (0) the VXLAN filtering based on the outer MAC, the inner MAC, and the VXLAN network (VNI), directly matching traffic to a specific queue. The default is vxlan_filter_en=1. You can specify multiple values delimited by commas for multiport or multifunction configurations.
enable_vxlan_offld	Enables (1) or disables (0) the VXLAN tunneled traffic checksum offload and TCP segmentation offload (TSO) capability. The default is enable_vxlan_offld=1. You can specify multiple values delimited by commas for multiport or multifunction configurations.

VMware Driver Parameter Defaults

Table 3-7 lists the VMware driver parameter default values.

Table 3-7. VMware Driver Parameter Defaults

Parameter	Default
Speed	Autonegotiation with all speeds advertised. The speed parameter must be the same on all ports. If auto-negotiation is enabled on the device, all of the device ports will use autonegotiation.
Flow Control	Autonegotiation with RX and TX advertised
MTU	1,500 (range 46-9,600)
Rx Ring Size	8,192 (range 128-8,192)
Tx Ring Size	8,192 (range 128-8,192)
MSI-X	Enabled
Transmit Send Offload (TSO)	Enabled
Large Receive Offload (LRO)	Enabled
RSS	Enabled (four RX queues)
HW VLAN	Enabled

Table 3-7. VMware Driver Parameter Defaults (Continued)

Parameter	Default
Number of Queues	Enabled (eight RX/TX queue pairs)
Wake on LAN (WoL)	Disabled

Removing the VMware Driver

To remove the `.vib` file (`qedentv`), issue the following command:

```
# esxcli software vib remove --vibname qedentv
```

To remove the driver, issue the following command:

```
# vmkload_mod -u qedentv
```

FCoE Support

[Table 3-8](#) describes the driver included in the VMware software package to support QLogic FCoE converged network interface controllers (C-NICs). The FCoE and DCB feature set is supported on VMware ESXi 5.0 and later.

Table 3-8. QLogic 41xxx Series Adapter VMware FCoE Driver

Driver	Description
qedf	The QLogic VMware FCoE driver is a kernel-mode driver that provides a translation layer between the VMware SCSI stack and the QLogic FCoE firmware and hardware.

iSCSI Support

[Table 3-9](#) describes the iSCSI driver.

Table 3-9. QLogic 41xxx Series Adapter iSCSI Driver

Driver	Description
qedil	The qedil driver is the QLogic VMware iSCSI HBA driver. Similar to qedf, qedil is a kernel mode driver that provides a translation layer between the VMware SCSI stack and the QLogic iSCSI firmware and hardware. qedil leverages the services provided by the VMware iscsid infrastructure for session management and IP services.

4 Upgrading the Firmware

This chapter provides information about upgrading the firmware using the Dell Update Package (DUP).

The firmware DUP is a Flash update utility only; it is not used for adapter configuration. You can run the firmware DUP by double-clicking the executable file. Alternatively, you can run the firmware DUP from the command line with several supported command line options.

- [Running the DUP by Double-Clicking](#)
- [Running the DUP from a Command Line](#)
- [Running the DUP Using the .bin File](#) (Linux only)

Running the DUP by Double-Clicking

To run the firmware DUP by double-clicking the executable file:

1. Double-click the icon representing the firmware Dell Update Package file.
The Dell Update Package splash screen appears, as shown in [Figure 4-1](#). Click **Install** to continue.

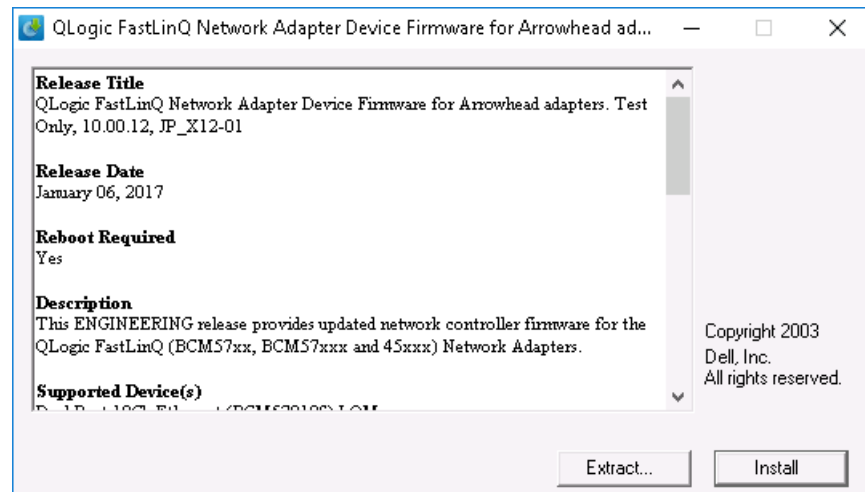


Figure 4-1. Dell Update Package: Splash Screen

2. Follow the on-screen instructions. In the Warning dialog box, click **Yes** to continue the installation.

The installer indicates that it is loading the new firmware, as shown in [Figure 4-2](#).

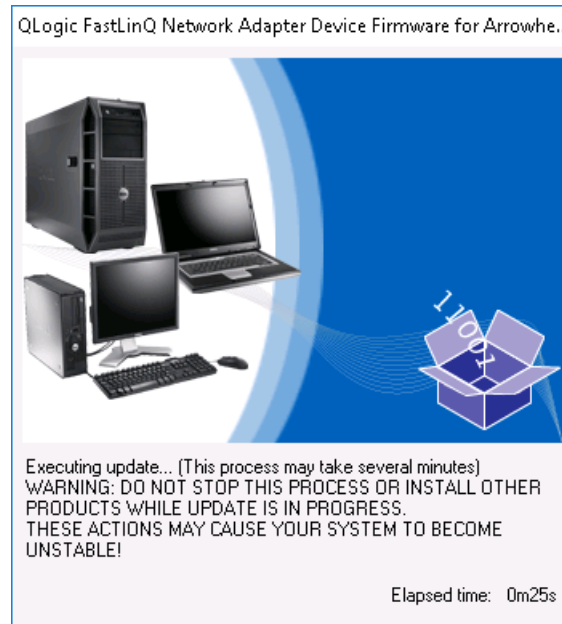


Figure 4-2. Dell Update Package: Loading New Firmware

When complete, the installer indicates the result of the installation, as shown in [Figure 4-3](#).

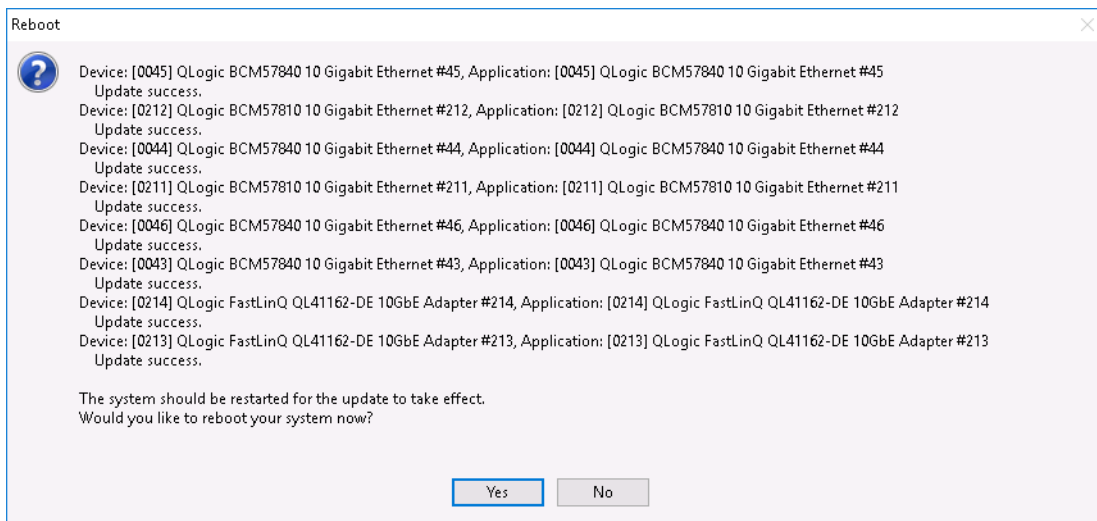


Figure 4-3. Dell Update Package: Installation Results

3. Click **Yes** to reboot the system.
4. Click **Finish** to complete the installation, as shown in [Figure 4-4](#).

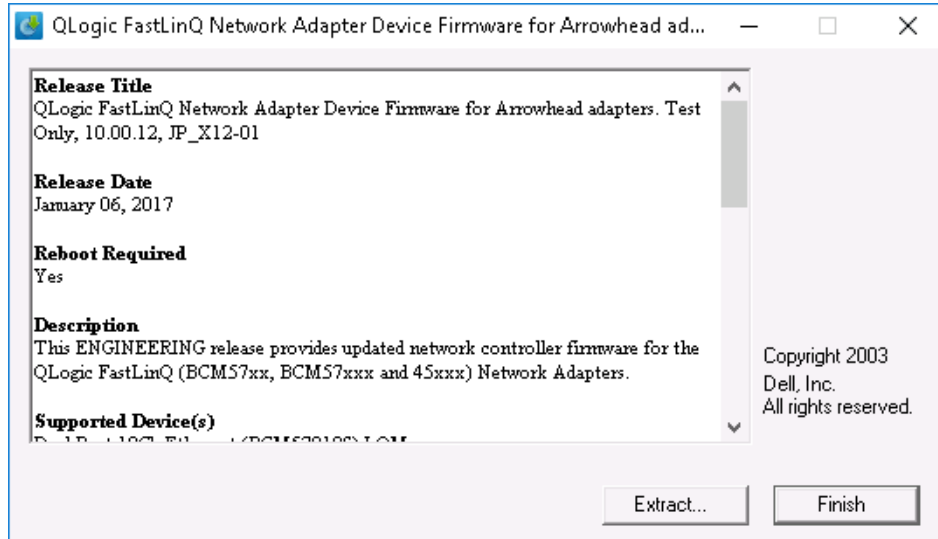


Figure 4-4. Dell Update Package: Finish Installation

Running the DUP from a Command Line

Running the firmware DUP from the command line, with no options specified, results in the same behavior as double-clicking the DUP icon. Note that the actual file name of the DUP will vary.

To run the firmware DUP from a command line:

- Issue the following command:
`C:\> Network_Firmware_2T12N_WN32_<version>_X16.EXE`

Figure 4-5 shows the options that you can use to customize the Dell Update Package installation.

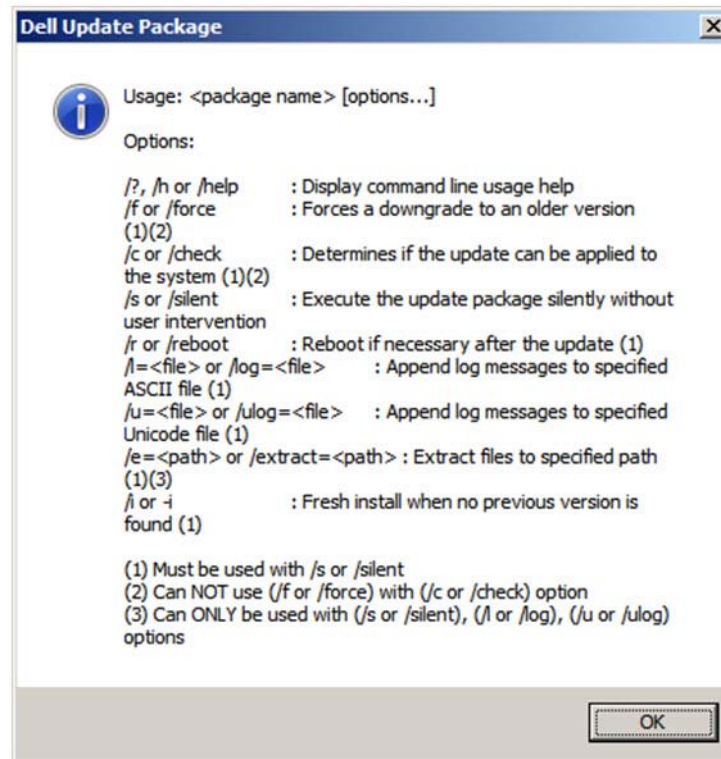


Figure 4-5. DUP Command Line Options

Running the DUP Using the .bin File

The following procedure is supported only on Linux OS.

To update the DUP using the .bin file:

1. Copy the `Network_Firmware_NJCX1_LN_X.Y.Z.BIN` file to the system under test (SUT).
2. Change the file type into an executable file as follows:
`chmod 777 Network_Firmware_NJCX1_LN_X.Y.Z.BIN`
3. To start the update process, issue the following command:
`./Network_Firmware_NJCX1_LN_X.Y.Z.BIN`
4. After the firmware is updated, reboot the system.

Example output from SUT during the DUP update:

```
./Network_Firmware_NJCX1_LN_08.07.26.BIN
Collecting inventory...
Running validation...
BCM57810 10 Gigabit Ethernet rev 10 (p2p1)
The version of this Update Package is the same as the currently installed
version.
Software application name: BCM57810 10 Gigabit Ethernet rev 10 (p2p1)
Package version: 08.07.26
Installed version: 08.07.26
BCM57810 10 Gigabit Ethernet rev 10 (p2p2)
The version of this Update Package is the same as the currently installed
version.
Software application name: BCM57810 10 Gigabit Ethernet rev 10 (p2p2)
Package version: 08.07.26
Installed version: 08.07.26
Continue? Y/N:Y
Y entered; update was forced by user
Executing update...
WARNING: DO NOT STOP THIS PROCESS OR INSTALL OTHER DELL PRODUCTS WHILE UPDATE
IS IN PROGRESS.
THESE ACTIONS MAY CAUSE YOUR SYSTEM TO BECOME UNSTABLE!
.....
Device: BCM57810 10 Gigabit Ethernet rev 10 (p2p1)
  Application: BCM57810 10 Gigabit Ethernet rev 10 (p2p1)
  Update success.
Device: BCM57810 10 Gigabit Ethernet rev 10 (p2p2)
  Application: BCM57810 10 Gigabit Ethernet rev 10 (p2p2)
  Update success.
Would you like to reboot your system now?
Continue? Y/N:Y
```

5

Adapter Preboot Configuration

During the host boot process, you have the opportunity to pause and perform adapter management tasks using the Human Infrastructure Interface (HII) application. These tasks include the following:

- [Displaying Firmware Image Properties](#)
- [Configuring Device-level Parameters](#)
- [Configuring NIC Parameters](#)
- [Configuring Data Center Bridging](#)
- [Configuring FCoE Boot](#)
- [Configuring iSCSI Boot](#)
- [Configuring Partitions](#)

NOTE

The HII screen shots in this chapter are representative and may not match the screens that you see on your system.

Getting Started

To start the HII application:

1. Open the System Setup window for your platform. For information about launching the System Setup, consult the user guide for your system.
2. In the System Setup window ([Figure 5-1](#)), select **Device Settings**, and then press ENTER.

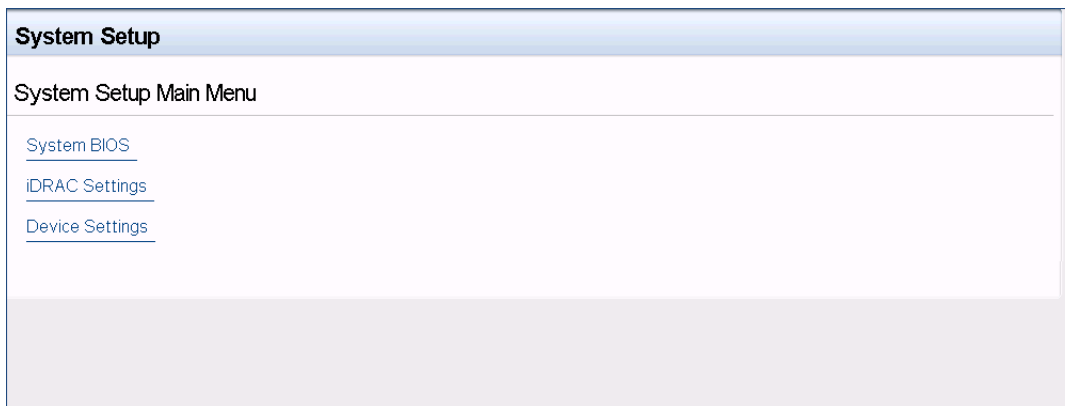


Figure 5-1. System Setup

3. In the Device Settings window ([Figure 5-2](#)), select the 41xxx Series Adapter port that you want to configure, and then press ENTER.

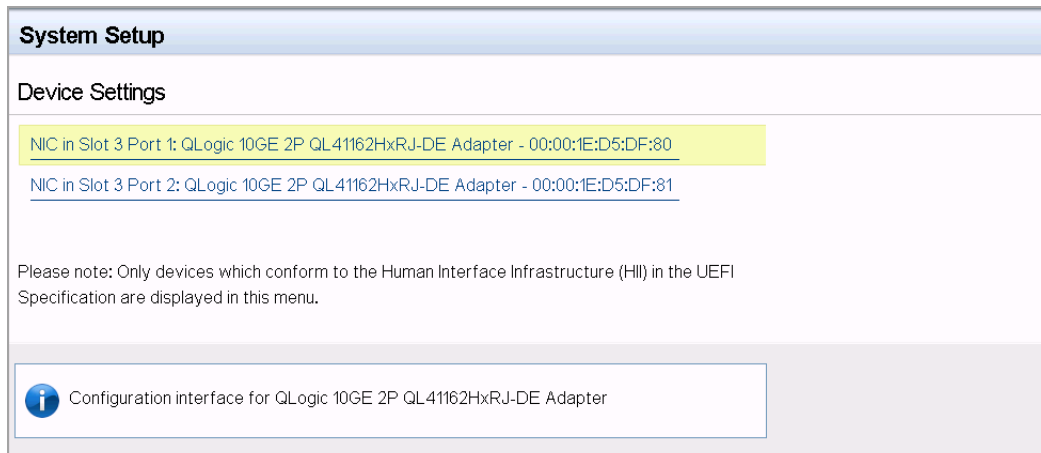


Figure 5-2. System Setup: Device Settings

4. The Main Configuration Page (Figure 5-3) presents the adapter management options where you can set the partitioning mode.

Main Configuration Page

Firmware Image Properties

Device Level Configuration

NIC Configuration

Data Center Bridging (DCB) Settings

Device Name

Chip Type

PCI Device ID

PCI Address

Blink LEDs

Link Status

MAC Address

Virtual MAC Address

QLogic 10GE 2P QL41162HxRJ-DE Adapter

BCM57940S A2

8070

86:00

0

Connected

00:0E:1E:D5:F8:76

00:00:00:00:00:00

Figure 5-3. Main Configuration Page

- ☐ Under **Device Level Configuration**, set the **Partitioning Mode** to **NPAR** to add the **NIC Partitioning Configuration** option to the Main Configuration Page, as shown in Figure 5-4.

NOTE

NPAR is not available on ports with a maximum speed of 1G.

Main Configuration Page

Firmware Image Properties

Device Level Configuration

NIC Configuration

Data Center Bridging (DCB) Settings

NIC Partitioning Configuration

Device Name

QLogic 10GE 2P QL41162HxRJ-DE Adapter

Figure 5-4. Main Configuration Page, Setting Partitioning Mode to NPAR

In [Figure 5-3](#) and [Figure 5-4](#), the Main Configuration Page shows the following:

- **Firmware Image Properties** (see [“Displaying Firmware Image Properties” on page 42](#))
- **Device Level Configuration** (see [“Configuring Device-level Parameters” on page 43](#))
- **NIC Configuration** (see [“Configuring NIC Parameters” on page 44](#))
- **iSCSI Configuration** (if iSCSI remote boot is allowed by enabling iSCSI offload in NPAR mode on the port’s third partition) (see [“Configuring iSCSI Boot” on page 50](#))
- **FCoE Configuration** (if FCoE boot from SAN is allowed by enabling FCoE offload in NPAR mode on the port’s second partition) (see [“Configuring FCoE Boot” on page 48](#))
- **Data Center Bridging (DCB) Settings** (see [“Configuring Data Center Bridging” on page 47](#))
- **NIC Partitioning Configuration** (if NPAR is selected on the Device Level Configuration page) (see [“Configuring Partitions” on page 55](#))

In addition, the Main Configuration Page presents the adapter properties listed in [Table 5-1](#).

Table 5-1. Adapter Properties

Adapter Property	Description
Device Name	Factory-assigned device name
Chip Type	ASIC version
PCI Device ID	Unique vendor-specific PCI device ID
PCI Address	PCI device address in bus-device function format
Blink LEDs	User-defined blink count for the port LED
Link Status	External link status
MAC Address	Manufacturer-assigned permanent device MAC address
Virtual MAC Address	User-defined device MAC address
iSCSI MAC Address ^a	Manufacturer-assigned permanent device iSCSI Offload MAC address
iSCSI Virtual MAC Address ^a	User-defined device iSCSI Offload MAC address
FCoE MAC Address ^b	Manufacturer-assigned permanent device FCoE Offload MAC address

Table 5-1. Adapter Properties (Continued)

Adapter Property	Description
FCoE Virtual MAC Address ^b	User-defined device FCoE Offload MAC address
FCoE WWPN ^b	Manufacturer-assigned permanent device FCoE Offload WWPN (world wide port name)
FCoE Virtual WWPN ^b	User-defined device FCoE Offload WWPN
FCoE WWNN ^b	Manufacturer-assigned permanent device FCoE Offload WWNN (world wide node name)
FCoE Virtual WWNN ^b	User-defined device FCoE Offload WWNN

^a This property is visible only if **iSCSI Offload** is enabled on the NIC Partitioning Configuration page.

^b This property is visible only if **FCoE Offload** is enabled on the NIC Partitioning Configuration page.

Displaying Firmware Image Properties

To view the properties for the firmware image, select **Firmware Image Properties** on the Main Configuration Page, and then press ENTER. The Firmware Image Properties page (Figure 5-5) specifies the following view-only data:

- **Family Firmware Version** is the multiboot image version, which comprises several firmware component images.
- **MBI Version** is the Cavium QLogic bundle image version that is active on the device.
- **Controller BIOS Version** is the management firmware version.
- **EFI Driver Version** is the extensible firmware interface (EFI) driver version.
- **L2B Firmware Version** is the NIC offload firmware version for boot.

Main Configuration Page • Firmware Image Properties	
Family Firmware Version	0.0.0
MBI Version	00.00.00
Controller BIOS Version	08.18.27.00
EFI Version	02.01.02.14
L2B Firmware Version	08.18.02.00

Figure 5-5. Firmware Image Properties

Configuring Device-level Parameters

NOTE

The iSCSI physical functions (PFs) are listed when the iSCSI Offload feature is enabled in NPAR mode only. The FCoE PFs are listed when the FCoE Offload feature is enabled in NPAR mode only. Not all adapter models support iSCSI Offload and FCoE Offload. Only one offload can be enabled per port, and only in NPAR mode.

Device-level configuration includes the following parameters:

- **Virtualization Mode**
- **NPAREP Mode**

To configure device-level parameters:

1. On the Main Configuration Page, select **Device Level Configuration** (see [Figure 5-3 on page 40](#)), and then press ENTER.
2. On the **Device Level Configuration** page, select values for the device-level parameters, as shown in [Figure 5-6](#).

Main Configuration Page • Device Level Configuration	
Virtualization Mode	NPar + SR-IOV
NParEP Mode	☒ Enabled ☐ Disabled

Figure 5-6. Device Level Configuration

NOTE

QL41264HMCU-DE (part number 5V6Y4) and QL41264HMRJ-DE (part number 0D1WT) adapters show support for NPAR, SR-IOV and NPAR-EP in the Device Level Configuration, though these features are not supported on 1Gbps ports 3 and 4.

3. For **Virtualization Mode**, select one of the following modes to apply to all adapter ports:
 - ☐ **None** (default) specifies that no virtualization mode is enabled.
 - ☐ **NPAR** sets the adapter to switch-independent NIC partitioning mode.
 - ☐ **SR-IOV** sets the adapter to SR-IOV mode.
 - ☐ **NPar + SR-IOV** sets the adapter to SR-IOV over NPAR mode.

4. **NParEP Mode** configures the maximum quantity of partitions per adapter. This parameter is visible when you select either **NPAR** or **NPar + SR-IOV** as the **Virtualization Mode** in [Step 2](#).
 - ☐ **Enabled** allows you to configure up to 16 partitions per adapter.
 - ☐ **Disabled** allows you to configure up to 8 partitions per adapter.
5. Click **Back**.
6. When prompted, click **Yes** to save the changes. Changes take effect after a system reset.

Configuring NIC Parameters

NIC configuration includes setting the following parameters:

- **Link Speed**
- **NIC + RDMA Mode**
- **RDMA Protocol Support**
- **Boot Mode**
- **FEC Mode**
- **Energy Efficient Ethernet**
- **Virtual LAN Mode**
- **Virtual LAN ID**

To configure NIC parameters:

1. On the Main Configuration Page, select **NIC Configuration** ([Figure 5-3 on page 40](#)), and then click **Finish**.

[Figure 5-7](#) shows the NIC Configuration page.

Main Configuration Page • NIC Configuration	
Link Speed	☒ Auto Negotiated ☐ 1 Gbps ☐ 10 Gbps ☐ 25 Gbps ☐ SmartAN
NIC + RDMA Mode	☒ Enabled ☐ Disabled
RDMA Protocol Support	☒ RoCE ☐ iWARP ☐ iWARP + RoCE
Boot Mode	☐ PXE ☒ iSCSI ☐ Disabled
Energy Efficient Ethernet	Optimal Power and Performance
Virtual LAN Mode	☐ Enabled ☒ Disabled
Virtual LAN ID	1

Figure 5-7. NIC Configuration

2. Select one of the following **Link Speed** options for the selected port. Not all speed selections are available on all adapters.
 - ☐ **Auto Negotiated** enables Auto Negotiation mode on the port. FEC mode selection is not available for this speed mode.

- ☐ **1 Gbps** enables 1GbE fixed speed mode on the port. This mode is intended only for 1GbE interfaces and should not be configured for adapter interfaces that operate at other speeds. FEC mode selection is not available for this speed mode. This mode is not available on all adapters.
 - ☐ **10 Gbps** enables 10GbE fixed speed mode on the port. This mode is not available on all adapters.
 - ☐ **25 Gbps** enables 25GbE fixed speed mode on the port. This mode is not available on all adapters.
 - ☐ **SmartAN** (Default) enables FastLinQ SmartAN link speed mode on the port. No FEC mode selection is available for this speed mode. The **SmartAN** setting cycles through all possible link speeds and FEC modes until a link is established. This mode is intended for use only with 25G interfaces. If you configure SmartAN for a 10Gb interface, the system will apply settings for a 10G interface. This mode is not available on all adapters.
3. For **NIC + RDMA Mode**, select either **Enabled** or **Disabled** for RDMA on the port. This setting applies to all partitions of the port, if in NPAR mode.
4. **FEC Mode** is visible when **25 Gbps** fixed speed mode is selected as the **Link Speed** in [Step 2](#). For **FEC Mode**, select one of the following options. Not all FEC modes are available on all adapters.
- ☐ **None** disables all FEC modes.
 - ☐ **Fire Code** enables Fire Code (BASE-R) FEC mode.
 - ☐ **Reed Solomon** enables Reed Solomon FEC mode.
 - ☐ **Auto** enables the port to cycle through **None**, **Fire Code**, and **Reed Solomon** FEC modes (at that link speed) in a round-robin fashion, until a link is established.
5. The **RDMA Protocol Support** setting applies to all partitions of the port, if in NPAR mode. This setting appears if the **NIC + RDMA Mode** in [Step 3](#) is set to **Enabled**. **RDMA Protocol Support** options include the following:
- ☐ **RoCE** enables RoCE mode on this port.
 - ☐ **iWARP** enables iWARP mode on this port.
 - ☐ **iWARP + RoCE** enables iWARP and RoCE modes on this port. This is the default. Additional configuration for Linux is required for this option as described in [“Configuring iWARP and RoCE” on page 91](#).
6. For **Boot Mode**, select one of the following values:
- ☐ **PXE** enables PXE boot.

- ☐ **FCoE** enables FCoE boot from SAN over the hardware offload pathway. The **FCoE** mode is available only if **FCoE Offload** is enabled on the second partition in NPAR mode (see [“Configuring Partitions” on page 55](#)).
 - ☐ **iSCSI** enables iSCSI remote boot over the hardware offload pathway. The **iSCSI** mode is available only if **iSCSI Offload** is enabled on the third partition in NPAR mode (see [“Configuring Partitions” on page 55](#)).
 - ☐ **Disabled** prevents this port from being used as a remote boot source.
7. The **Energy Efficient Ethernet (EEE)** parameter is visible only on 100BASE-T or 10GBASE-T RJ45 interfaced adapters. Select from the following EEE options:
- ☐ **Disabled** disables EEE on this port.
 - ☐ **Optimal Power and Performance** enables EEE in optimal power and performance mode on this port.
 - ☐ **Maximum Power Savings** enables EEE in maximum power savings mode on this port.
 - ☐ **Maximum Performance** enables EEE in maximum performance mode on this port.
8. The **Virtual LAN Mode** parameter applies to the entire port when in PXE remote install mode. It is not persistent after a PXE remote install finishes. Select from the following VLAN options:
- ☐ **Enabled** enables VLAN mode on this port for PXE remote install mode.
 - ☐ **Disabled** disables VLAN mode on this port.
9. The **Virtual LAN ID** parameter specifies the VLAN tag ID to be used on this port for PXE remote install mode. This setting applies only when **Virtual LAN Mode** is enabled in the previous step.
10. Click **Back**.
11. When prompted, click **Yes** to save the changes. Changes take effect after a system reset.

To configure the port to use RDMA:

NOTE

Follow these steps to enable RDMA on all partitions of an NPAR mode port.

1. Set **NIC + RDMA Mode** to **Enabled**.
2. Click **Back**.

3. When prompted, click **Yes** to save the changes. Changes take effect after a system reset.

To configure the port's boot mode:

1. For a UEFI PXE remote installation, select **PXE** as the **Boot Mode**.
2. Click **Back**.
3. When prompted, click **Yes** to save the changes. Changes take effect after a system reset.

To configure the port's PXE remote install to use a VLAN:

NOTE

This VLAN is not persistent after the PXE remote install is finished.

1. Set the **Virtual LAN Mode** to **Enabled**.
2. In the **Virtual LAN ID** box, enter the number to be used.
3. Click **Back**.
4. When prompted, click **Yes** to save the changes. Changes take effect after a system reset.

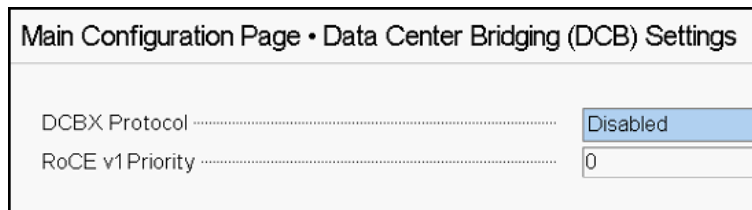
Configuring Data Center Bridging

The data center bridging (DCB) settings comprise the DCBX protocol and the RoCE priority.

To configure the DCB settings:

1. On the Main Configuration Page ([Figure 5-3 on page 40](#)), select **Data Center Bridging (DCB) Settings**, and then click **Finish**.
2. On the Data Center Bridging (DCB) Settings page ([Figure 5-8](#)), select the appropriate **DCBX Protocol** option:
 - ☐ **Disabled** disables DCBX on this port.
 - ☐ **CEE** enables the legacy Converged Enhanced Ethernet (CEE) protocol DCBX mode on this port.
 - ☐ **IEEE** enables the IEEE DCBX protocol on this port.
 - ☐ **Dynamic** enables dynamic application of either the CEE or IEEE protocol to match the attached link partner.

3. On the Data Center Bridging (DCB) Settings page, enter the **RoCE v1 Priority** as a value from **0–7**. This setting indicates the DCB traffic class priority number used for RoCE traffic and should match the number used by the DCB-enabled switching network for RoCE traffic.
 - ☐ **0** specifies the usual priority number used by the lossy default or common traffic class.
 - ☐ **3** specifies the priority number used by lossless FCoE traffic.
 - ☐ **4** specifies the priority number used by lossless iSCSI-TLV over DCB traffic.
 - ☐ **1, 2, 5, 6, and 7** specify DCB traffic class priority numbers available for RoCE use. Follow the respective OS RoCE setup instructions for using this RoCE control.



Main Configuration Page • Data Center Bridging (DCB) Settings	
DCBX Protocol	Disabled
RoCE v1 Priority	0

Figure 5-8. System Setup: Data Center Bridging (DCB) Settings

4. Click **Back**.
5. When prompted, click **Yes** to save the changes. Changes take effect after a system reset.

NOTE

When DCBX is enabled, the adapter periodically sends link layer discovery protocol (LLDP) packets with a dedicated unicast address that serves as the source MAC address. This LLDP MAC address is different from the factory-assigned adapter Ethernet MAC address. If you examine the MAC address table for the switch port that is connected to the adapter, you will see two MAC addresses: one for LLDP packets and one for the adapter Ethernet interface.

Configuring FCoE Boot

NOTE

The FCoE Boot Configuration Menu is only visible if **FCoE Offload Mode** is enabled on the second partition in NPAR mode (see [Figure 5-18 on page 58](#)). It is not visible in non-NPAR mode.

To configure the FCoE boot configuration parameters:

1. On the Main Configuration Page, select **FCoE Configuration**, and then select the following as needed:
 - ☐ **FCoE General Parameters** (Figure 5-9)
 - ☐ **FCoE Target Configuration** (Figure 5-10)
2. Press ENTER.
3. Choose values for the FCoE General or FCoE Target Configuration parameters.

Main Configuration Page • FCoE Configuration • FCoE General Parameters

Fabric Discovery Retry Count	5
LUN Busy Retry Count	5

Figure 5-9. FCoE General Parameters

DELL EMC | System Setup | Help | About | Exit

NIC in Slot 1 Port 2: QLogic 25GE 2P QL41262HxCU-DE Adapter - 00:0E:1E:F0:34:6F

Main Configuration Page • FCoE Configuration

FCoE General Parameters

Virtual LAN ID	0
Connect 1	☒ Enabled ☐ Disabled
World Wide Port Name Target 1	20:70:00:C0:FF:1B:47:FB
Boot LUN 1	0
Connect 2	☐ Enabled ☒ Disabled
World Wide Port Name Target 2	00:00:00:00:00:00:00:00
Boot LUN 2	0
Connect 3	☐ Enabled ☒ Disabled
World Wide Port Name Target 3	00:00:00:00:00:00:00:00

i Specify the World Wide Port Name (WWPN) of the first FCoE storage target.

PowerEdge R740
Service Tag : R740X02

Back

Figure 5-10. FCoE Target Configuration

4. Click **Back**.
5. When prompted, click **Yes** to save the changes. Changes take effect after a system reset.

Configuring iSCSI Boot

NOTE

The iSCSI Boot Configuration Menu is only visible if **iSCSI Offload Mode** is enabled on the third partition in NPAR mode (see [Figure 5-19 on page 59](#)). It is not visible in non-NPAR mode.

To configure the iSCSI boot configuration parameters:

1. On the Main Configuration Page, select **iSCSI Boot Configuration Menu**, and then select one of the following options:
 - ☐ **iSCSI General Configuration**
 - ☐ **iSCSI Initiator Configuration**
 - ☐ **iSCSI First Target Configuration**
 - ☐ **iSCSI Second Target Configuration**
2. Press ENTER.
3. Choose values for the appropriate iSCSI configuration parameters:
 - ☐ **iSCSI General Parameters** ([Figure 5-11 on page 52](#))
 - TCP/IP Parameters Via DHCP
 - iSCSI Parameters Via DHCP
 - CHAP Authentication
 - CHAP Mutual Authentication
 - IP Version
 - ARP Redirect
 - DHCP Request Timeout
 - Target Login Timeout
 - DHCP Vendor ID

- ☐ **iSCSI Initiator Parameters** ([Figure 5-12 on page 53](#))
 - IPv4 Address
 - IPv4 Subnet Mask
 - IPv4 Default Gateway
 - IPv4 Primary DNS
 - IPv4 Secondary DNS
 - VLAN ID
 - iSCSI Name
 - CHAP ID
 - CHAP Secret
- ☐ **iSCSI First Target Parameters** ([Figure 5-13 on page 53](#))
 - Connect
 - IPv4 Address
 - TCP Port
 - Boot LUN
 - iSCSI Name
 - CHAP ID
 - CHAP Secret
- ☐ **iSCSI Second Target Parameters** ([Figure 5-14 on page 54](#))
 - Connect
 - IPv4 Address
 - TCP Port
 - Boot LUN
 - iSCSI Name
 - CHAP ID
 - CHAP Secret

4. Click **Back**.

5. When prompted, click **Yes** to save the changes. Changes take effect after a system reset.

The screenshot shows the 'System Setup' utility for a Dell EMC PowerEdge R740. The title bar includes the Dell EMC logo, 'System Setup', and links for 'Help | About | Exit'. The main window title is 'NIC in Slot 1 Port 1: QLogic 25GE 2P QL41262HxCU-DE Adapter - 00:0E:1E:F0:34:6E'. Below this, the breadcrumb path is 'Main Configuration Page • iSCSI Configuration • iSCSI General Parameters'. The configuration options are as follows:

Parameter	Value
TCP/IP Parameters via DHCP	☒ Enabled
iSCSI Parameters via DHCP	☒ Disabled
CHAP Authentication	☒ Disabled
IP Version	☒ IPv4
CHAP Mutual Authentication	☒ Disabled
DHCP Vendor ID	QLGC ISAN
HBA Boot Mode	☒ Enabled
Virtual LAN ID	0
Virtual LAN Mode	☒ Disabled

An information box at the bottom left states: 'This option is specific to IPv4. Controls the source of the initiator IP address, DHCP or static assignment.' The bottom status bar shows 'PowerEdge R740' and 'Service Tag : R740X02', with a 'Back' button on the right.

Figure 5-11. iSCSI General Parameters

The screenshot shows the 'iSCSI Initiator Parameters' configuration page. At the top, the header bar includes the 'DELL EMC' logo, 'System Setup', and links for 'Help | About | Exit'. Below the header, a blue bar identifies the network interface as 'NIC in Slot 1 Port 1: QLogic 25GE 2P QL41262HxCU-DE Adapter - 00:0E:1E:F0:34:6E'. The main title is 'Main Configuration Page • iSCSI Configuration • iSCSI Initiator Parameters'. The configuration fields are as follows:

Field	Value
IPv4 Address	192.168.100.145
Subnet Mask	255.255.255.0
IPv4 Default Gateway	0.0.0.0
IPv4 Primary DNS	0.0.0.0
IPv4 Secondary DNS	0.0.0.0
iSCSI Name	iqn.1994-02.com.qlogic.iscsi:fastlinqboot
CHAP ID	
CHAP Secret	

Below the fields is an information box with an 'i' icon and the text: 'Specify the iSCSI Qualified Name (IQN) of the initiator.' At the bottom, a black bar displays 'PowerEdge R740' and 'Service Tag : R740X02', with a 'Back' button on the right.

Figure 5-12. iSCSI Initiator Configuration Parameters

The screenshot shows the 'iSCSI First Target Parameters' configuration page. The header and network interface information are identical to Figure 5-12. The main title is 'Main Configuration Page • iSCSI Configuration • iSCSI First Target Parameters'. The configuration fields are as follows:

Field	Value
Connect	☐ Disabled ☒ Enabled
IPv4 Address	192.168.100.9
TCP Port	3260
Boot LUN	1
iSCSI Name	iqn.2002-03.com.compellent:5000d31000ee1246
CHAP ID	
CHAP Secret	

Below the fields is an information box with an 'i' icon and the text: 'Specify the IPV4 address of the first iSCSI target.' At the bottom, a black bar displays 'PowerEdge R740' and 'Service Tag : R740X02', with a 'Back' button on the right.

Figure 5-13. iSCSI First Target Parameters

The screenshot shows the 'iSCSI Second Target Parameters' configuration window within the Dell EMC System Setup utility. The window has a dark header bar with the 'DELL EMC' logo, 'System Setup', and links for 'Help | About | Exit'. Below the header, a blue bar identifies the network interface as 'NIC in Slot 1 Port 1: QLogic 25GE 2P QL41262HxCU-DE Adapter - 00:0E:1E:F0:34:6E'. The main content area is titled 'Main Configuration Page • iSCSI Configuration • iSCSI Second Target Parameters'. It contains a 'Connect' section with a 'Disabled' radio button selected and an 'Enabled' radio button. Below this are input fields for 'IPv4 Address' (0.0.0.0), 'TCP Port' (3260), 'Boot LUN' (2), 'iSCSI Name' (empty), 'CHAP ID' (empty), and 'CHAP Secret' (empty). A blue information icon and a text box below the fields state: 'Specify the iSCSI Qualified Name (IQN) of the second iSCSI storage target.' The footer bar shows 'PowerEdge R740' and 'Service Tag : R740X02' on the left, and a 'Back' button on the right.

Field	Value
Connect	☒ Disabled ☐ Enabled
IPv4 Address	0.0.0.0
TCP Port	3260
Boot LUN	2
iSCSI Name	
CHAP ID	
CHAP Secret	

Specify the iSCSI Qualified Name (IQN) of the second iSCSI storage target.

PowerEdge R740
Service Tag : R740X02

Back

Figure 5-14. iSCSI Second Target Parameters

Configuring Partitions

You can configure bandwidth ranges for each partition on the adapter. For information specific to partition configuration on VMware ESXi 6.0/6.5, see [Partitioning for VMware ESXi 6.0 and ESXi 6.5](#).

To configure the maximum and minimum bandwidth allocations:

1. On the Main Configuration Page, select **NIC Partitioning Configuration**, and then press ENTER.
2. On the Partitions Configuration page ([Figure 5-15](#)), select **Global Bandwidth Allocation**.

Main Configuration Page • NIC Partitioning Configuration	
Global Bandwidth Allocation	
Partition 1	Enabled
Partition 2	Enabled
Partition 3	Enabled
Partition 4	Enabled
Partition 5	Enabled
Partition 6	Enabled
Partition 7	Enabled
Partition 8	Enabled
Partition 1 Configuration	
Partition 2 Configuration	
Partition 3 Configuration	
Partition 4 Configuration	
Partition 5 Configuration	
Partition 6 Configuration	
Partition 7 Configuration	
Partition 8 Configuration	

Figure 5-15. NIC Partitioning Configuration, Global Bandwidth Allocation

3. On the Global Bandwidth Allocation page (Figure 5-16), click each partition minimum and maximum TX bandwidth field for which you want to allocate bandwidth. There are eight partitions per port in dual-port mode.

The screenshot shows a web-based configuration interface titled "Main Configuration Page • NIC Partitioning Configuration • Global Bandwidth Allocation". It contains two sections of input fields. The first section, "Minimum TX Bandwidth", has eight rows labeled "Partition 1" through "Partition 8", each with a text input field containing the value "0". The second section, "Maximum TX Bandwidth", has three rows labeled "Partition 1", "Partition 2", and "Partition 3", each with a text input field containing the value "100". At the bottom, there is an information icon (a blue circle with a white 'i') followed by the text: "Minimum Bandwidth represents the minimum transmit bandwidth of the partition as percentage of the full physical port link speed. The Minimum ... (Press <F1> for more help)".

Figure 5-16. Global Bandwidth Allocation Page

- ❑ **Partition *n* Minimum TX Bandwidth** is the minimum transmit bandwidth of the selected partition expressed as a percentage of the maximum physical port link speed. Values can be 0–100. When DCBX ETS mode is enabled, the per-traffic class DCBX ETS minimum bandwidth value is used simultaneously with the per-partition minimum TX bandwidth value. The total of the minimum TX bandwidth values of all partitions on a single port must equal 100 or be all zeros.

Setting the TX bandwidth to all zeros is similar to equally dividing the available bandwidth over every active partition; however, the bandwidth is dynamically allocated over all actively sending partitions. A zero value (when one or more of the other values are set to a non-zero value) allocates a minimum of one percent to that partition, when congestion (from all of the partitions) is restricting TX bandwidth.

- ❑ **Partition *n* Maximum TX Bandwidth** is the maximum transmit bandwidth of the selected partition expressed as a percentage of the maximum physical port link speed. Values can be 1–100. The per-partition maximum TX bandwidth value applies regardless of the DCBX ETS mode setting.

Type a value in each selected field, and then click **Back**.

4. When prompted, click **Yes** to save the changes. Changes take effect after a system reset.

To configure partitions:

1. To examine a specific partition configuration, on the NIC Partitioning Configuration page ([Figure 5-15 on page 55](#)), select **Partition *n* Configuration**. If NParEP is not enabled, only four partitions exist per port.
2. To configure the first partition, select **Partition 1 Configuration** to open the Partition 1 Configuration page ([Figure 5-17](#)), which shows the following parameters:

- ☐ **NIC Mode** (always enabled)
- ☐ **PCI Device ID**
- ☐ **PCI (bus) Address**
- ☐ **MAC Address**
- ☐ **Virtual MAC Address**

If NParEP is not enabled, only four partitions per port are available. On non-offload-capable adapters, the **FCoE Mode** and **iSCSI Mode** options and information are not displayed.

Main Configuration Page • NIC Partitioning Configuration • Partition 1 Configuration	
NIC Mode	Enabled
PCI Device ID	8070
PCI Address	86:00
MAC Address	00:0E:1E:D5:F8:76
Virtual MAC Address	00:00:00:00:00:00

Figure 5-17. Partition 1 Configuration

3. To configure the second partition, select **Partition 2 Configuration** to open the Partition 2 Configuration page. If FCoE Offload is present, the Partition 2 Configuration ([Figure 5-18](#)) shows the following parameters:
 - ☐ **NIC Mode** enables or disables the L2 Ethernet NIC personality on Partitions 2 and greater. To disable any of the remaining partitions, set the **NIC Mode** to **Disabled**. To disable offload-capable partitions, disable both the **NIC Mode** and respective offload mode.

- ☐ **FCoE Mode** enables or disables the FCoE-Offload personality on the second partition. If you enable this mode on the second partition, you should disable **NIC Mode**. Because only one offload is available per port, if FCoE-Offload is enabled on the port's second partition, iSCSI-Offload cannot be enabled on the third partition of that same NPAR mode port. Not all adapters support **FCoE Mode**.
- ☐ **iSCSI Mode** enables or disables the iSCSI-Offload personality on the third partition. If you enable this mode on the third partition, you should disable **NIC Mode**. Because only one offload is available per port, if iSCSI-Offload is enabled on the port's third partition, FCoE-Offload cannot be enabled on the second partition of that same NPAR mode port. Not all adapters support **iSCSI Mode**.
- ☐ **FIP MAC Address**¹
- ☐ **Virtual FIP MAC Address**¹
- ☐ **World Wide Port Name**¹
- ☐ **Virtual World Wide Port Name**¹
- ☐ **World Wide Node Name**¹
- ☐ **Virtual World Wide Node Name**¹
- ☐ **PCI Device ID**
- ☐ **PCI (bus) Address**

Main Configuration Page • NIC Partitioning Configuration • Partition 2 Configuration	
NIC Mode	☐ Enabled ☒ Disabled
FCoE Mode	☒ Enabled ☐ Disabled
FIP MAC Address	00:0E:1E:D5:F8:78
Virtual FIP MAC Address	00:00:00:00:00:00
World Wide Port Name	20:01:00:0E:1E:D5:F8:78
Virtual World Wide Port Name	00:00:00:00:00:00:00:00
World Wide Node Name	20:00:00:0E:1E:D5:F8:78
Virtual World Wide Node Name	00:00:00:00:00:00:00:00
PCI Device ID	8070
PCI Address	86:02

Figure 5-18. Partition 2 Configuration: FCoE Offload

¹ This parameter is only present on the second partition of an NPAR mode port of FCoE offload-capable adapters.

4. To configure the third partition, select **Partition 3 Configuration** to open the Partition 3 Configuration page (Figure 5-17). If iSCSI Offload is present, the Partition 3 Configuration shows the following parameters:

- ☐ **NIC Mode (Disabled)**
- ☐ **iSCSI Offload Mode (Enabled)**
- ☐ **iSCSI Offload MAC Address²**
- ☐ **Virtual iSCSI Offload MAC Address²**
- ☐ **PCI Device ID**
- ☐ **PCI Address**

Main Configuration Page • NIC Partitioning Configuration • Partition 3 Configuration	
NIC Mode	☐ Enabled ☒ Disabled
iSCSI Offload Mode	☒ Enabled ☐ Disabled
iSCSI Offload MAC Address	00:0E:1E:D5:F8:7A
Virtual iSCSI Offload MAC Address	00:00:00:00:00:00
PCI Device ID	8070
PCI Address	86:04

Figure 5-19. Partition 3 Configuration: iSCSI Offload

5. To configure the remaining Ethernet partitions, including the previous (if not offload-enabled), open the page for a partition 2 or greater Ethernet partition.

- ☐ **NIC Mode (Enabled or Disabled)**. When disabled, the partition is hidden such that it does not appear to the OS if fewer than the maximum quantity of partitions (or PCI PFs) are detected.
- ☐ **PCI Device ID**
- ☐ **PCI Address**
- ☐ **MAC Address**
- ☐ **Virtual MAC Address**

Main Configuration Page • NIC Partitioning Configuration • Partition 4 Configuration	
NIC Mode	☒ Enabled ☐ Disabled
PCI Device ID	8070
PCI Address	86:06
MAC Address	00:0E:1E:D5:F8:7C
Virtual MAC Address	00:00:00:00:00:00

Figure 5-20. Partition 4 Configuration: Ethernet

² This parameter is only present on the third partition of an NPAR mode port of iSCSI offload-capable adapters.

Partitioning for VMware ESXi 6.0 and ESXi 6.5

If the following conditions exist on a system running either VMware ESXi 6.0 or ESXi 6.5, you must uninstall and reinstall the drivers:

- The adapter is configured to enable NPAR with all NIC partitions.
- The adapter is in Single Function mode.
- The configuration is saved and the system is rebooted.
- Storage partitions are enabled (by converting one of the NIC partitions as storage) while drivers are already installed on the system.
- Partition 2 is changed to FCoE.
- The configuration is saved and the system is rebooted again.

Driver re-installation is required because the storage functions may keep the `vmnicX` enumeration rather than `vmhbaX`, as shown when you issue the following command on the system:

```
# esxcfg-scsidevs -a
vmnic4 qedf          link-up    fc.2000000e1ed6fa2a:2001000e1ed6fa2a
(0000:19:00.2) QLogic Corp. QLogic FastLinQ QL41xxx Series 10/25 GbE
Controller (FCoE)
vmhba0 lsi_mr3        link-n/a   sas.51866da071fa9100
(0000:18:00.0) Avago (LSI) PERC H330 Mini
vmnic10 qedf          link-up    fc.2000000e1ef249f8:2001000e1ef249f8
(0000:d8:00.2) QLogic Corp. QLogic FastLinQ QL41xxx Series 10/25 GbE
Controller (FCoE)
vmhba1 vmw_ahci        link-n/a   sata.vmhba1
(0000:00:11.5) Intel Corporation Lewisburg SSATA Controller [AHCI mode]
vmhba2 vmw_ahci        link-n/a   sata.vmhba2
(0000:00:17.0) Intel Corporation Lewisburg SATA Controller [AHCI mode]
vmhba32 qedil          online     iscsi.vmhba32          QLogic
FastLinQ QL41xxx Series 10/25 GbE Controller (iSCSI)
vmhba33 qedil          online     iscsi.vmhba33          QLogic
FastLinQ QL41xxx Series 10/25 GbE Controller (iSCSI)
```

In the preceding command output, notice that `vmnic4` and `vmnic10` are actually storage adapter ports. To prevent this behavior, you should enable storage functions at the same time that you configure the adapter for NPAR mode.

For example, assuming that the adapter is in Single Function mode by default, you should:

1. Enable NPAR mode.
2. Change Partition 2 to FCoE.
3. Save and reboot.

6 RoCE Configuration

This chapter describes RDMA over converged Ethernet (RoCE v1 and v2) configuration on the 41xxx Series Adapter, the Ethernet switch, and the Windows or Linux host, including:

- [Supported Operating Systems and OFED](#)
- [Planning for RoCE](#)
- [Preparing the Adapter](#)
- [Preparing the Ethernet Switch](#)
- [Configuring RoCE on the Adapter for Windows Server](#)
- [Configuring RoCE on the Adapter for Linux](#)
- [Configuring RoCE on the Adapter for ESX](#)

NOTE

Some RoCE features may not be fully enabled in the current release.

Supported Operating Systems and OFED

Table 6-1 shows the operating system support for RoCE v1, RoCE v2, iWARP, and OFED.

Table 6-1. OS Support for RoCE v1, RoCE v2, iWARP, and OFED

Operating System	Inbox	OFED 3.18-3 GA	OFED-4.8-1 GA
Windows Server 2012 R2	RoCE v1, RoCE v2	No	No
Windows Server 2016	RoCE v1, RoCE v2	No	No
RHEL 6.8	RoCE v1, iWARP	RoCE v1, iWARP	No
RHEL 6.9	RoCE v1, iWARP	No	No
RHEL 7.3	RoCE v1, RoCE v2, iWARP, iSER	No	RoCE v1, RoCE v2, iWARP
RHEL 7.4	RoCE v1, RoCE v2, iWARP, iSER	No	No
SLES 12 SP3	RoCE v1, RoCE v2, iWARP, iSER	No	No
CentOS 7.3	RoCE v1, RoCE v2, iWARP, iSER	No	RoCE v1, RoCE v2, iWARP
CentOS 7.4	RoCE v1, RoCE v2, iWARP, iSER	No	No
VMware ESXi 6.0 u3	No	N/A	
VMware ESXi 6.5, 6.5U1 ^a	RoCE v1, RoCE v2	N/A	

^a The certified RoCE driver is not included in this release. The uncertified driver is available as an early preview.

Planning for RoCE

As you prepare to implement RoCE, consider the following limitations:

- If you are using the inbox OFED, the operating system should be the same on the server and client systems. Some of the applications may work between different operating systems, but there is no guarantee. This is an OFED limitation.
- For OFED applications (most often perftest applications), server and client applications should use the same options and values. Problems can arise if the operating system and the perftest application have different versions. To confirm the perftest version, issue the following command:

```
# ib_send_bw --version
```

- Building libqedr in inbox OFED requires installing libibverbs-devel.
- Running user space applications in inbox OFED requires installing the InfiniBand® Support group, by yum groupinstall “InfiniBand Support” that contains libibcm, libibverbs, and more.
- OFED and RDMA applications that depend on libibverbs also require the QLogic RDMA user space library, libqedr. Install libqedr using the libqedr RPM or source packages.
- RoCE supports only little endian.
- RoCE does not work over a VF in an SR-IOV environment.

Preparing the Adapter

Follow these steps to enable DCBX and specify the RoCE priority using the HII management application. For information about the HII application, see [Chapter 5 Adapter Preboot Configuration](#).

To prepare the adapter:

1. In the Main Configuration Page, select **Data Center Bridging (DCB) Settings**, and then click **Finish**.
2. In the Data Center Bridging (DCB) Settings window, click the **DCBX Protocol** option. The 41xxx Series Adapter supports both CEE and IEEE protocols. This value should match the corresponding value on the DCB switch. In this example, select **CEE** or **Dynamic**.
3. In the **RoCE Priority** box, type a priority value. This value should match the corresponding value on the DCB switch. In this example, type 5. Typically, 0 is used for the default lossy traffic class, 3 is used for the FCoE traffic class, and 4 is used for lossless iSCSI-TLV over DCB traffic class.
4. Click **Back**.
5. When prompted, click **Yes** to save the changes. Changes will not take effect until after a system reset.

For Windows, you can configure DCBX using the HII or QoS method. The configuration shown in this section is through HII. For QoS, refer to [“Configuring QoS for RoCE” on page 205](#).

Preparing the Ethernet Switch

This section describes how to configure a Cisco® Nexus® 6000 Ethernet Switch and a Dell Z9100 Ethernet Switch for RoCE.

- [Configuring the Cisco Nexus 6000 Ethernet Switch](#)
- [Configuring the Dell Z9100 Ethernet Switch](#)

Configuring the Cisco Nexus 6000 Ethernet Switch

Steps for configuring the Cisco Nexus 6000 Ethernet Switch for RoCE include configuring class maps, configuring policy maps, applying the policy, and assigning a VLAN ID to the switch port.

To configure the Cisco switch:

1. Open a config terminal session as follows:

```
Switch# config terminal  
switch(config)#
```

2. Configure quality of service (QoS) class map and set the RoCE priority to match the adapter (5) as follows:

```
switch(config)# class-map type qos class-roce
switch(config)# match cos 5
```
3. Configure queuing class maps as follows:

```
switch(config)# class-map type queuing class-roce
switch(config)# match qos-group 3
```
4. Configure network QoS class maps as follows:

```
switch(config)# class-map type network-qos class-roce
switch(config)# match qos-group 3
```
5. Configure QoS policy maps as follows:

```
switch(config)# policy-map type qos roce
switch(config)# class type qos class-roce
switch(config)# set qos-group 3
```
6. Configure queuing policy maps to assign network bandwidth. In this example, use a value of 50 percent:

```
switch(config)# policy-map type queuing roce
switch(config)# class type queuing class-roce
switch(config)# bandwidth percent 50
```
7. Configure network QoS policy maps to set priority flow control for no-drop traffic class as follows:

```
switch(config)# policy-map type network-qos roce
switch(config)# class type network-qos class-roce
switch(config)# pause no-drop
```
8. Apply the new policy at the system level as follows

```
switch(config)# system qos
switch(config)# service-policy type qos input roce
switch(config)# service-policy type queuing output roce
switch(config)# service-policy type queuing input roce
switch(config)# service-policy type network-qos roce
```
9. Assign a VLAN ID to the switch port to match the VLAN ID assigned to the adapter (5).

```
switch(config)# interface ethernet x/x
switch(config)# switchport mode trunk
switch(config)# switchport trunk allowed vlan 1,5
```

Configuring the Dell Z9100 Ethernet Switch

To configure the Dell Z9100 Ethernet Switch for RoCE, see the procedure in [Appendix C Dell Z9100 Switch Configuration](#).

Configuring RoCE on the Adapter for Windows Server

Configuring RoCE on the adapter for Windows Server comprises enabling RoCE on the adapter and verifying the Network Direct MTU size.

To configure RoCE on a Windows Server host:

1. Enable RoCE on the adapter.
 - a. Open the Windows Device Manager, and then open the 41xxx Series Adapters NDIS Miniport Properties.
 - b. On the QLogic FastLinQ Adapter Properties, click the **Advanced** tab.
 - c. On the Advanced page, configure the properties listed in [Table 6-2](#) by selecting each item under **Property** and choosing an appropriate **Value** for that item. Then click **OK**.

Table 6-2. Advanced Properties for RoCE

Property	Value or Description
Network Direct Functionality	Enabled
Network Direct Mtu Size	The network direct MTU size must be less than the jumbo packet size.
RDMA Mode	RoCE v1 or RoCE v2 . The iWARP value applies only when configuring ports for iWARP as described in Chapter 7 iWARP Configuration .
VLAN ID	Assign any VLAN ID to the interface. The value must be the same as is assigned on the switch.
Quality of Service	Enables or disables QoS. ■ Select Enabled if you are controlling DCB through the Windows DCB-QoS service. For more information, see “Configuring QoS by Disabling DCBX on the Adapter” on page 205. ■ Select Disabled if you are controlling DCB through the attached DCB-configured switch. For more information, see “Configuring QoS by Enabling DCBX on the Adapter” on page 210.

Figure 6-1 shows an example of configuring a property value.

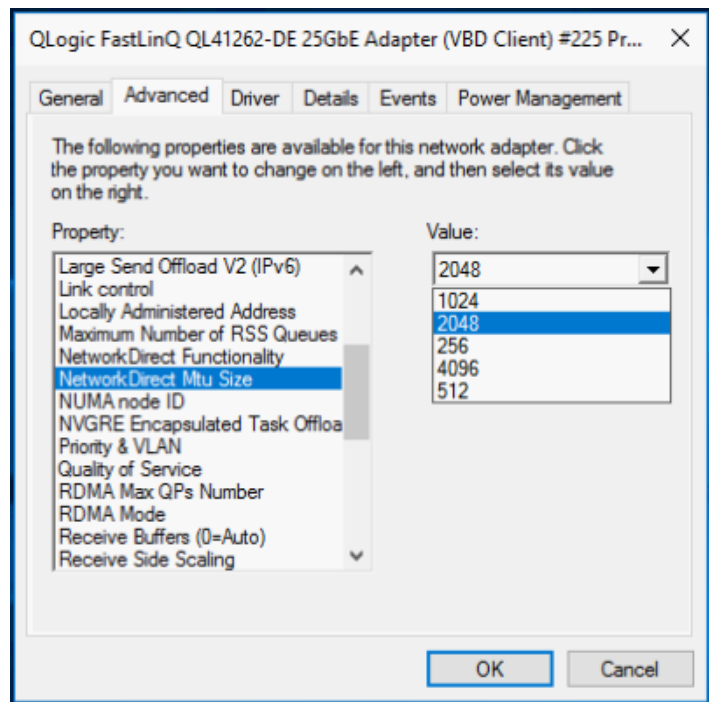


Figure 6-1. Configuring RoCE Properties

- 2. Using Windows PowerShell, verify that RDMA is enabled on the adapter. The `Get-NetAdapterRdma` command lists the adapters that support RDMA—both ports are enabled.

NOTE

If you are configuring RoCE over Hyper-V, do not assign a VLAN ID to the physical interface.

```
PS C:\Users\Administrator> Get-NetAdapterRdma
Name                               InterfaceDescription      Enabled
----                               -
SLOT 4 3 Port 1                    QLogic FastLinQ QL41262... True
SLOT 4 3 Port 2                    QLogic FastLinQ QL41262... True
```

3. Using Windows PowerShell, verify that NetworkDirect is enabled on the host operating system. The `Get-NetOffloadGlobalSetting` command shows NetworkDirect is enabled.

```
PS C:\Users\Administrators> Get-NetOffloadGlobalSetting
ReceiveSideScaling           : Enabled
ReceiveSegmentCoalescing    : Enabled
Chimney                      : Disabled
TaskOffload                  : Enabled
NetworkDirect                : Enabled
NetworkDirectAcrossIPSubnets : Blocked
PacketCoalescingFilter      : Disabled
```

4. Connect a server message block (SMB) drive, run RoCE traffic, and verify the results.

To set up and connect to an SMB drive, view the information available online from Microsoft:

[https://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/hh831795\(v=ws.11\).aspx](https://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/hh831795(v=ws.11).aspx)

5. By default, Microsoft's SMB Direct establishes two RDMA connections per port, which provides good performance, including line rate at a higher block size (for example, 64KB). To optimize performance, you can change the quantity of RDMA connections per RDMA interface to four (or greater).

To increase the quantity of RDMA connections to four (or more), issue the following command in Windows PowerShell:

```
PS C:\Users\Administrator> Set-ItemProperty -Path
"HKLM:\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Services\LanmanWorkstation\
Parameters" ConnectionCountPerRdmaNetworkInterface -Type
DWORD -Value 4 -Force
```

Configuring RoCE on the Adapter for Linux

This section describes the RoCE configuration procedure for RHEL and SLES. It also describes how to verify the RoCE configuration and provides some guidance about using group IDs (GIDs) with VLAN interfaces.

- [RoCE Configuration for RHEL](#)
- [RoCE Configuration for SLES](#)
- [Verifying the RoCE Configuration on Linux](#)
- [VLAN Interfaces and GID Index Values](#)
- [RoCE v2 Configuration for Linux](#)

RoCE Configuration for RHEL

To configure RoCE on the adapter, the Open Fabrics Enterprise Distribution (OFED) must be installed and configured on the RHEL host.

To prepare inbox OFED for RHEL:

1. While installing or upgrading the operating system, select the InfiniBand and OFED support packages.
2. Install the following RPMs from the RHEL ISO image:

```
libibverbs-devel-x.x.x.x86_64.rpm  
(required for libqedr library)  
perftest-x.x.x.x86_64.rpm  
(required for InfiniBand bandwidth and latency applications)
```

or, using Yum, install the inbox OFED:

```
yum groupinstall "Infiniband Support"  
yum install perftest  
yum install tcl tcl-devel tk zlib-devel libibverbs  
libibverbs-devel
```

NOTE

During installation, if you already selected the previously mentioned packages, you need not reinstall them. The inbox OFED and support packages may vary depending on the operating system version.

3. Install the new Linux drivers as described in [“Installing the Linux Drivers with RDMA” on page 14](#).

RoCE Configuration for SLES

To configure RoCE on the adapter for an SLES host, OFED must be installed and configured on the SLES host.

To install inbox OFED for SLES Linux:

1. While installing or upgrading the operating system, select the InfiniBand support packages.
2. Install the following RPMs from the corresponding SLES SDK kit image:

```
libibverbs-devel-x.x.x.x86_64.rpm  
(required for libqedr installation)  
perftest-x.x.x.x86_64.rpm  
(required for bandwidth and latency applications)
```

3. Install the Linux drivers, as described in [“Installing the Linux Drivers with RDMA” on page 14](#).

Verifying the RoCE Configuration on Linux

After installing OFED, installing the Linux driver, and loading the RoCE drivers, verify that the RoCE devices were detected on all Linux operating systems.

To verify RoCE configuration on Linux:

1. Stop firewall tables using `service/systemctl` commands.
2. For RHEL only: If the RDMA service is installed (`yum install rdma`), verify that the RDMA service has started.

NOTE

For RHEL 6.x and SLES 11 SP4, you must start RDMA service after reboot. For RHEL 7.x and SLES 12 SPX and later, RDMA service starts itself after reboot.

On RHEL or CentOS: Use the `service rdma status` command to start service:

- ❑ If RDMA has not started, issue the following command:

```
# service rdma start
```

- ❑ If RDMA does not start, issue either of the following alternative commands:

```
# /etc/init.d/rdma start
```

or

```
# systemctl start rdma.service
```

3. Verify that the RoCE devices were detected by examining the `dmesg` logs:

```
# dmesg|grep qedr
```

```
[87910.988411] qedr: discovered and registered 2 RoCE funcs
```

4. Verify that all of the modules have been loaded. For example:

```
# lsmod|grep qedr
```

```
qedr                89871  0
qede                96670  1 qedr
qed                 2075255  2 qede,qedr
ib_core             88311  16 qedr, rdma_cm, ib_cm,
                   ib_sa,iw_cm,xprtrdma,ib_mad,ib_srp,
                   ib_ucm,ib_iser,ib_srpt,ib_umad,
                   ib_uverbs,rdma_ucm,ib_ipoib,ib_isert
```

5. Configure the IP address and enable the port using a configuration method such as `ifconfig`:

```
# ifconfig ethX 192.168.10.10/24 up
```

6. Issue the `ibv_devinfo` command. For each PCI function, you should see a separate `hca_id`, as shown in the following example:

```
root@captain:~# ibv_devinfo
```

```
hca_id: qedr0
      transport:                InfiniBand (0)
      fw_ver:                    8.3.9.0
      node_guid:                 020e:1eff:fe50:c7c0
      sys_image_guid:            020e:1eff:fe50:c7c0
      vendor_id:                 0x1077
      vendor_part_id:            5684
      hw_ver:                    0x0
      phys_port_cnt:             1
      port:      1
      state:                PORT_ACTIVE (1)
      max_mtu:               4096 (5)
      active_mtu:            1024 (3)
      sm_lid:                 0
      port_lid:               0
      port_lmc:               0x00
      link_layer:             Ethernet
```

7. Verify the L2 and RoCE connectivity between all servers: one server acts as a server, another acts as a client.

- ☐ Verify the L2 connection using a simple `ping` command.
- ☐ Verify the RoCE connection by performing an RDMA ping on the server or client:

On the server, issue the following command:

```
ibv_rc_pingpong -d <ib-dev> -g 0
```

On the client, issue the following command:

```
ibv_rc_pingpong -d <ib-dev> -g 0 <server L2 IP address>
```

The following are examples of successful ping pong tests on the server and the client.

Server Ping:

```
root@captain:~# ibv_rc_pingpong -d qedr0 -g 0
local address: LID 0x0000, QPN 0xff0000, PSN 0xb3e07e, GID
fe80::20e:1eff:fe50:c7c0
remote address: LID 0x0000, QPN 0xff0000, PSN 0x934d28, GID
fe80::20e:1eff:fe50:c570
8192000 bytes in 0.05 seconds = 1436.97 Mbit/sec
1000 iters in 0.05 seconds = 45.61 usec/iter
```

Client Ping:

```
root@lambodar:~# ibv_rc_pingpong -d qedr0 -g 0 192.168.10.165
local address: LID 0x0000, QPN 0xff0000, PSN 0x934d28, GID
fe80::20e:1eff:fe50:c570
remote address: LID 0x0000, QPN 0xff0000, PSN 0xb3e07e, GID
fe80::20e:1eff:fe50:c7c0
8192000 bytes in 0.02 seconds = 4211.28 Mbit/sec
1000 iters in 0.02 seconds = 15.56 usec/iter
```

- To display RoCE statistics, issue the following commands, where **X** is the device number:

```
> mount -t debugfs nodev /sys/kernel/debug
> cat /sys/kernel/debug/qedr/qedrX/stats
```

VLAN Interfaces and GID Index Values

If you are using VLAN interfaces on both the server and the client, you must also configure the same VLAN ID on the switch. If you are running traffic through a switch, the InfiniBand applications must use the correct GID value, which is based on the VLAN ID and VLAN IP address.

Based on the following results, the GID value (-x 4 / -x 5) should be used for any perftest applications.

```
# ibv_devinfo -d qedr0 -v|grep GID
GID[ 0]: fe80:0000:0000:0000:020e:1eff:fe50:c5b0
GID[ 1]: 0000:0000:0000:0000:0000:ffff:c0a8:0103
GID[ 2]: 2001:0db1:0000:0000:020e:1eff:fe50:c5b0
GID[ 3]: 2001:0db2:0000:0000:020e:1eff:fe50:c5b0
GID[ 4]: 0000:0000:0000:0000:0000:ffff:c0a8:0b03 IP address for VLAN interface
GID[ 5]: fe80:0000:0000:0000:020e:1e00:0350:c5b0 VLAN ID 3
```

NOTE

The default GID value is zero (0) for back-to-back or pause settings. For server/switch configurations, you must identify the proper GID value. If you are using a switch, refer to the corresponding switch configuration documents for the proper settings.

RoCE v2 Configuration for Linux

To verify RoCE v2 functionality, you must use RoCE v2 supported kernels.

To configure RoCE v2 for Linux:

1. Ensure that you are using one of the following supported kernels:
 - ☐ SLES 12 SP2 GA
 - ☐ RHEL 7.3 GA
2. Configure RoCE v2 as follows:
 - a. Identify the GID index for RoCE v2.
 - b. Configure the routing address for the server and client.
 - c. Enable L3 routing on the switch.

NOTE

You can configure RoCE v1 and RoCE v2 by using RoCE v2-supported kernels. These kernels allow you to run RoCE traffic over the same subnet, as well as over different subnets such as RoCE v2 and any routable environment. Only a few settings are required for RoCE v2, and all other switch and adapter settings are common for RoCE v1 and RoCE v2.

Identifying RoCE v2 GID Index or Address

To find RoCE v1- and RoCE v2-specific GIDs, use either sys or class parameters, or run RoCE scripts from the 41xxx FastLinQ source package. To check the default **RoCE GID Index** and address, issue the `ibv_devinfo` command and compare it with the sys or class parameters. For example:

```
#ibv_devinfo -d qedr0 -v|grep GID
```

```
GID[ 0]:          fe80:0000:0000:0000:020e:1eff:fec4:1b20
GID[ 1]:          fe80:0000:0000:0000:020e:1eff:fec4:1b20
GID[ 2]:          0000:0000:0000:0000:0000:ffff:1e01:010a
GID[ 3]:          0000:0000:0000:0000:0000:ffff:1e01:010a
GID[ 4]:          3ffe:ffff:0000:0f21:0000:0000:0000:0004
GID[ 5]:          3ffe:ffff:0000:0f21:0000:0000:0000:0004
GID[ 6]:          0000:0000:0000:0000:0000:ffff:c0a8:6403
GID[ 7]:          0000:0000:0000:0000:0000:ffff:c0a8:6403
```

Verifying RoCE v1 or RoCE v2 GID Index and Address from sys and class Parameters

Use one of the following options to verify the RoCE v1 or RoCE v2 GID Index and address from the sys and class parameters:

■ Option 1:

```
# cat /sys/class/infiniband/qedr0/ports/1/gid_attrs/types/0
IB/RoCE v1
# cat /sys/class/infiniband/qedr0/ports/1/gid_attrs/types/1
RoCE v2

# cat /sys/class/infiniband/qedr0/ports/1/gids/0
fe80:0000:0000:0000:020e:1eff:fec4:1b20
# cat /sys/class/infiniband/qedr0/ports/1/gids/1
fe80:0000:0000:0000:020e:1eff:fec4:1b20
```

■ Option 2:

Use the scripts from the FastLinQ source package.

```
#!/../fastlinq-8.x.x.x/add-ons/roce/show_gids.sh
```

DEV	PORT	INDEX	GID	IPv4	VER	DEV
---	----	-----	----	-----	---	---
qedr0	1	0	fe80:0000:0000:0000:020e:1eff:fec4:1b20		v1	p4p1
qedr0	1	1	fe80:0000:0000:0000:020e:1eff:fec4:1b20		v2	p4p1
qedr0	1	2	0000:0000:0000:0000:0000:ffff:1e01:010a	30.1.1.10	v1	p4p1
qedr0	1	3	0000:0000:0000:0000:0000:ffff:1e01:010a	30.1.1.10	v2	p4p1
qedr0	1	4	3ffe:ffff:0000:0f21:0000:0000:0000:0004		v1	p4p1

qedr0	1	5	3ffe:ffff:0000:0f21:0000:0000:0000:0004		v2	p4p1
qedr0	1	6	0000:0000:0000:0000:0000:ffff:c0a8:6403	192.168.100.3	v1	p4p1.100
qedr0	1	7	0000:0000:0000:0000:0000:ffff:c0a8:6403	192.168.100.3	v2	p4p1.100
qedr1	1	0	fe80:0000:0000:0000:020e:1eff:fec4:1b21		v1	p4p2
qedr1	1	1	fe80:0000:0000:0000:020e:1eff:fec4:1b21		v2	p4p2

NOTE

You must specify the GID index values for RoCE v1- or RoCE v2-based on server or switch configuration (Pause/PFC). Use GID index for the link local IPv6 address, IPv4 address, or IPv6 address. To use VLAN tagged frames for RoCE traffic, you must specify GID index values that are derived from the VLAN IPv4 or IPv6 address.

Verifying RoCE v1 or RoCE v2 Function Through perfest Applications

This section shows how to verify RoCE v1 or RoCE v2 function through perfest applications. In this example, the following server IP and client IP are used:

- Server IP: 192.168.100.3
- Client IP: 192.168.100.4

Verifying RoCE v1

Run over the same subnet and use the RoCE v1 GID index.

Server# **ib_send_bw -d qedr0 -F -x 0**

Client# **ib_send_bw -d qedr0 -F -x 0 192.168.100.3**

Verifying RoCE v2

Run over the same subnet and use the RoCE v2 GID index.

Server# **ib_send_bw -d qedr0 -F -x 1**

Client# **ib_send_bw -d qedr0 -F -x 1 192.168.100.3**

NOTE

If you are running through a switch PFC configuration, use VLAN GIDs for RoCE v1 or v2 through the same subnet.

Verifying RoCE v2 Through Different Subnets

NOTE

You must first configure the route settings for the switch and servers. On the adapter, set the RoCE priority and DCBX mode using the HII or UEFI user interface.

To verify RoCE v2 through different subnets.

1. Set the route configuration for the server and client using the DCBX-PFC configuration.
 - ☐ **System Settings:**
Server VLAN IP : 192.168.100.3 and **Gateway :**192.168.100.1
Client VLAN IP : 192.168.101.3 and **Gateway :**192.168.101.1
 - ☐ **Server Configuration:**

```
#!/sbin/ip link add link p4p1 name p4p1.100 type vlan id 100
#ifconfig p4p1.100 192.168.100.3/24 up
#ip route add 192.168.101.0/24 via 192.168.100.1 dev p4p1.100
```
 - ☐ **Client Configuration:**

```
#!/sbin/ip link add link p4p1 name p4p1.101 type vlan id 101
#ifconfig p4p1.101 192.168.101.3/24 up
#ip route add 192.168.100.0/24 via 192.168.101.1 dev p4p1.101
```
2. Set the switch settings using the following procedure.
 - ☐ Use any flow control method (Pause, DCBX-CEE, or DCBX-IEEE), and enable IP routing for RoCE v2. See [“Preparing the Ethernet Switch” on page 65](#) for RoCE v2 configuration, or refer to the vendor switch documents.
 - ☐ If you are using PFC configuration and L3 routing, run RoCE v2 traffic over the VLAN using a different subnet, and use the RoCE v2 VLAN GID index.

```
Server# ib_send_bw -d qedr0 -F -x 5
Client# ib_send_bw -d qedr0 -F -x 5 192.168.100.3
```

Server Switch Settings:

```
[root@RoCE-Auto-2 /]# ib_send_bw -d qedr0 -F -x 5 -q 2 --report_gbits

*****
* Waiting for client to connect... *
*****

-----
                Send BW Test
Dual-port      : OFF          Device       : qedr0
Number of qps  : 2            Transport type : IB
Connection type : RC          Using SRQ     : OFF
RX depth       : 512
CQ Moderation  : 100
MTU            : 1024[B]
Link type      : Ethernet
Gid index      : 5
Max inline data : 0[B]
rdma_cm QPs    : OFF
Data_ex. method : Ethernet
-----

local address: LID 0000 QPN 0xff0000 PSN 0xf0b2c3
GID: 00:00:00:00:00:00:00:00:00:00:255:255:192:168:100:03
local address: LID 0000 QPN 0xff0002 PSN 0xa2b8f1
GID: 00:00:00:00:00:00:00:00:00:00:255:255:192:168:100:03
remote address: LID 0000 QPN 0xff0000 PSN 0x40473a
GID: 00:00:00:00:00:00:00:00:00:00:255:255:192:168:101:03
remote address: LID 0000 QPN 0xff0002 PSN 0x124cd3
GID: 00:00:00:00:00:00:00:00:00:00:255:255:192:168:101:03
-----

#bytes    #iterations    BW peak[Gb/sec]    BW average[Gb/sec]    MsgRate[Mpps]
65536     1000             0.00               23.07                  0.043995
-----
```

Figure 6-2. Switch Settings, Server

Client Switch Settings:

```
[root@roce-auto-1 ~]# ib_send_bw -d qedr0 -F -x 5 192.168.100.3 -q 2 --report_gbits

-----
                Send BW Test
Dual-port      : OFF          Device       : qedr0
Number of qps  : 2            Transport type : IB
Connection type : RC          Using SRQ     : OFF
TX depth       : 128
CQ Moderation  : 100
MTU            : 1024[B]
Link type      : Ethernet
Gid index      : 5
Max inline data : 0[B]
rdma_cm QPs    : OFF
Data_ex. method : Ethernet
-----

local address: LID 0000 QPN 0xff0000 PSN 0x40473a
GID: 00:00:00:00:00:00:00:00:00:00:255:255:192:168:101:03
local address: LID 0000 QPN 0xff0002 PSN 0x124cd3
GID: 00:00:00:00:00:00:00:00:00:00:255:255:192:168:101:03
remote address: LID 0000 QPN 0xff0000 PSN 0xf0b2c3
GID: 00:00:00:00:00:00:00:00:00:00:255:255:192:168:100:03
remote address: LID 0000 QPN 0xff0002 PSN 0xa2b8f1
GID: 00:00:00:00:00:00:00:00:00:00:255:255:192:168:100:03
-----

#bytes    #iterations    BW peak[Gb/sec]    BW average[Gb/sec]    MsgRate[Mpps]
65536     1000             23.04              23.04                  0.043936
-----
```

Figure 6-3. Switch Settings, Client

Configuring RoCE v1 or RoCE v2 Settings for RDMA_CM Applications

To configure RoCE, use the following scripts from the FastLinQ source package:

```
# ./show_rdma_cm_roce_ver.sh
qedr0 is configured to IB/RoCE v1
qedr1 is configured to IB/RoCE v1

# ./config_rdma_cm_roce_ver.sh v2
configured rdma_cm for qedr0 to RoCE v2
configured rdma_cm for qedr1 to RoCE v2
```

Server Settings:

```
[root@RoCE-Auto-2 /]# rping -s -v -C 10
server ping data: rdma-ping-0: ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz
server ping data: rdma-ping-1: BCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz
server ping data: rdma-ping-2: CDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz
server ping data: rdma-ping-3: DEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz
server ping data: rdma-ping-4: EFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz
server ping data: rdma-ping-5: FGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz
server ping data: rdma-ping-6: GHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz
server ping data: rdma-ping-7: HIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz
server ping data: rdma-ping-8: IJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz
server ping data: rdma-ping-9: JKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz
server DISCONNECT EVENT...
wait for RDMA_READ_ADV state 10
[root@RoCE-Auto-2 /]#
```

Figure 6-4. Configuring RDMA_CM Applications: Server

Client Settings:

```
[root@roce-auto-1 ~]# rping -c -v -C 10 -a 192.168.100.3
ping data: rdma-ping-0: ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz
ping data: rdma-ping-1: BCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz
ping data: rdma-ping-2: CDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz
ping data: rdma-ping-3: DEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz
ping data: rdma-ping-4: EFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz
ping data: rdma-ping-5: FGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz
ping data: rdma-ping-6: GHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz
ping data: rdma-ping-7: HIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz
ping data: rdma-ping-8: IJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz
ping data: rdma-ping-9: JKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz
client DISCONNECT EVENT...
[root@roce-auto-1 ~]#
```

Figure 6-5. Configuring RDMA_CM Applications: Client

Configuring RoCE on the Adapter for ESX

This section provides the following procedures and information for RoCE configuration:

- [Configuring RDMA Interfaces](#)
- [Configuring MTU](#)
- [RoCE Mode and Statistics](#)
- [Configuring a Paravirtual RDMA Device \(PVRDMA\)](#)

Configuring RDMA Interfaces

To configure the RDMA interfaces:

1. Install both QLogic NIC and RoCE drivers.
2. Using the module parameter, enable the RoCE function from the NIC driver by issuing the following command:

```
esxcfg-module -s 'enable_roce=1' qedentv
```

To apply the change, reload the NIC driver or reboot the system.

3. To view a list of the NIC interfaces, issue the `esxcfg-nics -l` command. For example:

```
esxcfg-nics -l
```

Name	PCI	Driver	Link	Speed	Duplex	MAC Address	MTU	Description
Vmnic0	0000:01:00.2	qedentv	Up	25000Mbps	Full	a4:5d:36:2b:6c:92	1500	QLogic Corp.
QLogic FastLinQ QL41xxx 1/10/25 GbE Ethernet Adapter								
Vmnic1	0000:01:00.3	qedentv	Up	25000Mbps	Full	a4:5d:36:2b:6c:93	1500	QLogic Corp.
QLogic FastLinQ QL41xxx 1/10/25 GbE Ethernet Adapter								

4. To view a list of the RDMA devices, issue the `esxcli rdma device list` command. For example:

```
esxcli rdma device list
```

Name	Driver	State	MTU	Speed	Paired Uplink	Description
vmrdma0	qedrntv	Active	1024	25 Gbps	vmnic0	QLogic FastLinQ QL45xxx RDMA Interface
vmrdma1	qedrntv	Active	1024	25 Gbps	vmnic1	QLogic FastLinQ QL45xxx RDMA Interface

5. To create a new virtual switch, issue the following command:
`esxcli network vswitch standard add -v <new vswitch name>`

For example:

```
# esxcli network vswitch standard add -v roce_vs
```

This creates a new virtual switch named *roce_vs*.

6. To associate the QLogic NIC port to the vSwitch, issue the following command:

```
# esxcli network vswitch standard uplink add -u <uplink device> -v <roce vswitch>
```

For example:

```
# esxcli network vswitch standard uplink add -u vmnic0 -v roce_vs
```
7. To create a new port group on this vSwitch, issue the following command:

```
# esxcli network vswitch standard portgroup add -p roce_pg -v roce_vs
```

For example:

```
# esxcli network vswitch standard portgroup add -p roce_pg -v roce_vs
```
8. To create a vmknics interface on this port group and configure the IP, issue the following command:

```
# esxcfg-vmknics -a -i <IP address> -n <subnet mask> <roce port group name>
```

For example:

```
# esxcfg-vmknics -a -i 192.168.10.20 -n 255.255.255.0 roce_pg
```
9. To configure the VLAN ID, issue the following command:

```
# esxcfg-vswitch -v <VLAN ID> -p roce_pg
```

To run RoCE traffic with VLAN ID, configure the VLAN ID on the corresponding VMkernel port group.

Configuring MTU

To modify MTU for RoCE interface, change the MTU of the corresponding vSwitch. Set the MTU size of the RDMA interface based on MTU of the vSwitch by issuing the following command:

```
# esxcfg-vswitch -m <new MTU> <RoCE vswitch name>
```

For example:

```
# esxcfg-vswitch -m 4000 roce_vs
```

```
# esxcli rdma device list
```

Name	Driver	State	MTU	Speed	Paired Uplink	Description
vmrdma0	qedrntv	Active	2048	25 Gbps	vmnic0	QLogic FastLinQ QL45xxx RDMA Interface
vmrdma1	qedrntv	Active	1024	25 Gbps	vmnic1	QLogic FastLinQ QL45xxx RDMA Interface

RoCE Mode and Statistics

For the RoCE mode, ESXi requires concurrent support of both RoCE v1 and v2. The decision regarding which RoCE mode to use is made during queue pair creation. The ESXi driver advertises both modes during registration and initialization. To view RoCE statistics, issue the following command:

```
# esxcli rdma device stats get -d vmrdma0
```

```
Packets received: 0
Packets sent: 0
Bytes received: 0
Bytes sent: 0
Error packets received: 0
Error packets sent: 0
Error length packets received: 0
Unicast packets received: 0
Multicast packets received: 0
Unicast bytes received: 0
Multicast bytes received: 0
Unicast packets sent: 0
Multicast packets sent: 0
Unicast bytes sent: 0
Multicast bytes sent: 0
Queue pairs allocated: 0
Queue pairs in RESET state: 0
Queue pairs in INIT state: 0
Queue pairs in RTR state: 0
Queue pairs in RTS state: 0
Queue pairs in SQD state: 0
Queue pairs in SQE state: 0
Queue pairs in ERR state: 0
Queue pair events: 0
Completion queues allocated: 1
Completion queue events: 0
Shared receive queues allocated: 0
Shared receive queue events: 0
Protection domains allocated: 1
Memory regions allocated: 3
Address handles allocated: 0
Memory windows allocated: 0
```

Configuring a Paravirtual RDMA Device (PVRDMA)

To configure PVRDMA using vCenter interface:

1. Create and configure a new distributed virtual switch as follows:
 - a. In the VMware vSphere Web Client, right-click the **RoCE** node in the left pane of the Navigator window.
 - b. On the Actions menu, point to **Distributed Switch**, and then click **New Distributed Switch**.
 - c. Select version 6.5.0.
 - d. Under **New Distributed Switch**, click **Edit settings**, and then configure the following:
 - **Number of uplinks**. Select an appropriate value.
 - **Network I/O Control**. Select **Disabled**.
 - **Default port group**. Select this check box.
 - **Port group name**. Enter a name for the port group.

Figure 6-6 shows an example.

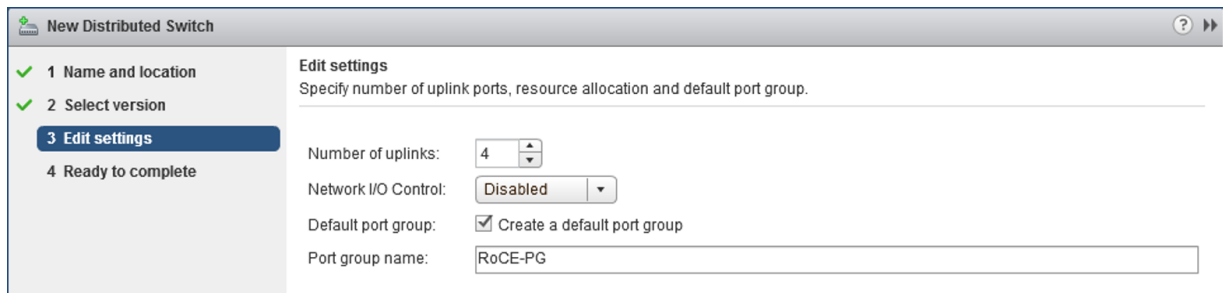


Figure 6-6. Configuring a New Distributed Switch

2. Configure a distributed virtual switch as follows:
 - a. In the VMware vSphere Web Client, expand the **RoCE** node in the left pane of the Navigator window.
 - b. Right-click **RoCE-VDS**, and then click **Add and Manage Hosts**.
 - c. Under **Add and Manage Hosts**, configure the following:
 - **Assign uplinks**. Select from the list of available uplinks.
 - **Manage VMkernel network adapters**. Accept the default, and then click **Next**.
 - **Migrate VM networking**. Assign the port group created in [Step 1](#).

3. Assign a vmknics for PVRDMA to use on ESX hosts:
 - a. Right-click a host, and then click **Settings**.
 - b. On the Settings page, expand the **System** node, and then click **Advanced System Settings**.
 - c. The Advanced System Settings page shows the key-pair value and its summary. Click **Edit**.
 - d. On the Edit Advanced System Settings page, filter on **PVRDMA** to narrow all the setting to just Net.PVRDMAvmknics.
 - e. Set the **Net.PVRDMAvmknics** value to **vmknics**; for example, **vmk1**.

Figure 6-7 shows an example.

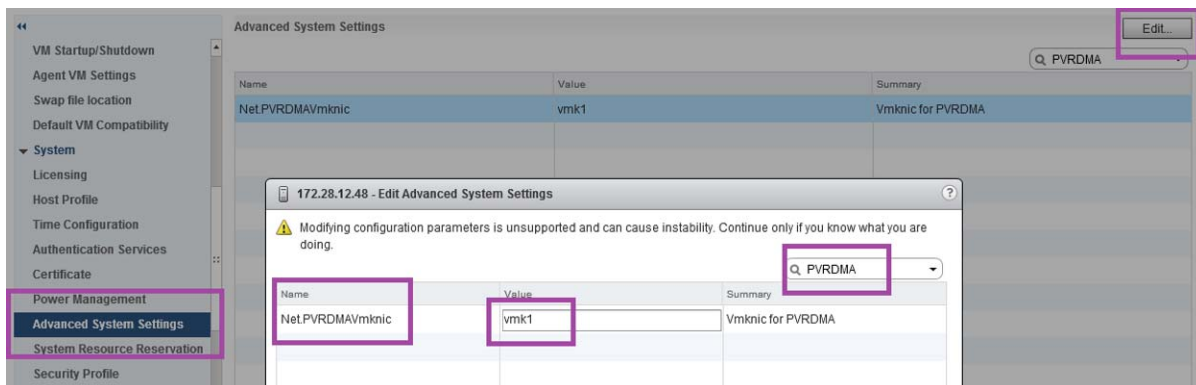


Figure 6-7. Assigning a vmknics for PVRDMA

4. Set the firewall rule for the PVRDMA:
 - a. Right-click a host, and then click **Settings**.
 - b. On the Settings page, expand the **System** node, and then click **Security Profile**.
 - c. On the Firewall Summary page, click **Edit**.
 - d. In the Edit Security Profile dialog box under **Name**, scroll down, select the **pvrDMA** check box, and then select the **Set Firewall** check box.

Figure 6-8 shows an example.

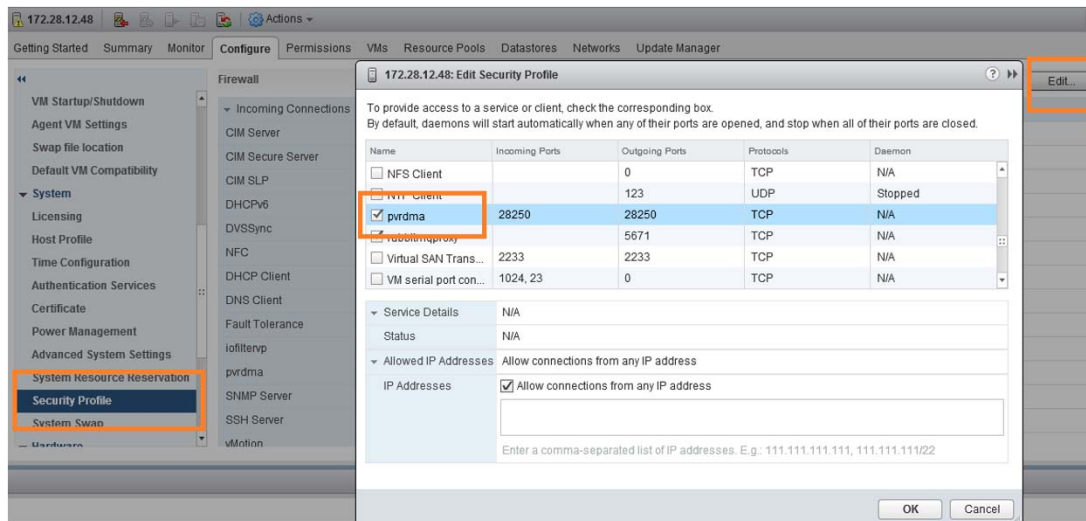


Figure 6-8. Setting the Firewall Rule

5. Set up the VM for PVRDMA as follows:
 - a. Install one of the following supported guest OSs:
 - RHEL 7.2
 - Ubuntu 14.04 (kernel version 4.0)
 - b. Install OFED-3.18.
 - c. Compile and install the PVRDMA guest driver and library.
 - d. Add a new PVRDMA network adapter to VM as follows:
 - Edit the VM settings.
 - Add a new network adapter.
 - Select the newly added DVS port group as **Network**.
 - Select **PVRDMA** as the adapter type.
 - e. After the VM is booted, ensure that the PVRDMA guest driver is loaded.

7 iWARP Configuration

Internet wide area RDMA protocol (iWARP) is a computer networking protocol that implements RDMA for efficient data transfer over IP networks. iWARP is designed for multiple environments, including LANs, storage networks, data center networks, and WANs.

This chapter provides instructions for:

- [Preparing the Adapter for iWARP](#)
- [Configuring iWARP on Windows](#)
- [Configuring iWARP on Linux](#)

NOTE

Some iWARP features may not be fully enabled in the current release. For details, refer to [Appendix D Feature Constraints](#).

Preparing the Adapter for iWARP

This section provides instructions for preboot adapter iWARP configuration using HII. For more information about preboot adapter configuration, see [Chapter 5 Adapter Preboot Configuration](#).

To configure iWARP through HII in Default mode:

1. Access the server BIOS System Setup, and then click **Device Settings**.
2. On the Device Settings page, select a port for the 25G 41xxx Series Adapter.
3. On the Main Configuration Page for the selected adapter, click **NIC Configuration**.
4. On the NIC Configuration page:
 - a. Set the **NIC + RDMA Mode** to **Enabled**.
 - b. Set the **RDMA Protocol Support** to **iWARP**.
 - c. Click **Back**.
5. On the Main Configuration Page, click **Finish**.

6. In the Warning - Saving Changes message box, click **Yes** to save the configuration.
7. In the Success - Saving Changes message box, click **OK**.
8. Repeat [Step 2](#) through [Step 7](#) to configure the NIC and iWARP for the other ports.
9. To complete adapter preparation of both ports:
 - a. On the Device Settings page, click **Finish**.
 - b. On the main menu, click **Finish**.
 - c. Exit to reboot the system.

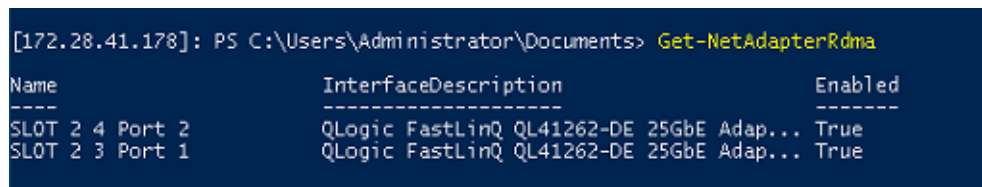
Proceed to [“Configuring iWARP on Windows” on page 87](#) or [“Configuring iWARP on Linux” on page 91](#).

Configuring iWARP on Windows

This section provides procedures for enabling iWARP, verifying RDMA, and verifying iWARP traffic on Windows. For a list of OSs that support iWARP, see [Table 6-1 on page 63](#).

To enable iWARP on the Windows host and verify RDMA:

1. Enable iWARP on the Windows host.
 - a. Open the Windows Device Manager, and then open the 41xxx Series Adapters NDIS Miniport Properties.
 - b. On the FastLinQ Adapter properties, click the **Advanced** tab.
 - c. On the Advanced page under **Property**, do the following:
 - Select **Network Direct Functionality**, and then select **Enabled** for the **Value**.
 - Select **RDMA Mode**, and then select **iWARP** for the **Value**.
 - d. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the adapter properties.
2. Using Windows PowerShell, verify that RDMA is enabled. The `Get-NetAdapterRdma` command output ([Figure 7-1](#)) shows the adapters that support RDMA.

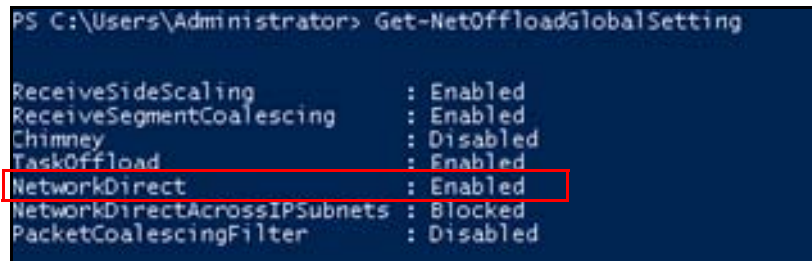


```
[172.28.41.178]: PS C:\Users\Administrator\Documents> Get-NetAdapterRdma
```

Name	InterfaceDescription	Enabled
----	-----	-----
SLOT 2 4 Port 2	QLogic FastLinQ QL41262-DE 25GbE Adap...	True
SLOT 2 3 Port 1	QLogic FastLinQ QL41262-DE 25GbE Adap...	True

Figure 7-1. Windows PowerShell Command: Get-NetAdapterRdma

3. Using Windows PowerShell, verify that NetworkDirect is enabled. The Get-NetOffloadGlobalSetting command output ([Figure 7-2](#)) shows NetworkDirect as Enabled.



```
PS C:\Users\Administrator> Get-NetOffloadGlobalSetting

ReceiveSideScaling      : Enabled
ReceiveSegmentCoalescing : Enabled
Chimney                 : Disabled
TaskOffload             : Enabled
NetworkDirect           : Enabled
NetworkDirectAcrossIPSubnets : Blocked
PacketCoalescingFilter  : Disabled
```

Figure 7-2. Windows PowerShell Command: Get-NetOffloadGlobalSetting

To verify iWARP traffic:

1. Map SMB drives and run iWARP traffic.
2. Launch Performance Monitor (Perfmon).
3. In the Add Counters dialog box, click **RDMA Activity**, and then select the adapter instances.

Figure 7-3 shows an example.

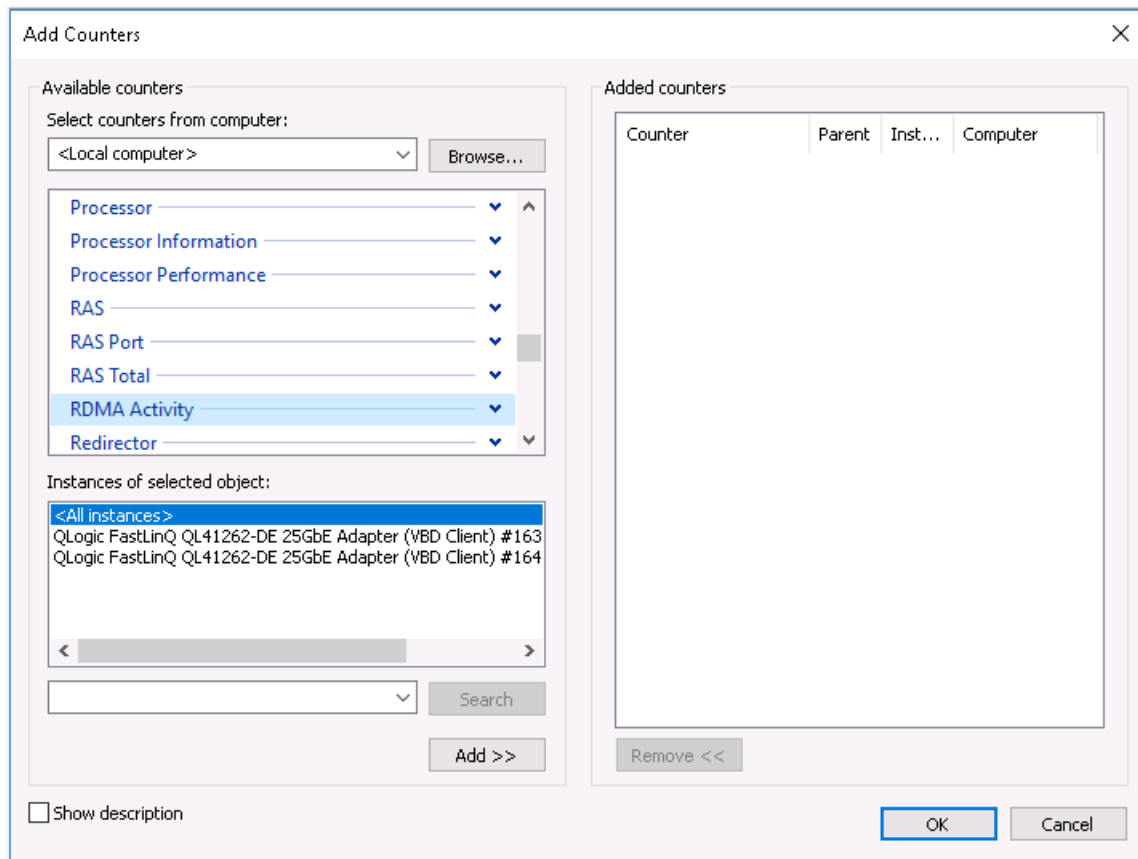


Figure 7-3. Perfmon: Add Counters

If iWARP traffic is running, counters appear as shown in the [Figure 7-4](#) example.

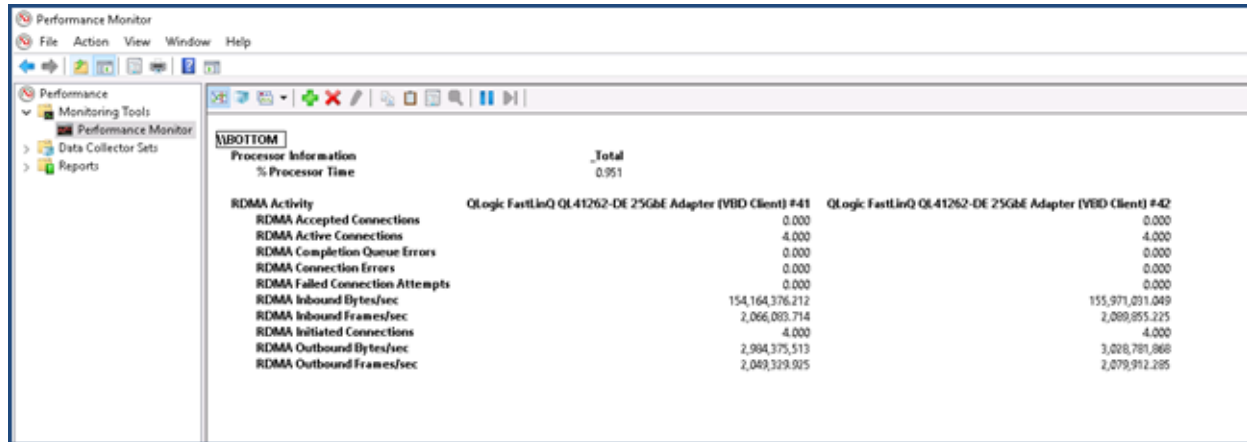


Figure 7-4. Perfmon: Verifying iWARP Traffic

4. To verify the SMB connection:
 - a. At a command prompt, issue the `net use` command as follows:

```
C:\Users\Administrator> net use
New connections will be remembered.
```

```
Status      Local      Remote      Network
-----
OK          F:         \\192.168.10.10\Share1  Microsoft Windows Network
The command completed successfully.
```

- b. Issue the `net -xan` command as follows, where `Share1` is mapped as an SMB share:

```
C:\Users\Administrator> net -xan
Active NetworkDirect Connections, Listeners, ShareEndpoints
```

Mode	IfIndex	Type	Local Address	Foreign Address	PID
Kernel	56	Connection	192.168.11.20:16159	192.168.11.10:445	0
Kernel	56	Connection	192.168.11.20:15903	192.168.11.10:445	0
Kernel	56	Connection	192.168.11.20:16159	192.168.11.10:445	0
Kernel	56	Connection	192.168.11.20:15903	192.168.11.10:445	0
Kernel	60	Listener	[fe80::e11d:9ab5:a47d:4f0a%56]:445	NA	0
Kernel	60	Listener	192.168.11.20:445	NA	0
Kernel	60	Listener	[fe80::71ea:bdd2:ae41:b95f%60]:445	NA	0
Kernel	60	Listener	192.168.11.20:16159	192.168.11.10:445	0

Configuring iWARP on Linux

QLogic 41xxx Series Adapters support iWARP on the Linux Open Fabric Enterprise Distributions (OFEDs) listed in [Table 6-1 on page 63](#).

iWARP configuration on a Linux system includes the following:

- [Installing the Driver](#)
- [Configuring iWARP and RoCE](#)
- [Detecting the Device](#)
- [Supported iWARP Applications](#)
- [Running Perftest for iWARP](#)
- [Configuring NFS-RDMA](#)
- [iWARP RDMA-Core Support on SLES 12 SP3, RHEL 7.4, and OFED 4.8x](#)

Installing the Driver

Install the RDMA drivers as shown in [Chapter 3 Driver Installation](#).

Configuring iWARP and RoCE

NOTE

This procedure applies only when you previously selected **iWARP+RoCE** as the value for the RDMA Protocol Support parameter during preboot configuration using HII (see [Configuring NIC Parameters, Step 5 on page 45](#)).

To enable iWARP and RoCE:

1. Unload all FastlinQ drivers
`# modprobe -r qedr or modprobe -r qede`
2. Use the following command syntax to change the RDMA protocol by loading the qed driver with a port interface PCI ID (xx:xx.x) and an RDMA protocol value (p).

```
#modprobe -v qed rdma_protocol_map=<xx:xx.x-p>
```

The RDMA protocol (p) values are as follows:

- 0—Accept the default (RoCE)
- 1—No RDMA
- 2—RoCE
- 3—iWARP

For example, issue the following command to change the interface on the port given by 04:00.0 from RoCE to iWARP.

```
#modprobe -v qed rdma_protocol_map=04:00.0-3
```

3. Load the RDMA driver by issuing the following command:

```
#modprobe -v qedr
```

The following example shows the command entries to change the RDMA protocol to iWARP on multiple NPAR interfaces:

```
# modprobe qed rdma_protocol_map=04:00.1-3,04:00.3-3,04:00.5-3,  
04:00.7-3,04:01.1-3,04:01.3-3,04:01.5-3,04:01.7-3
```

```
# modprobe -v qedr
```

```
# ibv_devinfo |grep iWARP
```

transport:	iWARP (1)
transport:	iWARP (1)
transport:	iWARP (1)
transport:	iWARP (1)
transport:	iWARP (1)
transport:	iWARP (1)
transport:	iWARP (1)
transport:	iWARP (1)

Detecting the Device

To detect the device:

1. To verify whether RDMA devices are detected, view the `dmesg` logs:

```
# dmesg |grep qedr
```

```
[10500.191047] qedr 0000:04:00.0: registered qedr0
```

```
[10500.221726] qedr 0000:04:00.1: registered qedr1
```

2. Issue the `ibv_devinfo` command, and then verify the transport type.

If the command is successful, each PCI function will show a separate `hca_id`. For example (if checking the second port of the above dual-port adapter):

```
[root@localhost ~]# ibv_devinfo -d qedr1
```

```
hca_id: qedr1
```

transport:	iWARP (1)
fw_ver:	8.14.7.0
node_guid:	020e:1eff:fec4:c06e
sys_image_guid:	020e:1eff:fec4:c06e
vendor_id:	0x1077

```
vendor_part_id:          5718
hw_ver:                  0x0
phys_port_cnt:           1
    port:      1
        state:          PORT_ACTIVE (4)
        max_mtu:         4096 (5)
        active_mtu:      1024 (3)
        sm_lid:          0
        port_lid:        0
        port_lmc:        0x00
        link_layer:      Ethernet
```

Supported iWARP Applications

Linux-supported RDMA applications for iWARP include the following:

- `ibv_devinfo`, `ib_devices`
- `ib_send_bw/lat`, `ib_write_bw/lat`, `ib_read_bw/lat`, `ib_atomic_bw/lat`
For iWARP, all applications must use the RDMA communication manager (`rdma_cm`) using the `-R` option.
- `rdma_server`, `rdma_client`
- `rdma_xserver`, `rdma_xclient`
- `rping`
- NFS over RDMA (NFSoverRDMA)
- iSER (for details, see [Chapter 8 iSER Configuration](#))
- NVMe-oF (for details, see [Chapter 12 NVMe-oF Configuration with RDMA](#))

Running Perftest for iWARP

All perftest tools are supported over the iWARP transport type. You must run the tools using RDMA connection manager (with the `-R` option).

Example:

1. On one server, issue the following command (using the second port in this example):

```
# ib_send_bw -d qedr1 -F -R
```
2. On one client, issue the following command (using the second port in this example):

```
[root@localhost ~]# ib_send_bw -d qedr1 -F -R 192.168.11.3
```

```
Send BW Test
Dual-port      : OFF      Device      : qedr1
Number of qps  : 1        Transport type : IW
Connection type : RC      Using SRQ    : OFF
TX depth       : 128
CQ Moderation  : 100
Mtu            : 1024[B]
Link type      : Ethernet
GID index      : 0
Max inline data : 0[B]
rdma_cm QPs    : ON
Data ex. method : rdma_cm
```

```
-----
local address: LID 0000 QPN 0x0192 PSN 0xcde932
GID: 00:14:30:196:192:110:00:00:00:00:00:00:00:00:00:00
remote address: LID 0000 QPN 0x0098 PSN 0x46fffc
GID: 00:14:30:196:195:62:00:00:00:00:00:00:00:00:00:00
-----
```

```
-----
#bytes  #iterations  BW peak[MB/sec]  BW average[MB/sec]  MsgRate[Mpps]
65536   1000         2250.38         2250.36             0.036006
-----
```

NOTE

For latency applications (send/write), if the perftest version is the latest (for example, perftest-3.0-0.21.g21dc344.x86_64.rpm), use the supported inline size value: 0-128.

Configuring NFS-RDMA

NFS-RDMA for iWARP includes both server and client configuration steps.

To configure the NFS server:

1. In the `/etc/exports` file for the directories that you must export using NFS-RDMA on the server, make the following entry:

```
/tmp/nfs-server *(fsid=0,async,insecure,no_root_squash)
```

Ensure that you use a different file system identification (FSID) for each directory that you export.

2. Load the svcrdma module as follows:
`# modprobe svcrdma`
3. Start the NFS service without any errors:
`# service nfs start`
4. Include the default RDMA port 20049 into this file as follows:
`# echo rdma 20049 > /proc/fs/nfsd/portlist`
5. To make local directories available for NFS clients to mount, issue the `exportfs` command as follows:
`# exportfs -v`

To configure the NFS client:

NOTE

This procedure for NFS client configuration also applies to RoCE.

1. Load the xprtrdma module as follows:
`# modprobe xprtrdma`
2. Mount the NFS file system as appropriate for your version:
For NFS Version 3:

```
#mount -o rdma,port=20049 192.168.2.4:/tmp/nfs-server /tmp/nfs-client
```

For NFS Version 4:

```
#mount -t nfs4 -o rdma,port=20049 192.168.2.4:/ /tmp/nfs-client
```

NOTE

The default port for NFSv4 is 20049. However, any other port that is aligned with the NFS client will also work.

3. Verify that the file system is mounted by issuing the `mount` command. Ensure that the RDMA port and file system versions are correct.
`#mount |grep rdma`

iWARP RDMA-Core Support on SLES 12 SP3, RHEL 7.4, and OFED 4.8x

The user space library libqedr is part of the rdma-core. However, the out-of-box libqedr does not support SLES 12 SP3, RHEL 7.4, OFED 4.8x. Therefore, these OS versions require a patch to support iWARP RDMA-Core.

To apply the iWARP RDMA-Core patch:

1. To download the latest RDMA-core source, issue the following command:
git clone https://github.com/linux-rdma/rdma-core.git
2. Install all OS-dependent packages/libraries as described in the *RDMA-Core README*.

For RHEL and CentOS, issue the following command:

```
# yum install cmake gcc libnl3-devel libudev-devel make  
pkgconfig valgrind-devel
```

For SLES 12 SP3 (ISO/SDK kit), install the following RPMs:

```
cmake-3.5.2-18.3.x86_64.rpm (OS ISO)  
libnl-1_1-devel-1.1.4-4.21.x86_64.rpm (SDK ISO)  
libnl3-devel-3.2.23-2.21.x86_64.rpm (SDK ISO)
```

3. To build the RDMA-core, issue the following commands:
cd <rdma-core-path>/rdma-core-master/
./build.sh
4. To run all OFED applications from the current RDMA-core-master location, type the following command:

```
# ls <rdma-core-master>/build/bin  
cmpost ib_acme ibv_devinfo ibv_uc_pingpong  
iwpmc rdma_client rdma_xclient rping ucmatose  
umad_compile_test cmtime ibv_asyncwatch ibv_rc_pingpong  
ibv_ud_pingpong mkey rdma-ndd rdma_xserver rstream  
udaddy umad_reg2 ibacm ibv_devices ibv_srq_pingpong  
ibv_xsrq_pingpong rcopy rdma_server riostream  
srp_daemon udpong umad_register2
```

Run applications from the current RDMA-core-master location. For example:

```
# ./rping -c -v -C 5 -a 192.168.21.3
ping data: rdma-ping-0: ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz
ping data: rdma-ping-1: BCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz
ping data: rdma-ping-2: CDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz
ping data: rdma-ping-3: DEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz
ping data: rdma-ping-4: EFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz
client DISCONNECT EVENT...
```

5. To run inbox OFED applications, such as perftest and other InfiniBand applications, issue the following command to set the library path for iWARP:

```
# export
LD_LIBRARY_PATH=/builds/rdma-core-path-iwarp/rdma-core-master/build/lib
```

For example:

```
# /usr/bin/rping -c -v -C 5 -a 192.168.22.3 (or) rping -c -v -C 5 -a
192.168.22.3
ping data: rdma-ping-0: ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz
ping data: rdma-ping-1: BCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz
ping data: rdma-ping-2: CDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz
ping data: rdma-ping-3: DEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz
ping data: rdma-ping-4: EFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz
client DISCONNECT EVENT...
```

8 iSER Configuration

This chapter provides procedures for configuring iSCSI Extensions for RDMA (iSER) for Linux (RHEL and SLES), including:

- [Before You Begin](#)
- [Configuring iSER for RHEL](#)
- [Configuring iSER for SLES 12](#)
- [Using iSER with iWARP on RHEL and SLES](#)
- [Optimizing Linux Performance](#)

Before You Begin

As you prepare to configure iSER, consider the following:

- iSER is supported only in inbox OFED for the following operating systems:
 - ❑ RHEL 7.1 and 7.2
 - ❑ SLES 12 and 12 SP1
- After logging into the targets or while running I/O traffic, unloading the Linux RoCE qedr driver may crash the system.
- While running I/O, performing interface down/up tests or performing cable pull-tests can cause driver or iSER module errors that may crash the system. If this happens, reboot the system.

Configuring iSER for RHEL

To configure iSER for RHEL:

1. Install inbox OFED as described in [“RoCE Configuration for RHEL” on page 70](#). Out-of-box OFEDs are not supported for iSER because the `ib_isert` module is not available in the out-of-box OFED 3.18-2 GA/3.18-3 GA versions. The inbox `ib_isert` module does not work with any out-of-box OFED versions.
2. Unload any existing FastLinQ drivers as described in [“Removing the Linux Drivers” on page 10](#).

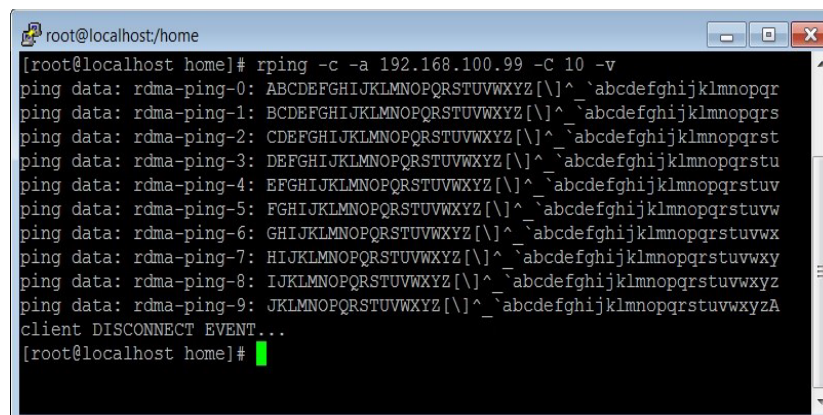
3. Install the latest FastLinQ driver and libqedr packages as described in [“Installing the Linux Drivers with RDMA” on page 14](#).
4. Load the RDMA services.

```
systemctl start rdma
modprobe qedr
modprobe ib_iser
modprobe ib_isert
```
5. Verify that all RDMA and iSER modules loaded on the initiator and target devices by issuing the `lsmod | grep qed` and `lsmod | grep iser` commands.
6. Verify that there are separate `hca_id` instances by issuing the `ibv_devinfo` command, as shown in [Step 6 on page 72](#).
7. Check the RDMA connection on the initiator device and the target device.
 - a. On the initiator device issue the following command:

```
rping -s -C 10 -v
```
 - b. On the target device, issue the following command:

```
rping -c -a 192.168.100.99 -C 10 -v
```

[Figure 8-1](#) shows an example of a successful RDMA ping.



```
root@localhost/home
[root@localhost home]# rping -c -a 192.168.100.99 -C 10 -v
ping data: rdma-ping-0: ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz
ping data: rdma-ping-1: BCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz
ping data: rdma-ping-2: CDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz
ping data: rdma-ping-3: DEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz
ping data: rdma-ping-4: EFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz
ping data: rdma-ping-5: FGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz
ping data: rdma-ping-6: GHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz
ping data: rdma-ping-7: HIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz
ping data: rdma-ping-8: IJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz
ping data: rdma-ping-9: JKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyzA
client DISCONNECT EVENT...
[root@localhost home]#
```

Figure 8-1. RDMA Ping Successful

8. You can use a Linux TCM-LIO target to test iSER. The setup is the same for any iSCSI target, except that you issue the command `enable_iser Boolean=true` on the applicable portals. The portal instances are identified as **iser** in [Figure 8-2](#).

```
/iscsi/iqn.20.../tpg1/portals> cd 192.168.100.99:3260
/iscsi/iqn.20...8.100.99:3260> enable_iser boolean=true
iSER enable now: True
/iscsi/iqn.20...8.100.99:3260>
/iscsi/iqn.20...8.100.99:3260> cd /
/> ls
/>> ls
o- / ..... [..]
| o- backstores ..... [..]
| | o- block ..... [Storage Objects: 0]
| | o- fileio ..... [Storage Objects: 0]
| | o- pscsi ..... [Storage Objects: 0]
| | o- ramdisk ..... [Storage Objects: 1]
| | | o- ram1 ..... [nullio (512.0MiB) activated]
| o- iscsi ..... [Targets: 1]
| | o- iqn.2015-06.test.target1 ..... [TPGs: 1]
| | | o- tpg1 ..... [gen-acls, no-auth]
| | | | o- acls ..... [ACLs: 0]
| | | | o- luns ..... [LUNs: 1]
| | | | | o- lun0 ..... [ramdisk/ram1]
| | | | o- portals ..... [Portals: 1]
| | | | | o- 192.168.100.99:3260 ..... [iser]
| o- loopback ..... [Targets: 0]
| o- srpt ..... [Targets: 0]
/>>
```

Figure 8-2. iSER Portal Instances

9. Install Linux iSCSI Initiator Utilities using the `yum install iscsi-initiator-utils` commands.
 - a. To discover the iSER target, issue the `iscsiadm` command. For example:
`iscsiadm -m discovery -t st -p 192.168.100.99:3260`
 - b. To change the transport mode to iSER, issue the `iscsiadm` command. For example:
`iscsiadm -m node -T iqn.2015-06.test.target1 -o update -n iface.transport_name -v iser`
 - c. To connect to or log in to the iSER target, issue the `iscsiadm` command. For example:
`iscsiadm -m node -l -p 192.168.100.99:3260 -T iqn.2015-06.test.target1`
 - d. Confirm that the Iface Transport is **iser** in the target connection, as shown [Figure 8-3](#). Issue the `iscsiadm` command; for example:
`iscsiadm -m session -P2`

```
[root@localhost ~]# iscsiadm -m discovery -t st -p 192.168.100.99:3260
192.168.100.99:3260,1 ign.2015-06.test.target1
192.168.100.99:3260,1 ign.2015-06.test.target1
[root@localhost ~]#
[root@localhost ~]# iscsiadm -m node -T ign.2015-06.test.target1 -o update -n iface.transport_name -v iser
[root@localhost ~]#
[root@localhost ~]# iscsiadm -m node -l -p 192.168.100.99:3260 -T ign.2015-06.test.target1
Logging in to [iface: default, target: ign.2015-06.test.target1, portal: 192.168.100.99,3260] (multiple)
Login to [iface: default, target: ign.2015-06.test.target1, portal: 192.168.100.99,3260] successful.
[root@localhost ~]#
[root@localhost ~]# iscsiadm -m session -P2
Target: ign.2015-06.test.target1 (non-flash)
Current Portal: 192.168.100.99:3260,1
Persistent Portal: 192.168.100.99:3260,1
*****
Interface:
*****
Iface Name: default
Iface Transport: iser
Iface Initiatorname: ign.1994-05.com.redhat:c672dfb8b08f
Iface IPaddress: <empty>
Iface HWaddress: <empty>
Iface Netdev: <empty>
SID: 33
iSCSI Connection State: LOGGED IN
iSCSI Session State: LOGGED_IN
Internal iscsid Session State: NO CHANGE
*****
Timeouts:
*****
Recovery Timeout: 120
```

Figure 8-3. Iface Transport Confirmed

- e. To check for a new iSCSI device, as shown [Figure 8-4](#), issue the `lsscsi` command.

```
[root@localhost ~]# lsscsi
[6:0:0:0]    disk      HP          LOGICAL VOLUME  1.18  /dev/sdb
[6:0:0:1]    disk      HP          LOGICAL VOLUME  1.18  /dev/sda
[6:0:0:3]    disk      HP          LOGICAL VOLUME  1.18  /dev/sdc
[6:3:0:0]    storage   HP          P440ar          1.18  -
[39:0:0:0]   disk      LIO-ORG     ram1             4.0   /dev/sdd
[root@localhost ~]#
```

Figure 8-4. Checking for New iSCSI Device

Configuring iSER for SLES 12

Because the `targetcli` is not in box on SLES 12.x, you must complete the following procedure.

To configure iSER for SLES 12:

1. To install `targetcli`, copy and install the following RPMs from the ISO image (x86_64 and noarch location):
`lio-utils-4.1-14.6.x86_64.rpm`
`python-configobj-4.7.2-18.10.noarch.rpm`
`python-PrettyTable-0.7.2-8.5.noarch.rpm`
`python-configshell-1.5-1.44.noarch.rpm`
`python-pyparsing-2.0.1-4.10.noarch.rpm`
`python-netifaces-0.8-6.55.x86_64.rpm`
`python-rtplib-2.2-6.6.noarch.rpm`
`python-urwid-1.1.1-6.144.x86_64.rpm`
`targetcli-2.1-3.8.x86_64.rpm`
2. Before starting the `targetcli`, load all RoCE device drivers and iSER modules as follows:

```
# modprobe qed  
# modprobe qede  
# modprobe qedr  
# modprobe ib_iser (Initiator)  
# modprobe ib_isert (Target)
```
3. Before configuring iSER targets, configure NIC interfaces and run L2 and RoCE traffic, as described in [Step 7 on page 72](#).
4. Start the `targetcli` utility, and configure your targets on the iSER target system.

NOTE

`targetcli` versions are different in RHEL and SLES. Be sure to use the proper backstores to configure your targets:

- RHEL uses *ramdisk*
 - SLES uses *rd_mcp*
-

Using iSER with iWARP on RHEL and SLES

Configure the iSER initiator and target similar to RoCE to work with iWARP. You can use different methods to create a Linux-IO Target (LIO™); one is listed in this section. You may encounter some difference in targetcli configuration in SLES 12 and RHEL 7.x because of the version.

To configure a target for LIO:

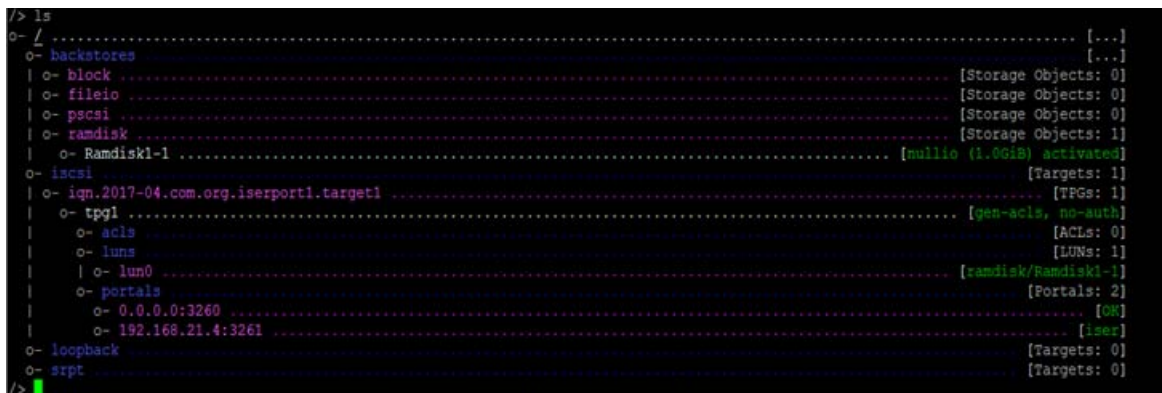
1. Create an LIO target using the targetcli utility. Issue the following command:

```
# targetcli
targetcli shell version 2.1.fb41
Copyright 2011-2013 by Datera, Inc and others.
For help on commands, type 'help'.
```

2. Issue the following commands:

```
/> /backstores/ramdisk create Ramdisk1-1 1g nullio=true
/> /iscsi create iqn.2017-04.com.org.iserport1.target1
/> /iscsi/iqn.2017-04.com.org.iserport1.target1/tpg1/luns create
/backstores/ramdisk/Ramdisk1-1
/> /iscsi/iqn.2017-04.com.org.iserport1.target1/tpg1/portals/ create
192.168.21.4 ip_port=3261
/> /iscsi/iqn.2017-04.com.org.iserport1.target1/tpg1/portals/192.168.21.4:3261
enable_iser boolean=true
/> /iscsi/iqn.2017-04.com.org.iserport1.target1/tpg1 set attribute
authentication=0 demo_mode_write_protect=0 generate_node_acls=1
cache_dynamic_acls=1
/> saveconfig
```

Figure 8-5 shows the target configuration for LIO.



```
/> ls
o- / ..... [Targets: 1]
o- backstores ..... [Storage Objects: 0]
| o- block ..... [Storage Objects: 0]
| o- fileio ..... [Storage Objects: 0]
| o- pscsi ..... [Storage Objects: 0]
| o- ramdisk ..... [Storage Objects: 1]
|   o- Ramdisk1-1 ..... [nullio (1.0GiB) activated]
o- iscsi ..... [Targets: 1]
| o- iqn.2017-04.com.org.iserport1.target1 ..... [TPGs: 1]
|   o- tpg1 ..... [gen-acls, no-auth]
|     o- acs ..... [ACLs: 0]
|     o- luns ..... [LUNs: 1]
|       | o- lun0 ..... [ramdisk/Ramdisk1-1]
|       o- portals ..... [Portals: 2]
|         o- 0.0.0.0:3260 ..... [OK]
|         o- 192.168.21.4:3261 ..... [iser]
o- loopback ..... [Targets: 0]
o- srpt ..... [Targets: 0]
/>
```

Figure 8-5. LIO Target Configuration

To configure an initiator for iWARP:

1. To discover the iSER LIO target using port 3261, issue the `iscsiadm` command as follows:

```
# iscsiadm -m discovery -t st -p 192.168.21.4:3261 -I iser  
192.168.21.4:3261,1 iqn.2017-04.com.org.iserport1.target1
```

2. Change the transport mode to `iser` as follows:

```
# iscsiadm -m node -o update -T iqn.2017-04.com.org.iserport1.target1 -n  
iface.transport_name -v iser
```

3. Log into the target using port 3261:

```
# iscsiadm -m node -l -p 192.168.21.4:3261 -T iqn.2017-04.com.org.iserport1.target1
```

Logging in to [iface: iser, target: iqn.2017-04.com.org.iserport1.target1,
portal: 192.168.21.4,3261] (multiple)

Login to [iface: iser, target: iqn.2017-04.com.org.iserport1.target1, portal:
192.168.21.4,3261] successful.

4. Ensure that those LUNs are visible by issuing the following command:

```
# ls SCSI  
[1:0:0:0] storage HP P440ar 3.56 -  
[1:1:0:0] disk HP LOGICAL VOLUME 3.56 /dev/sda  
[6:0:0:0] cd/dvd hp DVD-ROM DUD0N UMD0 /dev/sr0  
[7:0:0:0] disk LIO-ORG Ramdisk1-1 4.0 /dev/sdb
```

Optimizing Linux Performance

Consider the following Linux performance configuration enhancements described in this section.

- [Configuring CPUs to Maximum Performance Mode](#)
- [Configuring Kernel sysctl Settings](#)
- [Configuring IRQ Affinity Settings](#)
- [Configuring Block Device Staging](#)

Configuring CPUs to Maximum Performance Mode

Configure the CPU scaling governor to performance by using the following script to set all CPUs to maximum performance mode:

```
for CPUFREQ in
/sys/devices/system/cpu/cpu*/cpufreq/scaling_governor; do [ -f
$CPUFREQ ] || continue; echo -n performance > $CPUFREQ; done
```

Verify that all CPU cores are set to maximum performance mode by issuing the following command:

```
cat /sys/devices/system/cpu/cpu*/cpufreq/scaling_governor
```

Configuring Kernel sysctl Settings

Set the kernel sysctl settings as follows:

```
sysctl -w net.ipv4.tcp_mem="4194304 4194304 4194304"
sysctl -w net.ipv4.tcp_wmem="4096 65536 4194304"
sysctl -w net.ipv4.tcp_rmem="4096 87380 4194304"
sysctl -w net.core.wmem_max=4194304
sysctl -w net.core.rmem_max=4194304
sysctl -w net.core.wmem_default=4194304
sysctl -w net.core.rmem_default=4194304
sysctl -w net.core.netdev_max_backlog=250000
sysctl -w net.ipv4.tcp_timestamps=0
sysctl -w net.ipv4.tcp_sack=1
sysctl -w net.ipv4.tcp_low_latency=1
sysctl -w net.ipv4.tcp_adv_win_scale=1
echo 0 > /proc/sys/vm/nr_hugepages
```

Configuring IRQ Affinity Settings

The following example sets CPU core 0, 1, 2, and 3 to IRQ XX, YY, ZZ, and XYZ respectively. Perform these steps for each IRQ assigned to a port (default is eight queues per port).

```
systemctl disable irqbalance
systemctl stop irqbalance
cat /proc/interrupts | grep qedr  Shows IRQ assigned to each port queue
echo 1 > /proc/irq/XX/smp_affinity_list
echo 2 > /proc/irq/YY/smp_affinity_list
echo 4 > /proc/irq/ZZ/smp_affinity_list
echo 8 > /proc/irq/XYZ/smp_affinity_list
```

Configuring Block Device Staging

Set the block device staging settings for each iSCSI device or target as follows:

```
echo noop > /sys/block/sdd/queue/scheduler  
echo 2 > /sys/block/sdd/queue/nomerges  
echo 0 > /sys/block/sdd/queue/add_random  
echo 1 > /sys/block/sdd/queue/rq_affinity
```

9 iSCSI Configuration

This chapter provides the following iSCSI configuration information:

- [iSCSI Boot](#)
- [Configuring iSCSI Boot](#)
- [Configuring the DHCP Server to Support iSCSI Boot](#)
- [Configuring iSCSI Boot from SAN for RHEL 7.4](#)
- [iSCSI Offload in Windows Server](#)
- [iSCSI Offload in Linux Environments](#)
- [Differences from bnx2i](#)
- [Configuring qedi.ko](#)
- [Verifying iSCSI Interfaces in Linux](#)
- [Open-iSCSI and Boot from SAN Considerations](#)

NOTE

Some iSCSI features may not be fully enabled in the current release. For details, refer to [Appendix D Feature Constraints](#).

iSCSI Boot

QLogic 4xxxx Series gigabit Ethernet (GbE) adapters support iSCSI boot to enable network boot of operating systems to diskless systems. iSCSI boot allows a Windows, Linux, or VMware operating system to boot from an iSCSI target machine located remotely over a standard IP network.

For both Windows and Linux operating systems, iSCSI boot can be configured with **UEFI iSCSI HBA** (offload path with QLogic offload iSCSI driver). This option is set using Boot Protocol, under port-level configuration.

iSCSI Boot Setup

The iSCSI boot setup includes:

- [Selecting the Preferred iSCSI Boot Mode](#)
- [Configuring the iSCSI Target](#)
- [Configuring iSCSI Boot Parameters](#)

Selecting the Preferred iSCSI Boot Mode

Boot mode option is listed under **iSCSI Configuration** ([Figure 9-1](#)) of the adapter, and the setting is port specific. Refer to the OEM user manual for direction on accessing the device level configuration menu under UEFI HII.

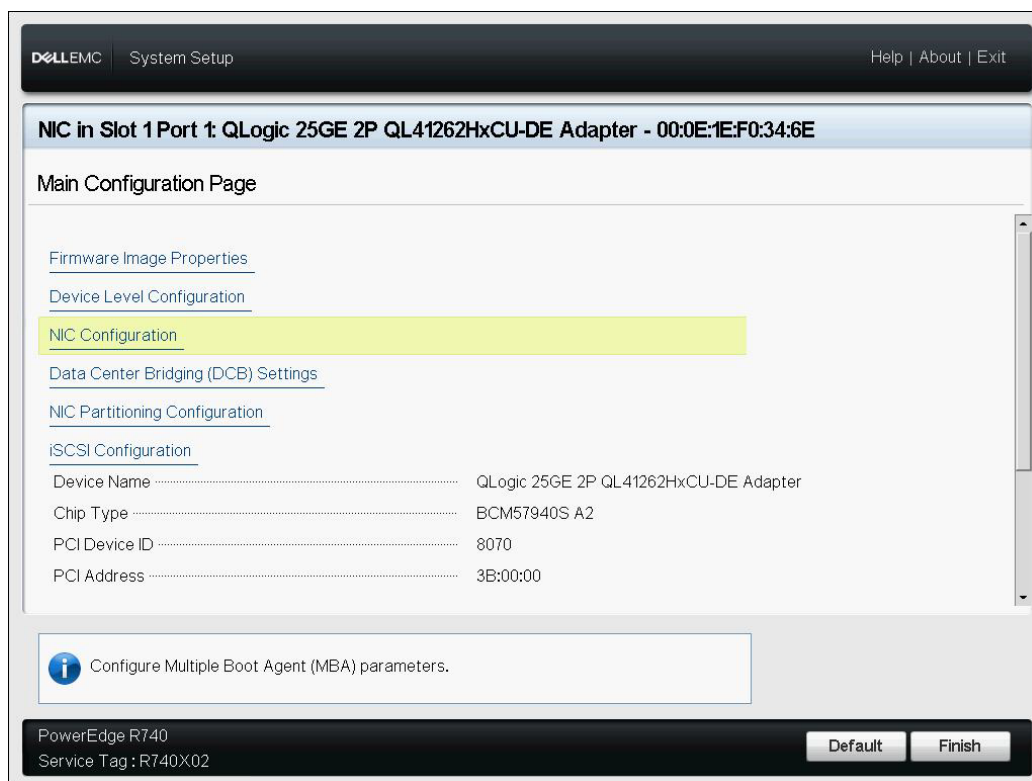


Figure 9-1. System Setup: NIC Configuration

NOTE

Boot from SAN boot is supported only in NPAR mode and is configured in UEFI, and not in legacy BIOS.

Configuring the iSCSI Target

Configuring the iSCSI target varies by target vendors. For information on configuring the iSCSI target, refer to the documentation provided by the vendor.

To configure the iSCSI target:

1. Select the appropriate procedure based on your iSCSI target, either:
 - ☐ Create an iSCSI target for targets such as SANBlaze® or IET®.
 - ☐ Create a vdisk or volume for targets such as EqualLogic® or EMC®.
2. Create a virtual disk.
3. Map the virtual disk to the iSCSI target created in [Step 1](#).
4. Associate an iSCSI initiator with the iSCSI target. Record the following information:
 - ☐ iSCSI target name
 - ☐ TCP port number
 - ☐ iSCSI Logical Unit Number (LUN)
 - ☐ initiator iSCSI qualified name (IQN)
 - ☐ CHAP authentication details
5. After configuring the iSCSI target, obtain the following:
 - ☐ Target IQN
 - ☐ Target IP address
 - ☐ Target TCP port number
 - ☐ Target LUN
 - ☐ Initiator IQN
 - ☐ CHAP ID and secret

Configuring iSCSI Boot Parameters

Configure the QLogic iSCSI boot software for either static or dynamic configuration. For configuration options available from the General Parameters window, see [Table 9-1](#), which lists parameters for both IPv4 and IPv6. Parameters specific to either IPv4 or IPv6 are noted.

NOTE

The availability of the IPv6 iSCSI boot is platform- and device-dependent.

Table 9-1. Configuration Options

Option	Description
TCP/IP parameters via DHCP	This option is specific to IPv4. Controls whether the iSCSI boot host software acquires the IP address information using DHCP (Enabled) or use a static IP configuration (Disabled).
iSCSI parameters via DHCP	Controls whether the iSCSI boot host software acquires its iSCSI target parameters using DHCP (Enabled) or through a static configuration (Disabled). The static information is entered on the iSCSI Initiator Parameters Configuration page.
CHAP Authentication	Controls whether the iSCSI boot host software uses CHAP authentication when connecting to the iSCSI target. If CHAP Authentication is enabled, configure the CHAP ID and CHAP Secret on the iSCSI Initiator Parameters Configuration page.
IP Version	This option is specific to IPv6. Toggles between IPv4 and IPv6. All IP settings are lost if you switch from one protocol version to another.
DHCP Request Timeout	Allows you to specify a maximum wait time in seconds for a DHCP request, and response to complete.
Target Login Timeout	Allows you to specify a maximum wait time in seconds for the initiator to complete target login.
DHCP Vendor ID	Controls how the iSCSI boot host software interprets the Vendor Class ID field used during DHCP. If the Vendor Class ID field in the DHCP offer packet matches the value in the field, the iSCSI boot host software looks into the DHCP Option 43 fields for the required iSCSI boot extensions. If DHCP is disabled, this value does not need to be set.

Adapter UEFI Boot Mode Configuration

To configure the boot mode:

1. Restart the system.
2. Access the System Utilities menu (Figure 9-2).

NOTE

SAN boot is supported in UEFI environment only. Make sure the system boot option is UEFI, and not legacy.

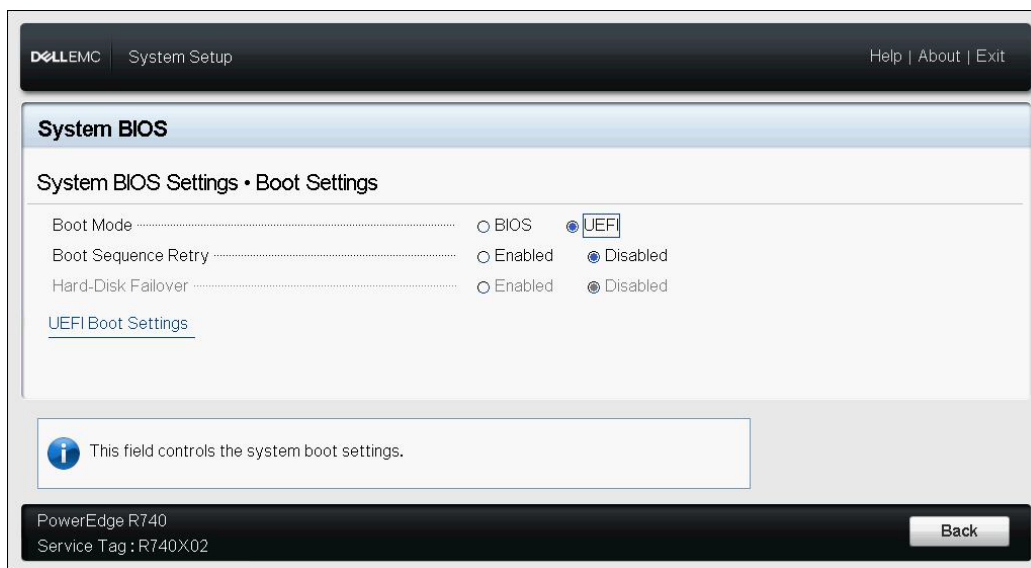


Figure 9-2. System Setup: Boot Settings

3. In System Setup, Device Settings, select the QLogic device ([Figure 9-3](#)). Refer to the OEM user guide on accessing the PCI device configuration menu.

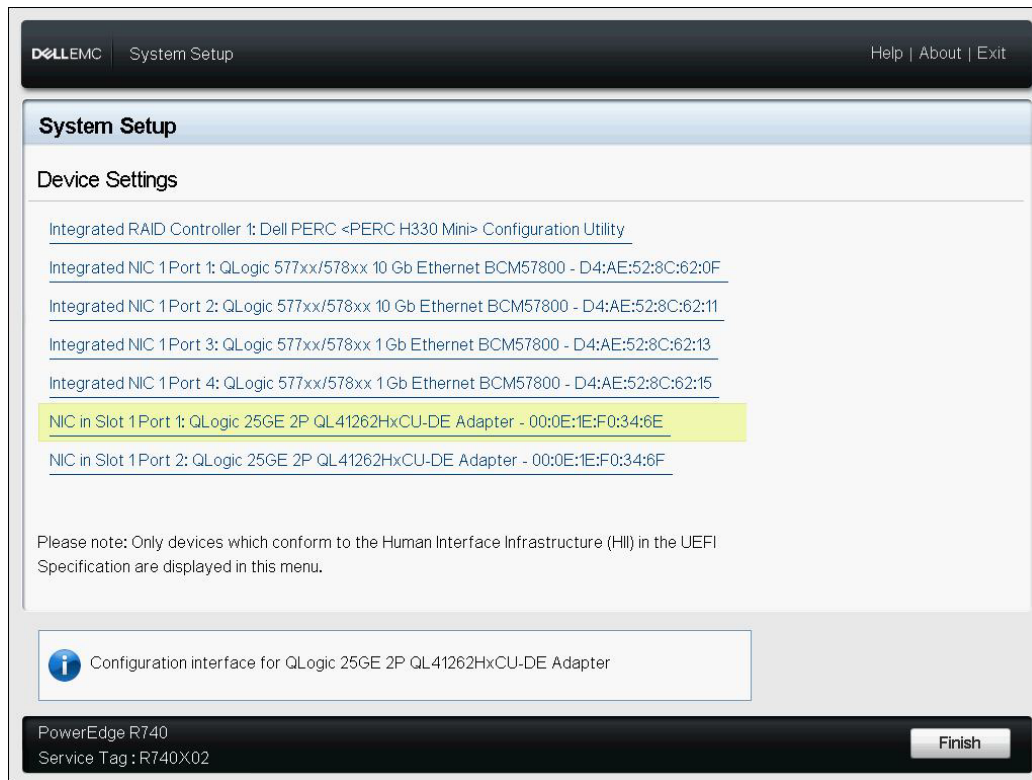


Figure 9-3. System Setup: Device Settings Configuration Utility

4. On the Main Configuration Page, select **NIC Configuration** (Figure 9-4), and then press ENTER.

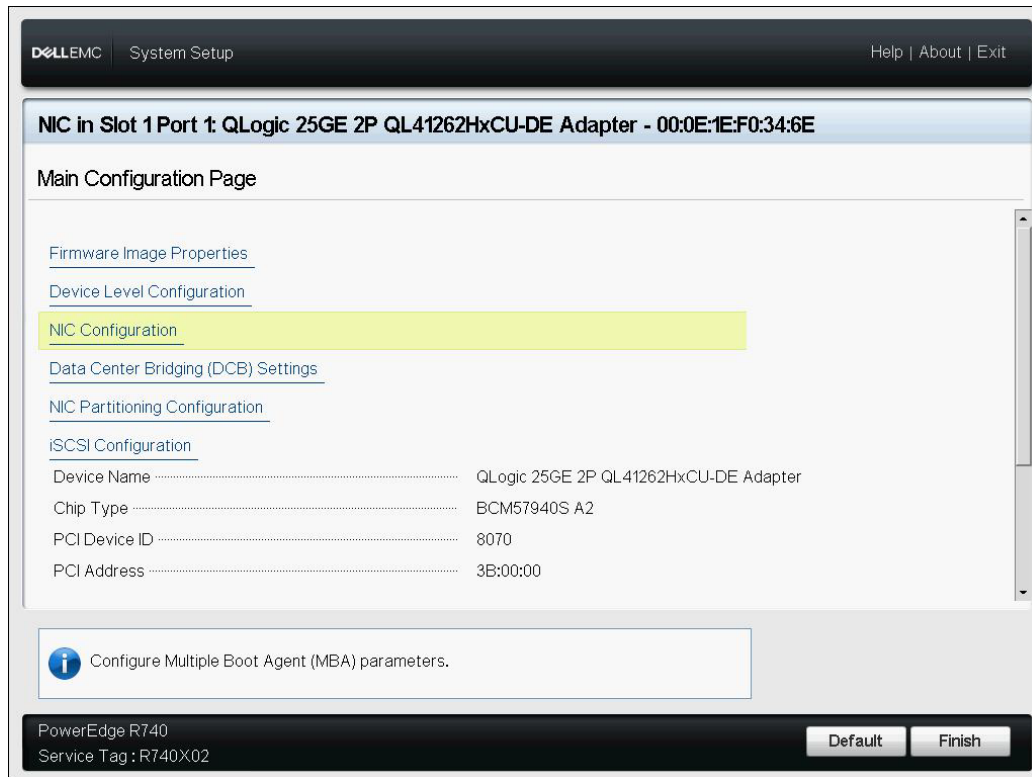


Figure 9-4. Selecting NIC Configuration

5. On the NIC Configuration page (Figure 9-5), select **Boot Protocol**, and then press ENTER to select **UEFI iSCSI HBA** (requires NPAR mode).

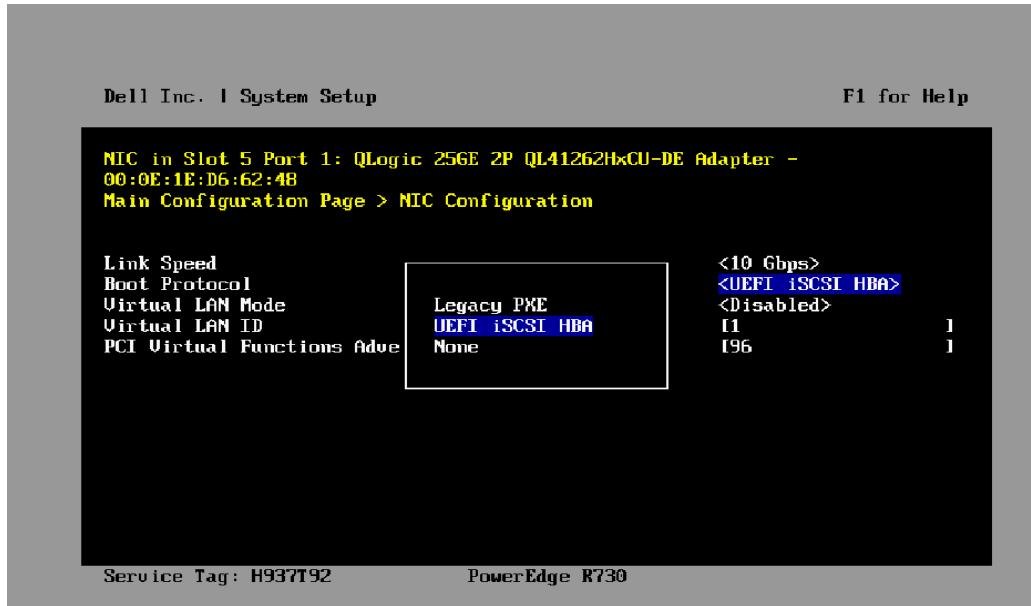


Figure 9-5. System Setup: NIC Configuration, Boot Protocol

6. Proceed with one of the following configuration options:
 - ☐ "Static iSCSI Boot Configuration" on page 115
 - ☐ "Dynamic iSCSI Boot Configuration" on page 122

Configuring iSCSI Boot

iSCSI boot configuration options include:

- [Static iSCSI Boot Configuration](#)
- [Dynamic iSCSI Boot Configuration](#)
- [Enabling CHAP Authentication](#)

Static iSCSI Boot Configuration

In a static configuration, you must enter data for the following:

- System's IP address
- System's initiator IQN
- Target parameters (obtained in [“Configuring the iSCSI Target”](#) on page 109)

For information on configuration options, see [Table 9-1](#) on page 110.

To configure the iSCSI boot parameters using static configuration:

1. In the Device HII **Main Configuration Page**, select **iSCSI Configuration** ([Figure 9-6](#)), and then press ENTER.

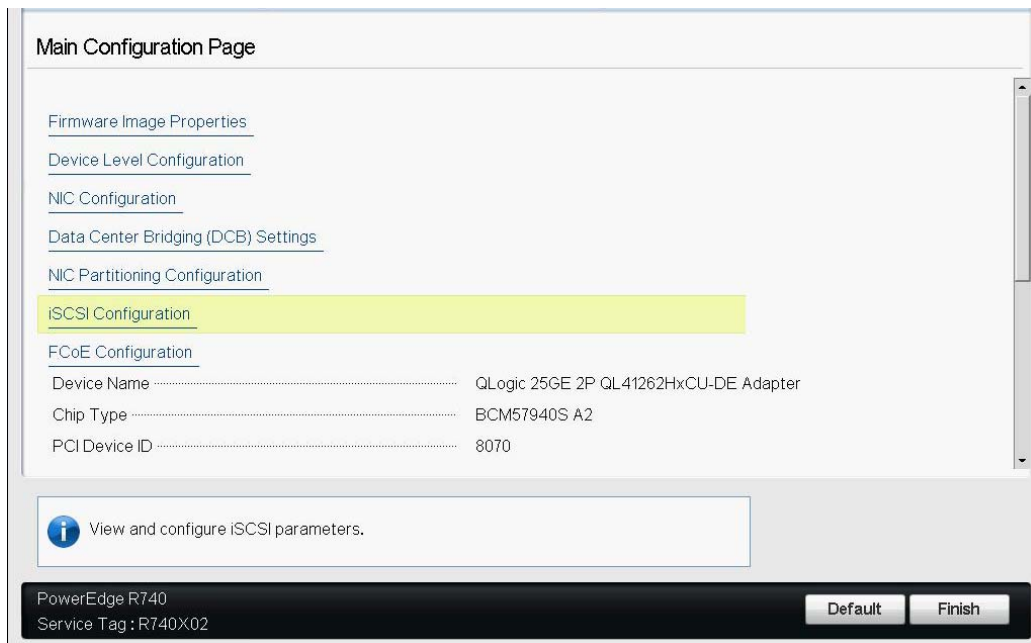


Figure 9-6. System Setup: iSCSI Configuration

2. On the iSCSI Configuration page, select **iSCSI General Parameters** (Figure 9-7), and then press ENTER.

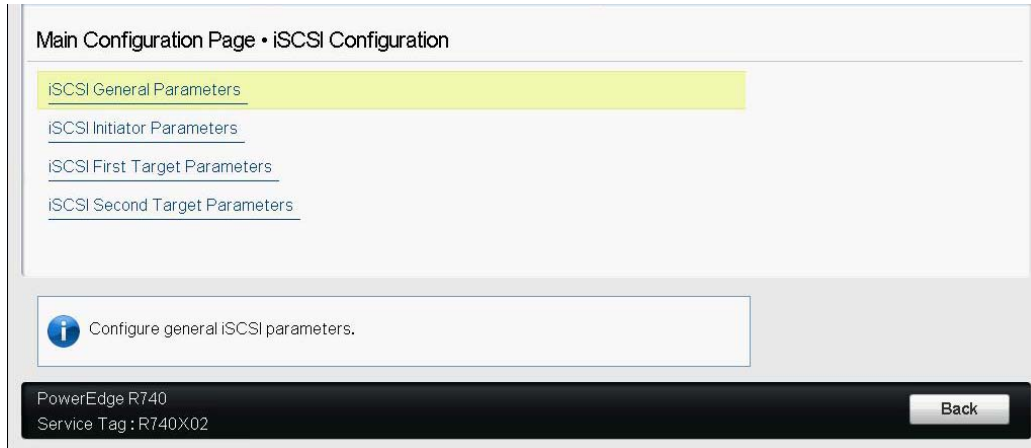


Figure 9-7. System Setup: Selecting General Parameters

3. On the iSCSI General Parameters page (Figure 9-8), press the UP ARROW and DOWN ARROW keys to select a parameter, and then press the ENTER key to select or input the following values:
 - ☐ **TCP/IP Parameters via DHCP:** Disabled
 - ☐ **iSCSI Parameters via DHCP:** Disabled
 - ☐ **CHAP Authentication:** As required
 - ☐ **IP Version:** As required (IPv4 or IPv6)
 - ☐ **CHAP Mutual Authentication:** As required
 - ☐ **DHCP Vendor ID:** Not applicable for static configuration
 - ☐ **HBA Boot Mode:** Enabled
 - ☐ **Virtual LAN ID:** Default value or as required
 - ☐ **Virtual LAN Mode:** Disabled

The screenshot shows the 'System Setup' utility for a Dell EMC PowerEdge R740. The title bar includes the Dell EMC logo, 'System Setup', and links for 'Help | About | Exit'. Below the title bar, a blue header identifies the network interface: 'NIC in Slot 1 Port 1: QLogic 25GE 2P QL41262HxCU-DE Adapter - 00:0E:1E:F0:34:6E'. The main content area is titled 'Main Configuration Page • iSCSI Configuration • iSCSI General Parameters'. It contains several configuration options, each with a radio button: 'TCP/IP Parameters via DHCP' (Enabled), 'iSCSI Parameters via DHCP' (Disabled), 'CHAP Authentication' (Disabled), 'IP Version' (IPv4), 'CHAP Mutual Authentication' (Disabled), 'DHCP Vendor ID' (QLGC ISAN), 'HBA Boot Mode' (Enabled), 'Virtual LAN ID' (0), and 'Virtual LAN Mode' (Disabled). A blue information icon with a text box explains that the DHCP Vendor ID is specific to IPv4 and controls the source of the initiator IP address. The bottom of the screen shows 'PowerEdge R740' and 'Service Tag : R740X02', with a 'Back' button on the right.

Figure 9-8. System Setup: iSCSI General Parameters

4. Return to the iSCSI Configuration page, and then press the ESC key.
5. Select **iSCSI Initiator Parameters** (Figure 9-9), and then press ENTER.

This screenshot shows the 'System Setup' utility at the 'iSCSI Configuration' screen. The title bar and network interface information are identical to Figure 9-8. The main content area is titled 'Main Configuration Page • iSCSI Configuration'. It features a list of four menu items: 'iSCSI General Parameters', 'iSCSI Initiator Parameters' (which is highlighted with a yellow background), 'iSCSI First Target Parameters', and 'iSCSI Second Target Parameters'. A blue information icon with a text box explains that this screen is for configuring iSCSI initiator parameters such as IP Address and Subnet Mask. The bottom of the screen shows 'PowerEdge R740' and 'Service Tag : R740X02', with a 'Back' button on the right.

Figure 9-9. System Setup: Selecting iSCSI Initiator Parameters

6. On the iSCSI Initiator Parameters page ([Figure 9-10](#)), select the following parameters, and then type a value for each:
- ☐ **IPv4* Address**
 - ☐ **Subnet Mask**
 - ☐ **IPv4* Default Gateway**
 - ☐ **IPv4* Primary DNS**
 - ☐ **IPv4* Secondary DNS**
 - ☐ **iSCSI Name**. Corresponds to the iSCSI initiator name to be used by the client system.
 - ☐ **CHAP ID**
 - ☐ **CHAP Secret**

NOTE

Note the following for the preceding items with asterisks (*):

- The label will change to **IPv6** or **IPv4** (default) based on the IP version set on the iSCSI General Parameters page ([Figure 9-8 on page 117](#)).
 - Carefully enter the IP address. There is no error-checking performed against the IP address to check for duplicates, incorrect segment, or network assignment.
-

The screenshot shows the 'System Setup' utility with the title bar 'DELL EMC System Setup' and links for 'Help | About | Exit'. The main header indicates the current configuration is for 'NIC in Slot 1 Port 1: QLogic 25GE 2P QL41262HxCU-DE Adapter - 00:0E:1E:F0:34:6E'. The page title is 'Main Configuration Page • iSCSI Configuration • iSCSI Initiator Parameters'. It contains a table of fields for configuration: IPv4 Address, Subnet Mask, IPv4 Default Gateway, IPv4 Primary DNS, IPv4 Secondary DNS, iSCSI Name (pre-filled with 'iqn.1994-02.com.qlogic.iscsi:fastlinqboot'), CHAP ID, and CHAP Secret. Below the table is an information box stating 'Specify the iSCSI Qualified Name (IQN) of the initiator.' The footer shows 'PowerEdge R740' and 'Service Tag : R740X02' with a 'Back' button.

IPv4 Address	0.0.0.0
Subnet Mask	0.0.0.0
IPv4 Default Gateway	0.0.0.0
IPv4 Primary DNS	0.0.0.0
IPv4 Secondary DNS	0.0.0.0
iSCSI Name	iqn.1994-02.com.qlogic.iscsi:fastlinqboot
CHAP ID	
CHAP Secret	

Figure 9-10. System Setup: iSCSI Initiator Parameters

7. Return to the iSCSI Configuration page, and then press ESC.
8. Select **iSCSI First Target Parameters** (Figure 9-11), and then press ENTER.

The screenshot shows the 'System Setup' utility with the title bar 'DELL EMC System Setup' and links for 'Help | About | Exit'. The main header indicates the current configuration is for 'NIC in Slot 1 Port 1: QLogic 25GE 2P QL41262HxCU-DE Adapter - 00:0E:1E:F0:34:6E'. The page title is 'Main Configuration Page • iSCSI Configuration'. It lists five menu items: 'iSCSI General Parameters', 'iSCSI Initiator Parameters', 'iSCSI First Target Parameters' (highlighted in yellow), 'iSCSI Second Target Parameters', and 'iSCSI Third Target Parameters'. Below the list is an information box stating 'Enable connection and configure communication parameters for the first iSCSI target.' The footer shows 'PowerEdge R740' and 'Service Tag : R740X02' with a 'Back' button.

Figure 9-11. System Setup: Selecting iSCSI First Target Parameters

9. On the iSCSI First Target Parameters page, set the **Connect** option to **Enabled** to the iSCSI target.
10. Type values for the following parameters for the iSCSI target, and then press ENTER:
 - ☐ IPv4* Address
 - ☐ TCP Port
 - ☐ Boot LUN
 - ☐ iSCSI Name
 - ☐ CHAP ID
 - ☐ CHAP Secret

NOTE

For the preceding parameters with an asterisk (*), the label will change to **IPv6** or **IPv4** (default) based on IP version set on the iSCSI General Parameters page, as shown in [Figure 9-12](#).

The screenshot shows the 'iSCSI First Target Parameters' page in the Dell EMC System Setup utility. The page title is 'NIC in Slot 1 Port 1: QLogic 25GE 2P QL41262HxCU-DE Adapter - 00:0E:1E:F0:34:6E'. Below the title, the breadcrumb path is 'Main Configuration Page • iSCSI Configuration • iSCSI First Target Parameters'. The 'Connect' option is set to 'Enabled' (radio button selected). The 'IPv4 Address' field contains '192.168.100.9', 'TCP Port' contains '3260', 'Boot LUN' contains '1', and 'iSCSI Name' is empty. 'CHAP ID' and 'CHAP Secret' fields are also empty. A blue information icon with a text box below it says 'Specify the iSCSI Qualified Name (IQN) of the first iSCSI storage target.' The bottom of the screen shows 'PowerEdge R740' and 'Service Tag : R740X02' on the left, and a 'Back' button on the right.

Figure 9-12. System Setup: iSCSI First Target Parameters

11. Return to the iSCSI Boot Configuration page, and then press ESC.

12. If you want configure a second iSCSI target device, select **iSCSI Second Target Parameters** (Figure 9-13), and enter the parameter values as you did in Step 10. Otherwise, proceed to Step 13.

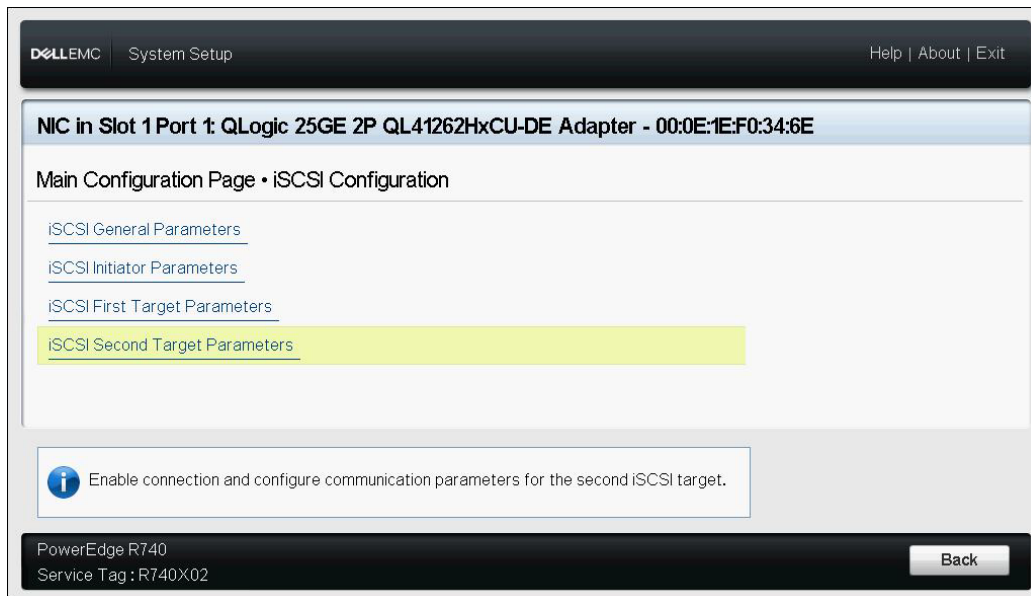


Figure 9-13. System Setup: iSCSI Second Target Parameters

13. Press ESC once, and a second time to exit.

14. Click **Yes** to save changes, or follow the OEM guidelines to save the device-level configuration. For example, click **Yes** to confirm setting change (Figure 9-14).

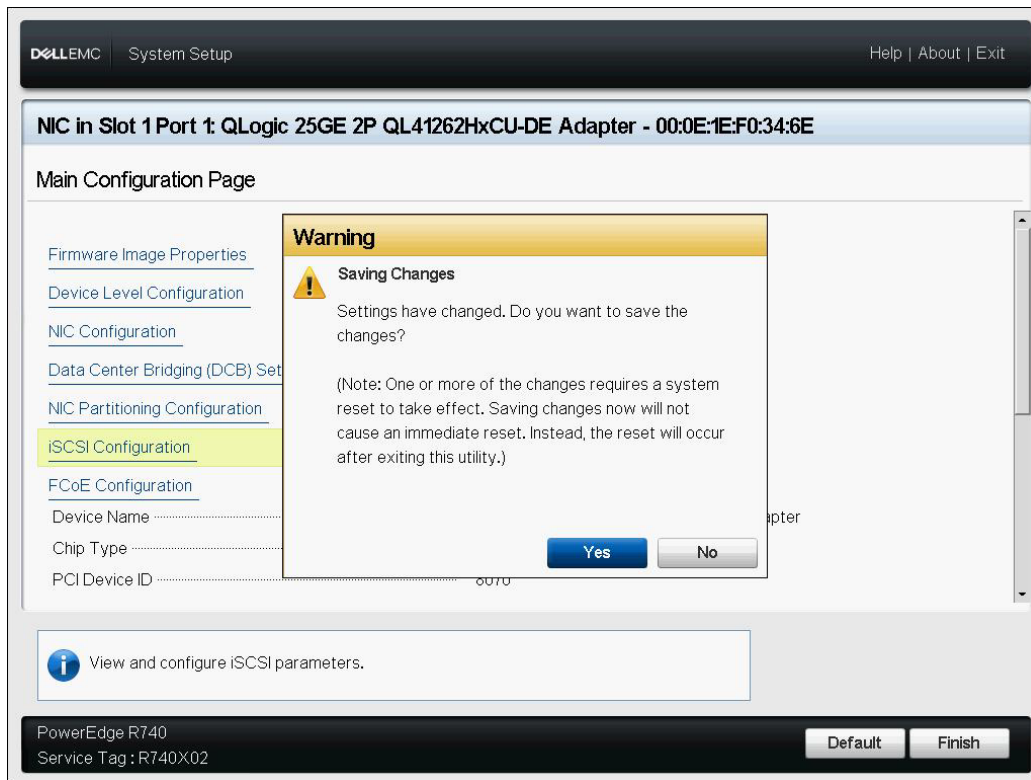


Figure 9-14. System Setup: Saving iSCSI Changes

15. After all changes have been made, reboot the system to apply the changes to the adapter's running configuration.

Dynamic iSCSI Boot Configuration

In a dynamic configuration, ensure that the system's IP address and target (or initiator) information are provided by a DHCP server (see IPv4 and IPv6 configurations in ["Configuring the DHCP Server to Support iSCSI Boot" on page 125](#)).

Any settings on the following parameters are ignored and do not need to be cleared (with the exception of the initiator iSCSI name for IPv4, CHAP ID, and CHAP secret for IPv6):

- Initiator Parameters
- First Target Parameters or Second Target Parameters

For information on configuration options, see [Table 9-1 on page 110](#).

NOTE

When using a DHCP server, the DNS server entries are overwritten by the values provided by the DHCP server. This override occurs even if the locally provided values are valid and the DHCP server provides no DNS server information. When the DHCP server provides no DNS server information, both the primary and secondary DNS server values are set to 0.0.0.0. When the Windows OS takes over, the Microsoft iSCSI initiator retrieves the iSCSI initiator parameters and statically configures the appropriate registries. It will overwrite whatever is configured. Because the DHCP daemon runs in the Windows environment as a user process, all TCP/IP parameters must be statically configured before the stack comes up in the iSCSI boot environment.

If DHCP Option 17 is used, the target information is provided by the DHCP server and the initiator iSCSI name is retrieved from the value programmed from the Initiator Parameters window. If no value was selected, the controller defaults to the following name:

`iqn.1995-05.com.qlogic.<11.22.33.44.55.66>.iscsiboot`

The string 11.22.33.44.55.66 corresponds to the controller's MAC address. If DHCP Option 43 (IPv4 only) is used, any settings on the following windows are ignored and do not need to be cleared:

- Initiator Parameters
- First Target Parameters, or Second Target Parameters

To configure the iSCSI boot parameters using dynamic configuration:

- On the iSCSI General Parameters page, set the following options, as shown in [Figure 9-15](#):
 - ☐ **TCP/IP Parameters via DHCP:** Enabled
 - ☐ **iSCSI Parameters via DHCP:** Enabled
 - ☐ **CHAP Authentication:** As required
 - ☐ **IP Version:** As required (IPv4 or IPv6)
 - ☐ **CHAP Mutual Authentication:** As required
 - ☐ **DHCP Vendor ID:** As required
 - ☐ **HBA Boot Mode:** Disabled
 - ☐ **Virtual LAN ID:** As required
 - ☐ **Virtual LAN Boot Mode:** Enabled

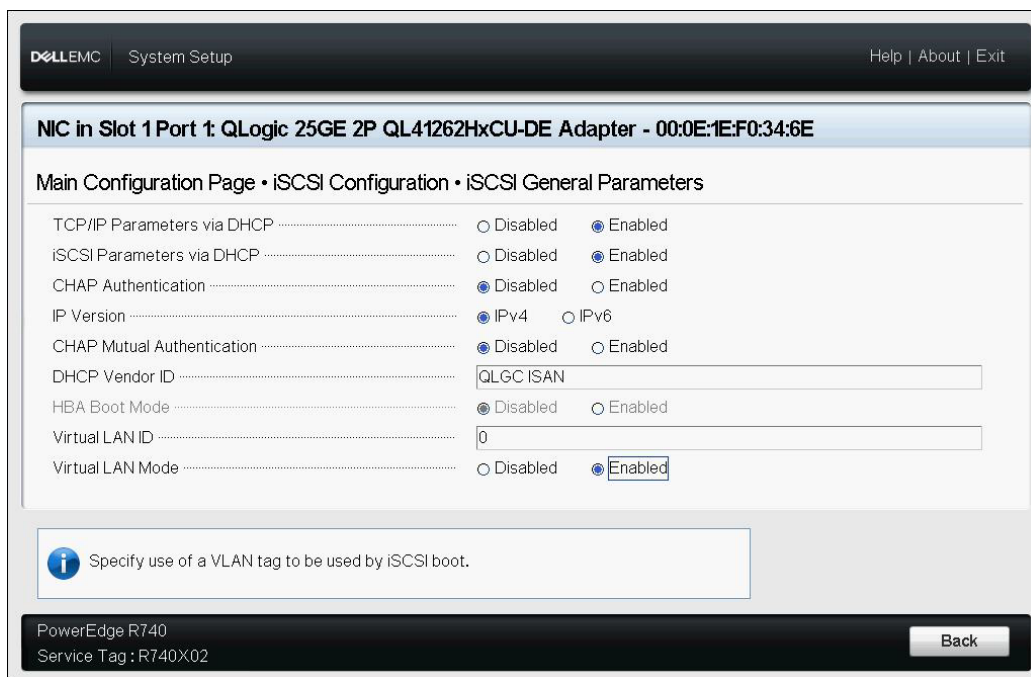


Figure 9-15. System Setup: iSCSI General Parameters

Enabling CHAP Authentication

Ensure that the CHAP authentication is enabled on the target.

To enable CHAP authentication:

1. Go to the iSCSI General Parameters page.
2. Set **CHAP Authentication** to **Enabled**.
3. In the Initiator Parameters window, type values for the following:
 - ☐ **CHAP ID** (up to 255 characters)
 - ☐ **CHAP Secret** (if authentication is required; must be 12 to 16 characters in length)
4. Press ESC to return to the iSCSI Boot configuration page.
5. On the iSCSI Boot configuration page, select **iSCSI First Target Parameters**.
6. In the iSCSI First Target Parameters window, type values used when configuring the iSCSI target:
 - ☐ **CHAP ID** (optional if two-way CHAP)
 - ☐ **CHAP Secret** (optional if two-way CHAP; must be 12 to 16 characters in length or longer)

7. Press ESC to return to the iSCSI Boot configuration page.
8. Press ESC, and then select confirm **Save Configuration**.

Configuring the DHCP Server to Support iSCSI Boot

The DHCP server is an optional component, and is only necessary if you will be doing a dynamic iSCSI boot configuration setup (see [“Dynamic iSCSI Boot Configuration” on page 122](#)).

Configuring the DHCP server to support iSCSI boot differs for IPv4 and IPv6:

- [DHCP iSCSI Boot Configurations for IPv4](#)
- [Configuring DHCP iSCSI Boot for IPv6](#)

DHCP iSCSI Boot Configurations for IPv4

DHCP includes a several options that provide configuration information to the DHCP client. For iSCSI boot, QLogic adapters support the following DHCP configurations:

- [DHCP Option 17, Root Path](#)
- [DHCP Option 43, Vendor-specific Information](#)

DHCP Option 17, Root Path

Option 17 is used to pass the iSCSI target information to the iSCSI client.

The format of the root path, as defined in IETF RFC 4173, is:

"iscsi:"<servername>":"<protocol>":"<port>":"<LUN>":"<targetname>"

[Table 9-2](#) lists the DHCP Option 17 parameters.

Table 9-2. DHCP Option 17 Parameter Definitions

Parameter	Definition
"iscsi:"	A literal string
<servername>	IP address or fully qualified domain name (FQDN) of the iSCSI target
":"	Separator
<protocol>	IP protocol used to access the iSCSI target. Because only TCP is currently supported, the protocol is 6.
<port>	Port number associated with the protocol. The standard port number for iSCSI is 3260.

Table 9-2. DHCP Option 17 Parameter Definitions (Continued)

Parameter	Definition
<LUN>	Logical unit number to use on the iSCSI target. The value of the LUN must be represented in hexadecimal format. A LUN with an ID OF 64 must be configured as 40 within the Option 17 parameter on the DHCP server.
<targetname>	Target name in either IQN or EUI format. For details on both IQN and EUI formats, refer to RFC 3720. An example IQN name is <code>iqn.1995-05.com.QLogic:iscsi-target</code> .

DHCP Option 43, Vendor-specific Information

DHCP Option 43 (vendor-specific information) provides more configuration options to the iSCSI client than does DHCP Option 17. In this configuration, three additional sub-options are provided that assign the initiator IQN to the iSCSI boot client, along with two iSCSI target IQNs that can be used for booting. The format for the iSCSI target IQN is the same as that of DHCP Option 17, while the iSCSI initiator IQN is simply the initiator's IQN.

NOTE

DHCP Option 43 is supported on IPv4 only.

Table 9-3 lists the DHCP Option 43 sub-options.

Table 9-3. DHCP Option 43 Sub-option Definitions

Sub-option	Definition
201	First iSCSI target information in the standard root path format: "iscsi:"<servername>":"<protocol>":"<port>":"<LUN>": "<targetname>"
202	Second iSCSI target information in the standard root path format: "iscsi:"<servername>":"<protocol>":"<port>":"<LUN>": "<targetname>"
203	iSCSI initiator IQN

Using DHCP Option 43 requires more configuration than DHCP Option 17, but it provides a richer environment and more configuration options. You should use DHCP Option 43 when performing dynamic iSCSI boot configuration.

Configuring the DHCP Server

Configure the DHCP server to support either Option 16, 17, 43.

NOTE

The format of DHCPv6 Option 16 and Option 17 are fully defined in RFC 3315.

If you use Option 43, you must also configure Option 60. The value of Option 60 must match the DHCP Vendor ID value, QLGC ISAN, as shown in **iSCSI General Parameters** of the iSCSI Boot Configuration page.

Configuring DHCP iSCSI Boot for IPv6

The DHCPv6 server can provide several options, including stateless or stateful IP configuration, as well as information for the DHCPv6 client. For iSCSI boot, QLogic adapters support the following DHCP configurations:

- [DHCPv6 Option 16, Vendor Class Option](#)
- [DHCPv6 Option 17, Vendor-Specific Information](#)

NOTE

The DHCPv6 standard Root Path option is not yet available. QLogic suggests using Option 16 or Option 17 for dynamic iSCSI boot IPv6 support.

DHCPv6 Option 16, Vendor Class Option

DHCPv6 Option 16 (vendor class option) must be present and must contain a string that matches your configured DHCP Vendor ID parameter. The DHCP Vendor ID value is QLGC ISAN, as shown in the **General Parameters** of the iSCSI Boot Configuration menu.

The content of Option 16 should be <2-byte length> <DHCP Vendor ID>.

DHCPv6 Option 17, Vendor-Specific Information

DHCPv6 Option 17 (vendor-specific information) provides more configuration options to the iSCSI client. In this configuration, three additional sub-options are provided that assign the initiator IQN to the iSCSI boot client, along with two iSCSI target IQNs that can be used for booting.

Table 9-4 lists the DHCP Option 17 sub-options.

Table 9-4. DHCP Option 17 Sub-option Definitions

Sub-option	Definition
201	First iSCSI target information in the standard root path format: "iscsi:"[<servername>]": "<protocol>": "<port>": "<LUN> " : "<targetname>"
202	Second iSCSI target information in the standard root path format: "iscsi:"[<servername>]": "<protocol>": "<port>": "<LUN> " : "<targetname>"
203	iSCSI initiator IQN
<u>Table Notes:</u> Brackets [] are required for the IPv6 addresses.	

The content of Option 17 should be:

<2-byte Option Number 201|202|203> <2-byte length> <data>

Configuring VLANs for iSCSI Boot

iSCSI traffic on the network may be isolated in a Layer 2 VLAN to segregate it from general traffic. If this is the case, make the iSCSI interface on the adapter a member of that VLAN.

To configure VLAN for iSCSI boot:

1. Go to the **iSCSI Configuration Page** for the port.
2. Select **iSCSI General Parameters**.

3. Select **VLAN ID** to enter and set the VLAN value, as shown in [Figure 9-16](#).

Main Configuration Page • iSCSI Configuration • iSCSI General Parameters

TCP/IP Parameters via DHCP ☐ Disabled ☒ Enabled

iSCSI Parameters via DHCP ☐ Disabled ☒ Enabled

CHAP Authentication ☒ Disabled ☐ Enabled

IP Version ☒ IPv4 ☐ IPv6

CHAP Mutual Authentication ☒ Disabled ☐ Enabled

DHCP Vendor ID QLGC ISAN

HBA Boot Mode ☒ Disabled ☐ Enabled

Virtual LAN ID 0

Virtual LAN Mode ☐ Disabled ☒ Enabled

i Specify use of a VLAN tag to be used by iSCSI boot.

PowerEdge R740
Service Tag : R740X02

Back

Figure 9-16. System Setup: iSCSI General Parameters, VLAN ID

Configuring iSCSI Boot from SAN for RHEL 7.4

To install RHEL 7.4 and later:

1. Boot from the RHEL 7.x installation media with the iSCSI target already connected in UEFI.

Install Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7.x

Test this media & install Red Hat Enterprise 7.x

Troubleshooting -->

Use the UP and DOWN keys to change the selection

Press 'e' to edit the selected item or 'c' for a command prompt

2. To install an out-of-box driver, type `e`. Otherwise, proceed to [Step 7](#).
3. Select the kernel line, and then type `e`.
4. Issue the following command, and then press ENTER.

```
linux dd modprobe.blacklist=qed modprobe.blacklist=qede  
modprobe.blacklist=qedr modprobe.blacklist=qedi  
modprobe.blacklist=qedf
```

You can use the `inst.dd` option instead of `linux dd`.

5. The installation process prompts you to install the out-of-box driver as shown in the [Figure 9-17](#) example.

```
Starting Driver Update Disk UI on tty1...
[ OK ] Started Show Plymouth Boot Screen.
[ OK ] Reached target Paths.
[ OK ] Reached target Basic System.
[ OK ] Started Device-Mapper Multipath Device Controller.
Starting Open-iSCSI...
[ OK ] Started Open-iSCSI.
Starting dracut initqueue hook...
[ OK ] Created slice system-driverxx2updates.slice.
Starting Driver Update Disk UI on tty1...
DD: starting interactive mode

(Page 1 of 1) Driver disk device selection
  /DEVICE  TYPE  LABEL  UUID
1) sda1    ntfs             1A90FE4090FE2245
2) sda2    vfat             A6FF-80A4
3) sda4    ntfs             7490015F900128E6
4) sr0     iso9660           2017-07-11-01-39-24-00
# to select, 'r'-refresh, or 'c'-continue: r

(Page 1 of 1) Driver disk device selection
  /DEVICE  TYPE  LABEL  UUID
1) sda1    ntfs    Recovery  1A90FE4090FE2245
2) sda2    vfat             A6FF-80A4
3) sda4    ntfs             7490015F900128E6
4) sr0     iso9660  CDROM      2017-07-11-13-08-37-00
# to select, 'r'-refresh, or 'c'-continue: 4
DD: Examining /dev/sr0
mount: /dev/sr0 is write-protected, mounting read-only

(Page 1 of 1) Select drivers to install
1) [ ] /media/DD-1/rpms/x86_64/kmod-qlgc-fastlinq-8.22.0.0-1.rhel7u4.x86_64.rpm
# to toggle selection, or 'c'-continue: 1

(Page 1 of 1) Select drivers to install
1) [x] /media/DD-1/rpms/x86_64/kmod-qlgc-fastlinq-8.22.0.0-1.rhel7u4.x86_64.rpm
# to toggle selection, or 'c'-continue: c
DD: Extracting: kmod-qlgc-fastlinq

(Page 1 of 1) Driver disk device selection
  /DEVICE  TYPE  LABEL  UUID
1) sda1    ntfs    Recovery  1A90FE4090FE2245
2) sda2    vfat             A6FF-80A4
3) sda4    ntfs             7490015F900128E6
4) sr0     iso9660  CDROM      2017-07-11-13-08-37-00
# to select, 'r'-refresh, or 'c'-continue: 
```

Figure 9-17. Prompt for Out-of-Box Installation

6. If required for your setup, load the FastLinQ driver update disk when prompted for additional driver disks. Otherwise, type **c** if you have no other driver update disks to install.
7. Continue with the installation. You can skip the media test. Click **Next** to continue with the installation.

8. In the Configuration window ([Figure 9-18](#)), select the language to use during the installation process, and then click **Continue**.

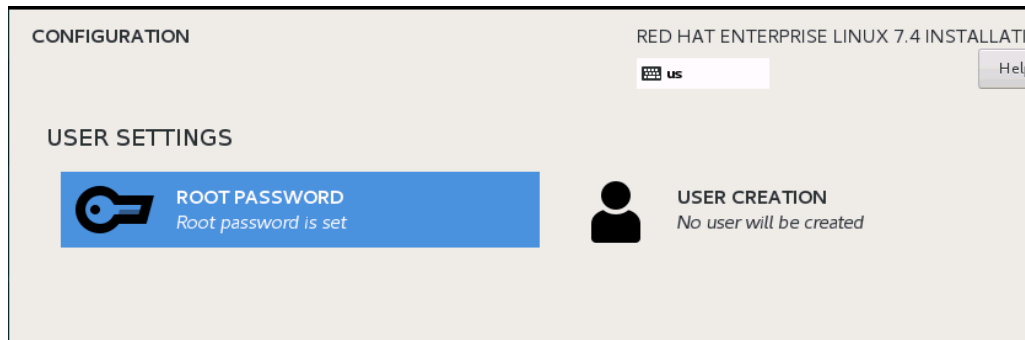


Figure 9-18. Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7.4 Configuration

9. In the Installation Summary window, click **Installation Destination**. The disk label is *sda*, indicating a single-path installation. If you configured multipath, the disk has a device mapper label.
10. In the **Specialized & Network Disks** section, select the iSCSI LUN.
11. Type the root user's password, and then click **Next** to complete the installation.
12. During the first boot, add the following kernel command line to fall into shell.

```
rd.iscsi.firmware rd.break=pre-pivot rd.driver.pre=qed,qede,qedr,qedf,qedi  
selinux=0
```

13. Issue the following commands:

```
# umount /sysroot/boot/efi  
# umount /sysroot/boot/  
# umount /sysroot/home/  
# umount /sysroot  
# mount /dev/mapper/rhel-root /sysroot/
```
14. Edit the `/sysroot/usr/libexec/iscsi-mark-root-nodes` file and locate the following statement:

```
if [ "$transport" = bnx2i ]; then
```

Change the statement to:

```
if [ "$transport" = bnx2i ] || [ "$transport" = qedi ]; then
```
15. Unmount file system by issuing the following command:

```
# umount /sysroot
```


16. Reboot the server, and then add the following parameters in the command line:

`rd.iscsi.firmware`
`rd.driver.pre=qed, qedi (to load all drivers pre=qed, qedi, qedi, qedf)`
`selinux=0`
17. After a successful system boot, edit the
`/etc/modprobe.d/anaconda-blacklist.conf` file to remove the blacklist entry for the selected driver.
18. Rebuild the ramdisk and reboot.

iSCSI Offload in Windows Server

iSCSI offload is a technology that offloads iSCSI protocol processing overhead from host processors to the iSCSI HBA. iSCSI offload increases network performance and throughput while helping to optimize server processor use. This section covers how to configure the Windows iSCSI offload feature for the QLogic 41xxx Series Adapters.

With the proper iSCSI offload licensing, you can configure your iSCSI-capable 41xxx Series Adapter to offload iSCSI processing from the host processor. The following sections describe how to enable the system to take advantage of QLogic's iSCSI offload feature:

- [Installing QLogic Drivers](#)
- [Installing the Microsoft iSCSI Initiator](#)
- [Configuring Microsoft Initiator to Use QLogic's iSCSI Offload](#)
- [iSCSI Offload FAQs](#)
- [Windows Server 2012 R2 and 2016 iSCSI Boot Installation](#)
- [iSCSI Crash Dump](#)

Installing QLogic Drivers

Install the Windows drivers as described in [“Installing Windows Driver Software” on page 17](#).

Installing the Microsoft iSCSI Initiator

Launch the Microsoft iSCSI initiator applet. At the first launch, the system prompts for an automatic service start. Confirm the selection for the applet to launch.

Configuring Microsoft Initiator to Use QLogic's iSCSI Offload

After the IP address is configured for the iSCSI adapter, you must use Microsoft Initiator to configure and add a connection to the iSCSI target using the QLogic iSCSI adapter. For more details on Microsoft Initiator, see the Microsoft user guide.

To configure the Microsoft Initiator:

1. Open Microsoft Initiator.
2. To configure the initiator IQN name according to your setup, follow these steps:
 - a. On the iSCSI Initiator Properties, click the **Configuration** tab.
 - b. On the Configuration page ([Figure 9-19](#)), click **Change** to modify the initiator name.

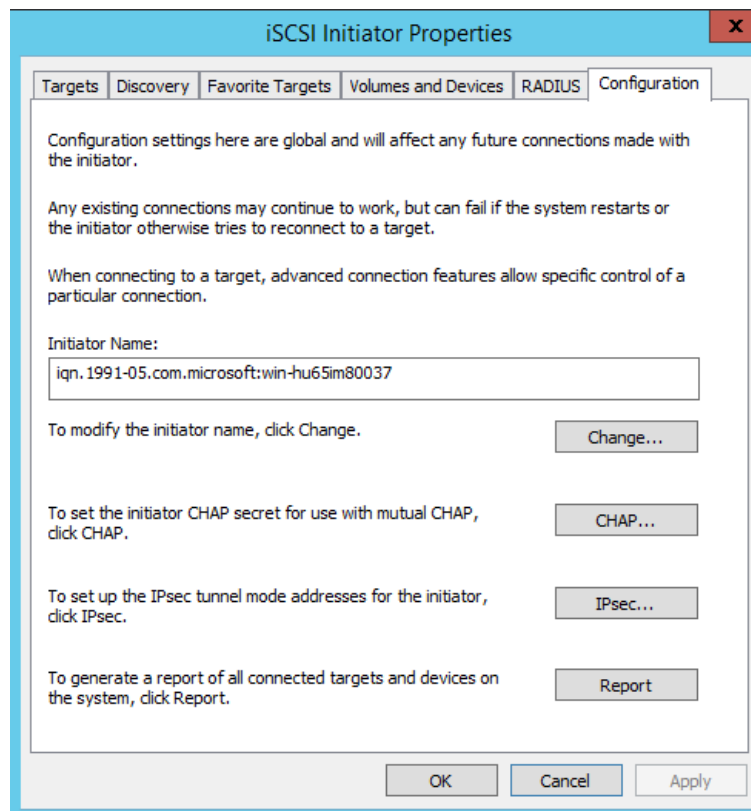


Figure 9-19. iSCSI Initiator Properties, Configuration Page

- c. In the iSCSI Initiator Name dialog box, type the new initiator IQN name, and then click **OK**. (Figure 9-20)

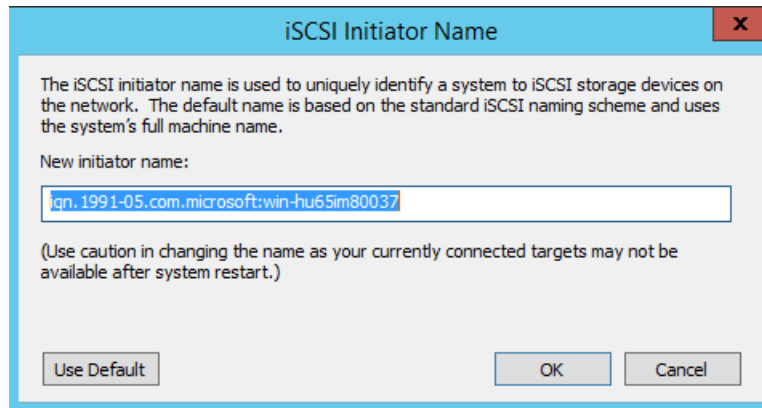


Figure 9-20. iSCSI Initiator Node Name Change

3. On the iSCSI Initiator Properties, click the **Discovery** tab.

4. On the Discovery page (Figure 9-21) under **Target portals**, click **Discover Portal**.

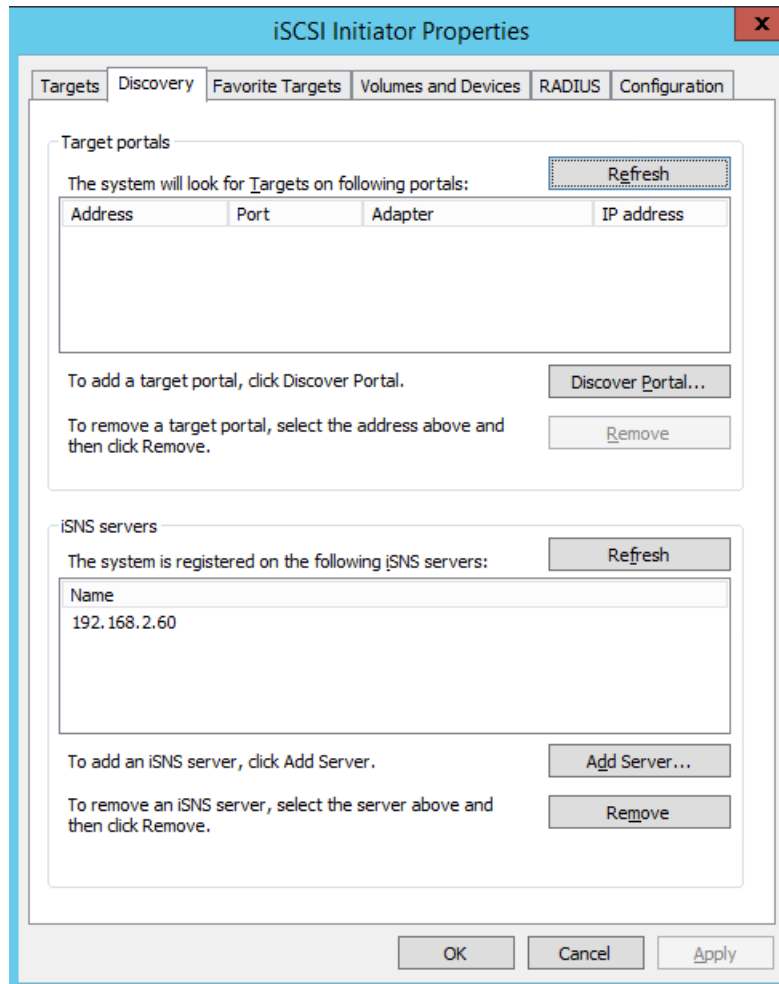


Figure 9-21. iSCSI Initiator—Discover Target Portal

5. In the Discover Target Portal dialog box (Figure 9-22):
 - a. In the **IP address or DNS name** box, type the IP address of the target.
 - b. Click **Advanced**.

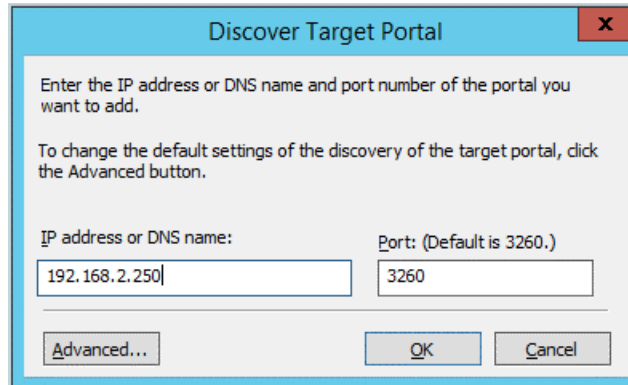


Figure 9-22. Target Portal IP Address

6. In the Advanced Settings dialog box (Figure 9-23), complete the following under **Connect using**:
 - a. For **Local adapter**, select the **QLogic <name or model> Adapter**.
 - b. For **Initiator IP**, select the adapter IP address.

- c. Click **OK**.

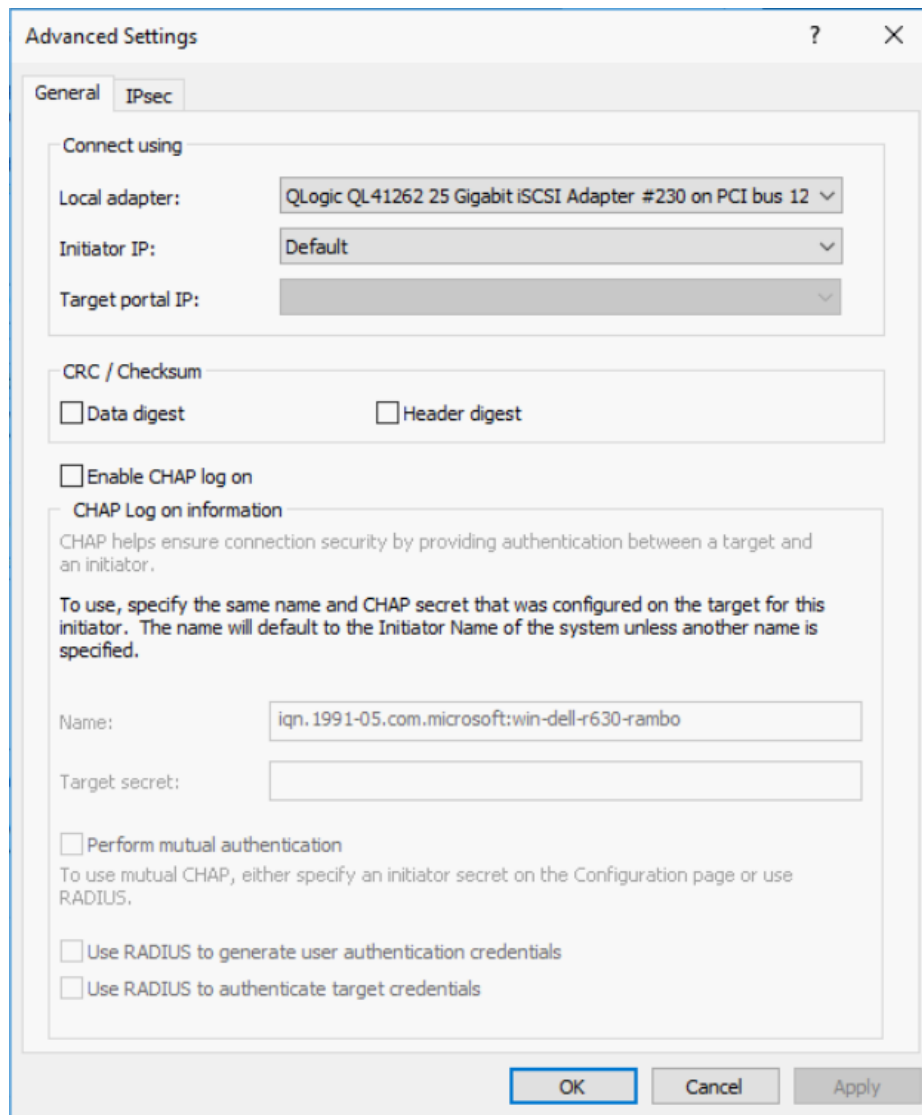


Figure 9-23. Selecting the Initiator IP Address

7. On the iSCSI Initiator Properties, Discovery page, click **OK**.

8. Click the **Targets** tab, and then on the Targets page (Figure 9-24), click **Connect**.

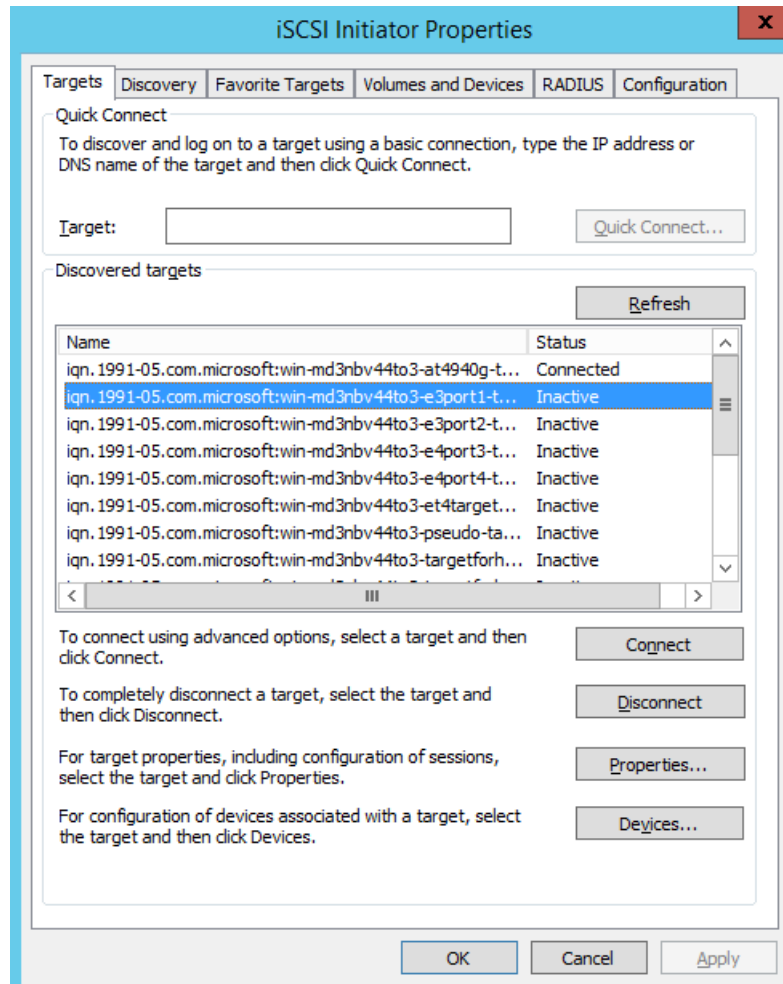


Figure 9-24. Connecting to the iSCSI Target

9. On the Connect To Target dialog box (Figure 9-25), click **Advanced**.

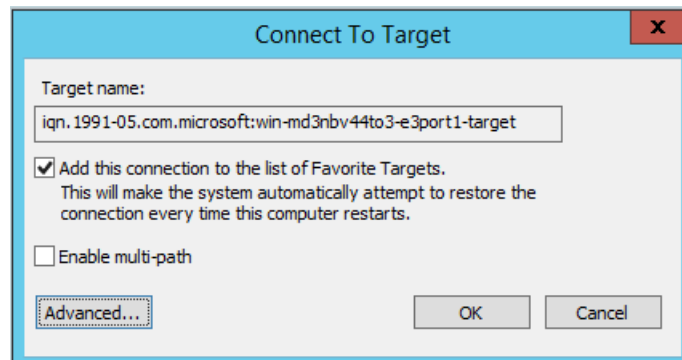


Figure 9-25. Connect To Target Dialog Box

10. In the Local Adapter dialog box, select the **QLogic <name or model> Adapter**, and then click **OK**.
11. Click **OK** again to close the Microsoft Initiator.
12. To format the iSCSI partition, use Disk Manager.

NOTE

Some limitations of the teaming functionality include:

- Teaming does not support iSCSI adapters.
 - Teaming does not support NDIS adapters that are in the boot path.
 - Teaming supports NDIS adapters that are not in the iSCSI boot path, but only for the SLB team type.
-

iSCSI Offload FAQs

Some of the frequently asked questions about iSCSI offload include:

Question: How do I assign an IP address for iSCSI offload?

Answer: Use the Configurations page in QConvergeConsole GUI.

Question: What tools should be used to create the connection to the target?

Answer: Use Microsoft iSCSI Software Initiator (version 2.08 or later).

Question: How do I know that the connection is offloaded?

Answer: Use Microsoft iSCSI Software Initiator. From a command line, type `oiscsicli sessionlist`. From **Initiator Name**, an iSCSI offloaded connection will display an entry beginning with `B06BDRV`. A non-offloaded connection displays an entry beginning with `Root`.

Question: What configurations should be avoided?

Answer: The IP address should not be the same as the LAN.

Windows Server 2012 R2 and 2016 iSCSI Boot Installation

Windows Server 2012 R2 and 2016 support booting and installing in either the offload or non-offload paths. QLogic requires that you use a slipstream DVD with the latest QLogic drivers injected. See [“Injecting \(Slipstreaming\) Adapter Drivers into Windows Image Files” on page 164](#).

The following procedure prepares the image for installation and booting in either the offload or non-offload path.

To set up Windows Server 2012R2/2016 iSCSI boot:

1. Remove any local hard drives on the system to be booted (remote system).
2. Prepare the Windows OS installation media by following the slipstreaming steps in [“Injecting \(Slipstreaming\) Adapter Drivers into Windows Image Files” on page 164](#).
3. Load the latest QLogic iSCSI boot images into the NVRAM of the adapter.
4. Configure the iSCSI target to allow a connection from the remote device. Ensure that the target has sufficient disk space to hold the new OS installation.
5. Configure the UEFI HII to set the iSCSI boot type (offload or non-offload), correct initiator, and target parameters for iSCSI boot.
6. Save the settings and reboot the system. The remote system should connect to the iSCSI target and then boot from the DVD-ROM device.
7. Boot from DVD and begin installation.
8. Follow the on-screen instructions.

At the window that shows the list of disks available for the installation, the iSCSI target disk should be visible. This target is a disk connected through the iSCSI boot protocol and located in the remote iSCSI target.

9. To proceed with Windows Server 2012R2/2016 installation, click **Next**, and then follow the on-screen instructions. The server will undergo a reboot multiple times as part of the installation process.
10. After the server boots to the OS, you should run the driver installer to complete the QLogic drivers and application installation.

iSCSI Crash Dump

Crash dump functionality is supported for both non-offload and offload iSCSI boot for the 41xxx Series Adapters. No additional configurations are required to configure iSCSI crash dump generation.

iSCSI Offload in Linux Environments

The QLogic FastLinQ 41xxx iSCSI software consists of a single kernel module called `qedi.ko` (`qedi`). The `qedi` module is dependent on additional parts of the Linux kernel for specific functionality:

- **`qed.ko`** is the Linux eCore kernel module used for common QLogic FastLinQ 41xxx hardware initialization routines.
- **`scsi_transport_iscsi.ko`** is the Linux iSCSI transport library used for upcall and downcall for session management.
- **`libiscsi.ko`** is the Linux iSCSI library function needed for protocol data unit (PDU) and task processing, as well as session memory management.
- **`iscsi_boot_sysfs.ko`** is the Linux iSCSI sysfs interface that provides helpers to export iSCSI boot information.
- **`uio.ko`** is the Linux Userspace I/O interface, used for light L2 memory mapping for `iscsiuio`.

These modules must be loaded before `qedi` can be functional. Otherwise, you might encounter an “unresolved symbol” error. If the `qedi` module is installed in the distribution update path, the requisite is automatically loaded by `modprobe`.

Differences from `bnx2i`

Some key differences exist between `qedi`—the driver for the QLogic FastLinQ 41xxx Series Adapter (iSCSI)—and the previous QLogic iSCSI offload driver—`bnx2i` for the QLogic 8400 Series Adapters. Some of these differences include:

- `qedi` directly binds to a PCI function exposed by the CNA.
- `qedi` does not sit on top of the `net_device`.
- `qedi` is not dependent on a network driver such as `bnx2x` and `cnic`.
- `qedi` is not dependent on `cnic`, but it has dependency on `qed`.
- `qedi` is responsible for exporting boot information in sysfs using `iscsi_boot_sysfs.ko`, whereas `bnx2i` boot from SAN relies on the `iscsi_ibft.ko` module for exporting boot information.

Configuring qedi.ko

The qedi driver automatically binds to the exposed iSCSI functions of the CNA, and the target discovery and binding is done through the open-iscsi tools. This functionality and operation is similar to that of the bnx2i driver.

NOTE

For more information on how to install FastLinQ drivers, see [Chapter 3 Driver Installation](#).

To load the qedi.ko kernel module, issue the following commands:

```
# modprobe qed
# modprobe libiscsi
# modprobe uio
# modprobe iscsi_boot_sysfs
# modprobe qedi
```

Verifying iSCSI Interfaces in Linux

After installing and loading the qedi kernel module, you must verify that the iSCSI interfaces were detected correctly.

To verify iSCSI interfaces in Linux:

1. To verify that the qedi and associated kernel modules are actively loaded, issue the following command:

```
# lsmod | grep qedi
qedi                114578    2
qed                  697989    1 qedi
uio                  19259     4 cnic,qedi
libiscsi             57233     2 qedi,bnx2i
scsi_transport_iscsi 99909     5 qedi,bnx2i,libiscsi
iscsi_boot_sysfs     16000     1 qedi
```

2. To verify that the iSCSI interfaces were detected properly, issue the following command. In this example, two iSCSI CNA devices are detected with SCSI host numbers 4 and 5.

```
# dmesg | grep qedi
[0000:00:00.0]:[qedi_init:3696]: QLogic iSCSI Offload Driver v8.15.6.0.
....
[0000:42:00.4]:[__qedi_probe:3563]:59: QLogic FastLinQ iSCSI Module qedi
8.15.6.0, FW 8.15.3.0
```

```
....  
[0000:42:00.4]:[qedi_link_update:928]:59: Link Up event.  
....  
[0000:42:00.5]:[__qedi_probe:3563]:60: QLogic FastLinQ iSCSI Module qedi  
8.15.6.0, FW 8.15.3.0  
....  
[0000:42:00.5]:[qedi_link_update:928]:59: Link Up event
```

3. Use open-iscsi tools to verify that IP is configured properly. Issue the following command:

```
# iscsiadm -m iface | grep qedi  
qedi.00:0e:1e:c4:e1:6d  
qedi,00:0e:1e:c4:e1:6d,192.168.101.227,<empty>,iqn.1994-05.com.redhat:534ca9b6  
adf  
qedi.00:0e:1e:c4:e1:6c  
qedi,00:0e:1e:c4:e1:6c,192.168.25.91,<empty>,iqn.1994-05.com.redhat:534ca9b6ad  
f
```

4. To ensure that the iscsiuiio service is running, issue the following command:

```
# systemctl status iscsiuiio.service  
iscsiuiio.service - iSCSI UserSpace I/O driver  
Loaded: loaded (/usr/lib/systemd/system/iscsiuiio.service; disabled; vendor  
preset: disabled)  
Active: active (running) since Fri 2017-01-27 16:33:58 IST; 6 days ago  
Docs: man:iscsiuiio(8)  
Process: 3745 ExecStart=/usr/sbin/iscsiuiio (code=exited, status=0/SUCCESS)  
Main PID: 3747 (iscsiuiio)  
CGroup: /system.slice/iscsiuiio.service !-3747 /usr/sbin/iscsiuiio  
Jan 27 16:33:58 localhost.localdomain systemd[1]: Starting iSCSI  
UserSpace I/O driver...  
Jan 27 16:33:58 localhost.localdomain systemd[1]: Started iSCSI UserSpace  
I/O driver.
```

5. To discover the iSCSI target, issue the `iscsiadm` command:

```
#iscsiadm -m discovery -t st -p 192.168.25.100 -I qedi.00:0e:1e:c4:e1:6c  
192.168.25.100:3260,1 iqn.2003-  
04.com.sanblaze:virtualun.virtualun.target-05000007  
192.168.25.100:3260,1  
iqn.2003-04.com.sanblaze:virtualun.virtualun.target-05000012  
192.168.25.100:3260,1  
iqn.2003-04.com.sanblaze:virtualun.virtualun.target-0500000c  
192.168.25.100:3260,1 iqn.2003-  
04.com.sanblaze:virtualun.virtualun.target-05000001
```

```
192.168.25.100:3260,1  
iqn.2003-04.com.sanblaze:virtualun.virtualun.target-05000002
```

6. Log into the iSCSI target using the IQN obtained in [Step 5](#). To initiate the login procedure, issue the following command (where the last character in the command is a lowercase letter “L”:

```
#iscsiadm -m node -p 192.168.25.100 -T  
iqn.2003-04.com.sanblaze:virtualun.virtualun.target-0)000007 -l  
Logging in to [iface: qedi.00:0e:1e:c4:e1:6c,  
target:iqn.2003-04.com.sanblaze:virtualun.virtualun.target-05000007,  
portal:192.168.25.100,3260] (multiple)  
Login to [iface: qedi.00:0e:1e:c4:e1:6c, target:iqn.2003-  
04.com.sanblaze:virtualun.virtualun.target-05000007,  
portal:192.168.25.100,3260] successful.
```

7. To verify that the iSCSI session was created, issue the following command:

```
# iscsiadm -m session  
qedi: [297] 192.168.25.100:3260,1  
iqn.2003-04.com.sanblaze:virtualun.virtualun.target-05000007 (non-flash)
```

8. To check for iSCSI devices, issue the `iscsiadm` command:

```
# iscsiadm -m session -P3  
...  
*****  
Attached SCSI devices:  
*****  
Host Number: 59 State: running  
scsi59 Channel 00 Id 0 Lun: 0  
Attached scsi disk sdb State: running scsi59 Channel 00 Id 0 Lun: 1  
Attached scsi disk sdc State: running scsi59 Channel 00 Id 0 Lun: 2  
Attached scsi disk sdd State: running scsi59 Channel 00 Id 0 Lun: 3  
Attached scsi disk sde State: running scsi59 Channel 00 Id 0 Lun: 4  
Attached scsi disk sdf State: running
```

For advanced target configurations, refer to the Open-iSCSI README at:

<https://github.com/open-iscsi/open-iscsi/blob/master/README>

Open-iSCSI and Boot from SAN Considerations

In current distributions (for example, RHEL 6/7 and SLE 11/12) the inbox iSCSI user space utility (Open-iSCSI tools) lacks support for qedi iSCSI transport and cannot perform user space-initiated iSCSI functionality. During boot from SAN installation, you can update the qedi driver using a driver update disk (DUD). However, no interface or process exists to update userspace inbox utilities, which causes the iSCSI target login and boot from SAN installation to fail.

To overcome this limitation, perform the initial boot from SAN with the pure L2 interface (do not use hardware offloaded iSCSI) using the following procedure during the boot from SAN.

To boot from SAN using a software initiator with Dell OEM Solutions:

1. On the NIC Configuration page, select **Boot Protocol**, and then press ENTER to select **Legacy PXE**.
2. Configure the initiator and target entries.
3. At the beginning of the installation, pass the following boot parameter with the DUD option:
 - ❑ For RHEL 6.x and 7.x:
rd.iscsi.ibft dd

No separate options are required for older distributions of RHEL.
 - ❑ For SLES 11 SP4 and SLES 12 SP1/SP2/SP3:
ip=ibft dud=1
 - ❑ For the FastLinQ DUD package (for example, on RHEL 7):
fastlinq-8.18.10.0-dd-rhel7u3-3.10.0_514.el7-x86_64.iso

Where the DUD parameter is **dd** for RHEL 7.x and **dud=1** for SLES 12.x.
4. Install the OS on the target LUN.
5. Migrate from the non-offload interface to an offload interface following the instructions for your operating system:
 - [RHEL 6.9 iSCSI L4 Boot from SAN Migration](#)
 - [RHEL 7.2/7.3 iSCSI L4 Boot from SAN Migration](#)
 - [SLES 11 SP4 iSCSI L4 Boot from SAN Migration](#)
 - [SLES 12 SP1/SP2 iSCSI L4 Boot from SAN Migration](#)
 - [SLES 12 SP1/SP2 iSCSI L4 Boot from SAN Migration Using MPIO](#)

RHEL 6.9 iSCSI L4 Boot from SAN Migration

To migrate from a non-offload interface to an offload interface:

1. Boot into the iSCSI non-offload/L2 boot-from-SAN operating system. Issue the following commands to install the open-iscsi and iscsiui RPMs:

```
# rpm -ivh --force qlgc-open-iscsi-2.0_873.111-1.x86_64.rpm
# rpm -ivh --force iscsiui-2.11.5.2-1.rhel6u9.x86_64.rpm
```

2. Edit the /etc/init.d/iscsid file, add the following command, and save the file:

```
modprobe -q qedi
```

For example:

```
echo -n $"Starting $prog: "
modprobe -q iscsi_tcp
modprobe -q ib_iser
modprobe -q cxgb3i
modprobe -q cxgb4i
modprobe -q bnx2i
modprobe -q be2iscsi
modprobe -q qedi
daemon iscsiui
```

3. Edit the /etc/iscsi/iscsid.conf file, comment/uncomment the following lines, and save the file:

- Comment:
iscsid.startup = /etc/rc.d/init.d/iscsid force-start
- Uncomment:
iscsid.startup = /sbin/iscsid

For example:

```
#####
# iscsid daemon config
#####
# If you want iscsid to start the first time a iscsi tool
# needs to access it, instead of starting it when the init
# scripts run, set the iscsid startup command here. This
# should normally only need to be done by distro package
# maintainers.
#
# Default for Fedora and RHEL. (uncomment to activate).
#iscsid.startup = /etc/rc.d/init.d/iscsid force-start
```

```
#  
# Default for upstream open-iscsi scripts (uncomment to  
activate).
```

```
iscsid.startup = /sbin/iscsid
```

4. Create an lface record for an L4 interface. Issue the following command:

```
# iscsiadm -m iface -I qedi.14:02:ec:ce:dc:71 -o new  
New interface qedi.14:02:ec:ce:dc:71 added
```

The lface record format should be `qedi.<mac_address>`. In this case, the MAC address should match the L4 MAC address on which the iSCSI session is active.

5. Update the lface fields in the lface records by issuing the `iscsiadm` command. For example:

```
# iscsiadm -m iface -I qedi.14:02:ec:ce:dc:71 -n  
iface.hwaddress -v 14:02:ec:ce:dc:71 -o update  
qedi.14:02:ec:ce:dc:71 updated.  
# iscsiadm -m iface -I qedi.14:02:ec:ce:dc:71 -n  
iface.transport_name -v qedi -o update  
qedi.14:02:ec:ce:dc:71 updated.  
# iscsiadm -m iface -I qedi.14:02:ec:ce:dc:71 -n  
iface.bootproto -v dhcp -o update  
qedi.14:02:ec:ce:dc:71 updated.  
# iscsiadm -m iface -I qedi.14:02:ec:ce:dc:71 -n  
iface.ipaddress -v 0.0.0.0 -o update  
qedi.14:02:ec:ce:dc:71 updated.  
# iscsiadm -m node -T  
iqn.1986-03.com.hp:storage.p2000g3.13491b47fb -p  
192.168.100.9:3260 -I qedi.14:02:ec:ce:dc:71 -o new  
New iSCSI node  
[qedi:[hw=14:02:ec:ce:dc:71,ip=0.0.0.0,net_if=,iscsi_if=qedi.  
14:02:ec:ce:dc:71] 192.168.100.9,3260,-1  
iqn.1986-03.com.hp:storage.p2000g3.13491b47fb] added
```


6. Edit the `/boot/efi/EFI/redhat/grub.conf` file, make the following changes, and save the file:

- Remove `ifname=eth5:14:02:ec:ce:dc:6d`
- Remove `ip=ibft`
- Add `selinux=0`

For example:

```
kernel /vmlinuz-2.6.32-696.el6.x86_64 ro
root=/dev/mapper/vg_preboot-1-lv_root rd_NO_LUKS
iscsi_firmware LANG=en_US.UTF-8 ifname=eth5:14:02:ec:ce:dc:6d
rd_NO_MD SYSFONT=latacyrheb-sun16 crashkernel=auto rd_NO_DM
rd_LVM_LV=vg_preboot-1-lv_swap ip=ibft KEYBOARDTYPE=pc
KEYTABLE=us rd_LVM_LV=vg_preboot-1-lv_root rhgb quiet
initrd /initramfs-2.6.32-696.el6.x86_64.img
```

```
kernel /vmlinuz-2.6.32-696.el6.x86_64 ro
root=/dev/mapper/vg_preboot-1-lv_root rd_NO_LUKS
iscsi_firmware LANG=en_US.UTF-8 rd_NO_MD
SYSFONT=latacyrheb-sun16 crashkernel=auto rd_NO_DM
rd_LVM_LV=vg_preboot-1-lv_swap KEYBOARDTYPE=pc KEYTABLE=us
rd_LVM_LV=vg_preboot-1-lv_root selinux=0
initrd /initramfs-2.6.32-696.el6.x86_64.img
```

7. Build the `initramfs` file by issuing the following command:

```
# dracut -f
```
8. Reboot the server, and then open the HII.
9. In the HII, enable iSCSI offload mode:
 - a. In the Main Configuration page, select **System Setup, Device Settings**.
 - b. In the Device Settings page, select the port on which iSCSI boot firmware table (iBFT) was configured
 - c. In the System Setup page, select **NIC Partitioning Configuration, Partition 3 Configuration**.
 - d. In the Partition 3 Configuration page, set **iSCSI Offload Mode** to **Enabled**.
10. In the Main Configuration page, select **iSCSI General Parameters**, and then set **HBA Boot Mode** to **Enabled**.
11. In the Main Configuration page, set **Boot Protocol** to **UEFI iSCSI HBA**.

12. Save the configuration and reboot the server.

NOTE

The OS can now boot through the offload interface.

RHEL 7.2/7.3 iSCSI L4 Boot from SAN Migration

To migrate from a non-offload interface to an offload interface:

1. Update open-iscsi tools and iscsiui by issuing the following commands:

```
#rpm -ivh qlgc-open-iscsi-2.0_873.111.rhel7u3-3.x86_64.rpm --force  
#rpm -ivh iscsiui-2.11.5.3-2.rhel7u3.x86_64.rpm --force
```

2. Reload all the daemon services by issuing the following command:

```
#systemctl daemon-reload
```

3. Restart iscsid and iscsiui services by issuing the following commands:

```
# systemctl restart iscsiui  
# systemctl restart iscsid
```

4. Create an lface record for the L4 interface by issuing the following command.

```
# iscsiadm -m iface -I qedi.00:0e:1e:d6:7d:3a -o new
```

The lface record format should be qedi<mac_address>. In this case, the MAC address should match the L4 MAC address on which the iSCSI session is active.

5. Update the lface fields in the lface records by issuing the iscsiadm command. For example:

```
# iscsiadm -m iface -I qedi.00:0e:1e:d6:7d:3a -n  
iface.hwaddress -v 00:0e:1e:d6:7d:3a -o update  
# iscsiadm -m iface -I qedi.00:0e:1e:d6:7d:3a -n  
iface.ipaddress -v 192.168.91.101 -o update  
# iscsiadm -m iface -I qedi.00:0e:1e:d6:7d:3a -n  
iface.subnet_mask -v 255.255.0.0 -o update  
# iscsiadm -m iface -I qedi.00:0e:1e:d6:7d:3a -n  
iface.transport_name -v qedi -o update  
# iscsiadm -m iface -I qedi.00:0e:1e:d6:7d:3a -n  
iface.bootproto -v static -o update
```

6. Create a target node record to use the L4 interface as follows:

```
# iscsiadm -m node -T  
iqn.2003-04.com.sanblaze:virtualun.virtualun.target-050123456  
-p 192.168.25.100:3260 -I qedi.00:0e:1e:d6:7d:3a -o new
```
7. Edit the /usr/libexec/iscsi-mark-root-node file and locate the following statement:

```
if [ "$transport" = bnx2i ]; then  
start_iscsiuio=1
```

Add `|| [ "$transport" = qedi ]` to the IF expression as follows:

```
if [ "$transport" = bnx2i ] || [ "$transport" = qedi ]; then  
start_iscsiuio=1
```
8. Edit the /etc/default/grub file, and then locate the following statement:

```
GRUB_CMDLINE_LINUX="iscsi_firmware ip=ibft"
```

Change this statement to:

```
GRUB_CMDLINE_LINUX="rd.iscsi.firmware"
```
9. Create a new grub.cfg file by issuing the following command:

```
# grub2-mkconfig -o /boot/efi/EFI/redhat/grub.cfg
```
10. Build the initramfs file by issuing the following command:

```
# dracut -f
```
11. Reboot the server, and then open the HII.
12. In the HII, enable iSCSI offload mode:
 - a. In the Main Configuration page, select **System Setup, Device Settings**.
 - b. In the Device Settings page, select the port on which iSCSI boot firmware table (iBFT) was configured
 - c. In the System Setup page, select **NIC Partitioning Configuration, Partition 3 Configuration**.
 - d. In the Partition 3 Configuration page, set **iSCSI Offload Mode** to **Enabled**.
13. In the Main Configuration page, select **iSCSI General Parameters**, and then set **HBA Boot Mode** to **Enabled**.
14. In the Main Configuration page, set **Boot Protocol** to **UEFI iSCSI HBA**.

15. Save the configuration and reboot the server.

NOTE

The OS can now boot through the offload interface.

SLES 11 SP4 iSCSI L4 Boot from SAN Migration

To migrate from a non-offload interface to an offload interface:

1. Update open-iscsi tools and iscsiui by issuing the following commands:

```
# rpm -ivh qlgc-open-iscsi-2.0_873.111.sles11sp4-3.x86_64.rpm --force
# rpm -ivh iscsiui-2.11.5.3-2.sles11sp4.x86_64.rpm --force
```

2. Edit the `/etc/elilo.conf` file, make the following changes, and then save the file:

- Remove `ip=ibft` parameter
- Add `iscsi_firmware`
- Append `rd.driver.pre=qed` `rd.driver.pre=qedi`

3. Edit the `/etc/sysconfig/kernel` file and locate the following statement:

```
INITRD_MODULES="ata_piix ata_generic"
```

Change the statement to:

```
INITRD_MODULES="ata_piix ata_generic qedi"
```

Save the file.

4. Edit the `/etc/modprobe.d/unsupported-modules` file, change value for `allow_unsupported_modules` to 1, and save the file:

```
allow_unsupported_modules 1
```

5. Locate and delete the following files:

- `/etc/init.d/boot.d/K01boot.open-iscsi`
- `/etc/init.d/boot.open-iscsi`

6. Create a backup of `initrd`, and then build a new `initrd` by issuing the following commands.

```
# cd /boot/
# mkinitrd
```

7. Reboot the server, and then open the HII.

8. In the HII, enable iSCSI offload mode:
 - a. In the Main Configuration page, select **System Setup, Device Settings**.
 - b. In the Device Settings page, select the port on which iSCSI boot firmware table (iBFT) was configured
 - c. In the System Setup page, select **NIC Partitioning Configuration, Partition 3 Configuration**.
 - d. In the Partition 3 Configuration page, set **iSCSI Offload Mode** to **Enabled**.
9. On the Main Configuration page, select **iSCSI General Parameters**, and then set **HBA Boot Mode** to **Enabled**.
10. On the Main Configuration page, set **Boot Protocol** to **UEFI iSCSI HBA**.
11. Save the configuration and reboot the server.

NOTE

The OS can now boot through the offload interface.

SLES 12 SP1/SP2 iSCSI L4 Boot from SAN Migration

To migrate from a non-offload interface to an offload interface:

1. Boot into the iSCSI non-offload/L2 boot-from-SAN operating system. Issue the following commands to install the open-iscsi and iscsiui RPMs:

```
# qlgc-open-iscsi-2.0_873.111.slessp2-3.x86_64.rpm
# iscsiui-2.11.5.3-2.sles12sp2.x86_64.rpm
```
2. Reload all the daemon services by issuing the following command:

```
# systemctl daemon-reload
```
3. Enable iscsid and iscsiui services if they are not already enabled by issuing the following commands:

```
# systemctl enable iscsid
# systemctl enable iscsiui
```
4. Issue the following command:

```
cat /proc/cmdline
```

5. Check if the OS has preserved any boot options, such as `ip=ibft` or `rd.iscsi.ibft`.
 - ☐ If there are preserved boot options, continue with [Step 6](#).
 - ☐ If there are no preserved boot options, skip to [Step 6 c](#).
6. Edit the `/etc/default/grub` file and modify the `GRUB_CMDLINE_LINUX` value:
 - a. Remove `rd.iscsi.ibft` (if present).
 - b. Remove any `ip=<value>` boot option. (if present).
 - c. Add `rd.iscsi.firmware`. For older distros, add `iscsi_firmware`.
7. Create a backup of original `grub.cfg` file. The file is in the following locations:
 - Legacy boot: `/boot/grub2/grub.cfg`
 - UEFI boot: `/boot/efi/EFI/sles/grub.cfg` for SLES
8. Create a new `grub.cfg` file by issuing the following command:

```
# grub2-mkconfig -o <new file name>
```
9. Compare the old `grub.cfg` file with new `grub.cfg` file to verify your changes.
10. Replace the original `grub.cfg` file with the new `grub.cfg` file.
11. Build the `initramfs` file by issuing the following command:

```
# dracut -f
```
12. Reboot the server, and then open the HII.
13. In the HII, enable iSCSI offload mode:
 - a. In the Main Configuration page, select **System Setup, Device Settings**.
 - b. In the Device Settings page, select the port on which iSCSI boot firmware table (iBFT) was configured
 - c. In the System Setup page, select **NIC Partitioning Configuration, Partition 3 Configuration**.
 - d. In the Partition 3 Configuration page, set **iSCSI Offload Mode** to **Enabled**.
14. On the Main Configuration page, select **iSCSI General Parameters**, and then set **HBA Boot Mode** to **Enabled**.
15. On the Main Configuration page, set **Boot Protocol** to **UEFI iSCSI HBA**.

16. Save the configuration and reboot the server.

NOTE

The OS can now boot through the offload interface.

SLES 12 SP1/SP2 iSCSI L4 Boot from SAN Migration Using MPIO

To migrate from L2 to L4 and configure Microsoft Multipath I/O (MPIO) settings to boot the OS over offloaded interface:

1. To update open-iscsi tools, issue the following command:

```
# rpm -ivh --force qlgc-open-iscsi-2.0_873.111.sles12sp1-3.x86_64.rpm  
# rpm -ivh --force iscsiui-2.11.5.3-2.sles12sp1.x86_64.rpm
```
2. Go to `/etc/default/grub` and change the `rd.iscsi.ibft` parameter to `rd.iscsi.firmware`.
3. Issue the following command:

```
grub2-mkconfig -o /boot/efi/EFI/suse/grub.cfg
```
4. To load the multipath module, issue the following command:

```
modprobe dm_multipath
```
5. To enable the multipath daemon, issue the following commands:

```
systemctl start multipathd.service  
systemctl enable multipathd.service  
systemctl start multipathd.socket
```
6. To add devices to the multipath, issue the following commands:

```
multipath -a /dev/sda  
multipath -a /dev/sdb
```
7. To run the multipath utility, issue the following commands:

```
multipath (may not show the multipath devices because it is booted with single path on L2)  
multipath -ll
```
8. To Inject the multipath module in initrd, issue the following command:

```
dracut --force --add multipath --include /etc/multipath
```
9. Reboot the server and enter system settings by pressing the F9 key during the POST menu.

10. Change UEFI configuration to use L4 iSCSI boot:
 - a. Open the System Setup window, and then select **Device Settings**.
 - b. On the Device Settings window, select the adapter port on which the iSCSI boot firmware table (iBFT) is configured, and then press ENTER.
 - c. On the Main Configuration page, select **NIC Partitioning Configuration**, and then press ENTER.
 - d. On the Partitions Configuration page, select **Partition 3 Configuration**.
 - e. On the Partition 3 Configuration page, set **iSCSI Offload Mode** to **Enabled**.
 - f. Go to the Main Configuration page, and then select **iSCSI Configuration**.
 - g. On the iSCSI Configuration page, select **iSCSI General Parameters**.
 - h. On the iSCSI General Parameters page, set **HBA Boot Mode** to **Enabled**.
 - i. Go to the Main Configuration page, and select **NIC Configuration**.
 - j. On the NIC Configuration page, set **Boot Protocol** to **UEFI iSCSI HBA**.
 - k. Save the settings, and then exit the System Configuration Menu.
11. To ensure proper installation of out-of-box drivers from the driver update disk (DUD) and to prevent loading of the inbox drivers, do the following:
 - a. Edit the `/etc/default/grub` file to include the following command:

```
BOOT_IMAGE=/boot/x86_64/loader/linux dud=1  
brokenmodules=qed, qedi, qedf linuxrc.debug=1
```
 - b. Edit the `dud.config` file on the DUD and add the following commands to clear the broken modules list:

```
brokenmodules=-qed, qedi, qedf  
brokenmodules=dummy_xxx
```
12. Reboot the system. The OS should now boot through the offload interface.

10 FCoE Configuration

This chapter provides the following Fibre Channel over Ethernet (FCoE) configuration information:

- [FCoE Boot from SAN](#)
- [Injecting \(Slipstreaming\) Adapter Drivers into Windows Image Files](#)
- [Configuring Linux FCoE Offload](#)
- [Differences Between qedf and bnx2fc](#)
- [Configuring qedf.ko](#)
- [Verifying FCoE Devices in Linux](#)
- [Boot from SAN Considerations](#)

NOTE

FCoE offload is supported on all 41xxx Series Adapters. Some FCoE features may not be fully enabled in the current release. For details, refer to [Appendix D Feature Constraints](#).

FCoE Boot from SAN

This section describes the installation and boot procedures for the Windows, Linux, and ESXi operating systems, including:

- [Preparing System BIOS for FCoE Build and Boot](#)
- [Windows FCoE Boot from SAN](#)

NOTE

FCoE Boot from SAN is supported on ESXi 5.5 and later. Not all adapter versions support FCoE and FCoE Boot from SAN.

Preparing System BIOS for FCoE Build and Boot

To prepare the system BIOS, modify the system boot order and specify the BIOS boot protocol, if required.

Specifying the BIOS Boot Protocol

FCoE boot from SAN is supported in UEFI mode only. Set the platform in boot mode (protocol) using the system BIOS configuration to UEFI.

NOTE

FCoE BFS is not supported in legacy BIOS mode.

Configuring Adapter UEFI Boot Mode

To configure the boot mode to FCOE:

1. Restart the system.
2. Press the OEM hot key to enter System Setup ([Figure 10-1](#)). This is also known as UEFI HII.

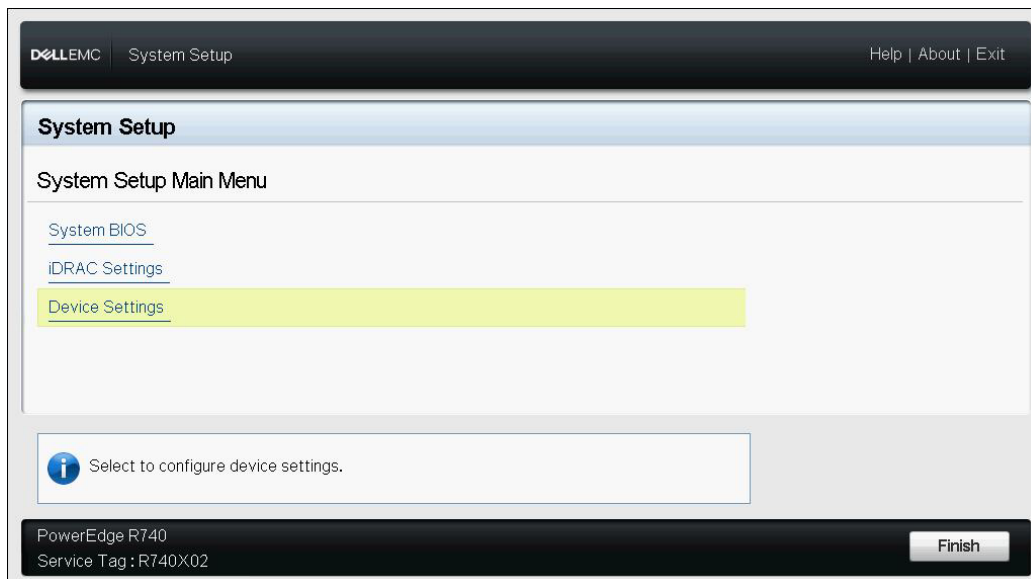


Figure 10-1. System Setup: Selecting Device Settings

NOTE

SAN boot is supported in UEFI environment only. Make sure the system boot option is UEFI, and not legacy.

3. On the Device Settings page, select the QLogic device ([Figure 10-2](#)).

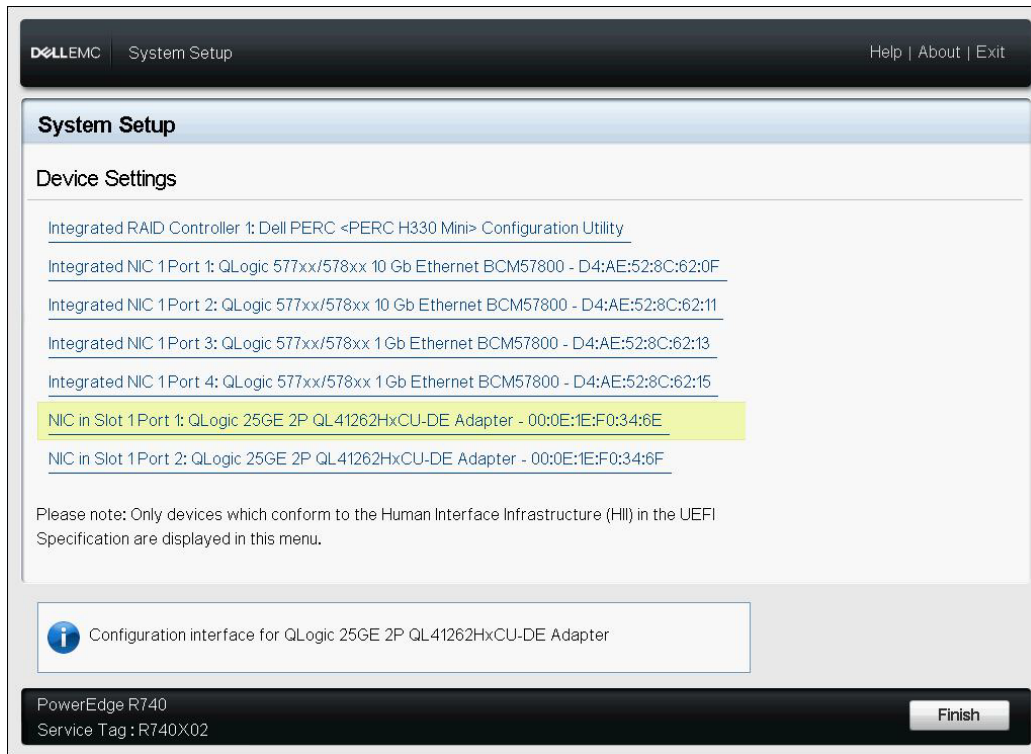


Figure 10-2. System Setup: Device Settings, Port Selection

4. On the Main Configuration Page, select **NIC Configuration** (Figure 10-3), and then press ENTER.

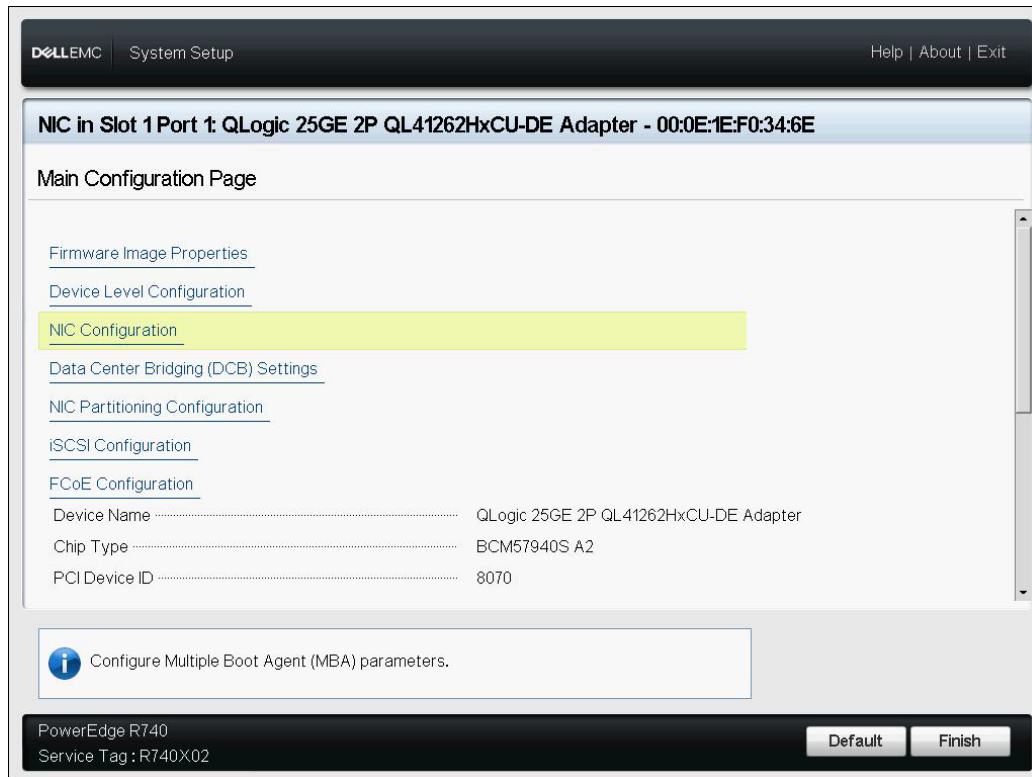


Figure 10-3. System Setup: NIC Configuration

5. On the NIC Configuration page, select **Boot Mode**, and then press ENTER to select **FCoE** as a preferred boot mode.

NOTE

FCoE is not listed as a boot option if the **FCoE Mode** feature is disabled at the port level. If the **Boot Mode** preferred is **FCoE**, make sure the **FCoE Mode** feature is enabled as shown in [Figure 10-4](#). Not all adapter versions support FCoE.

Main Configuration Page • NIC Partitioning Configuration • Partition 2 Configuration

NIC Mode	☐ Enabled ☒ Disabled
FCoE Mode	☒ Enabled ☐ Disabled
FIP MAC Address	00:0E:1E:F0:34:70
Virtual FIP MAC Address	00:00:00:00:00:00
World Wide Port Name	20:01:00:0E:1E:F0:34:70
Virtual World Wide Port Name	00:00:00:00:00:00:00
World Wide Node Name	20:00:00:0E:1E:F0:34:70
Virtual World Wide Node Name	00:00:00:00:00:00:00
PCI Device ID	8070
PCI Address	3B:00:04

Configure Partition 2 parameters

PowerEdge R740
Service Tag : R740X02

Back

Figure 10-4. System Setup: FCoE Mode Enabled

To configure the FCoE boot parameters:

1. On the Device HII Main Configuration Page, select **FCoE Configuration**, and then press ENTER.
2. On the FCoE Configuration Page, select **FCoE General Parameters**, and then press ENTER.

3. On the FCoE General Parameters page([Figure 10-5](#)), press the UP ARROW and DOWN ARROW keys to select a parameter, and then press ENTER to select and input the following values:
 - ☐ **Fabric Discovery Retry Count:** Default value or as required
 - ☐ **LUN Busy Retry Count:** Default value or as required

Main Configuration Page • FCoE Configuration • FCoE General Parameters

Fabric Discovery Retry Count 3

LUN Busy Retry Count 3

 Specify the retry count for FCoE fabric discovery. Value must be in range 0 to 60.

PowerEdge R740
Service Tag : R740X02

Back

Figure 10-5. System Setup: FCoE General Parameters

4. Return to the FCoE Configuration page.
5. Press ESC, and then select **FCoE Target Parameters**.
6. Press ENTER.
7. In the FCoE Target Parameters Menu, enable **Connect** to the preferred FCoE target.

8. Type values for the following parameters ([Figure 10-6](#)) for the iSCSI target, and then press ENTER:

- ☐ **World Wide Port Name Target n**
- ☐ **Boot LUN n**

Where the value of n is between 1 and 8, enabling you to configure 8 FCoE targets.

The screenshot shows a web-based configuration interface titled "Main Configuration Page • FCoE Configuration". The "FCoE General Parameters" section is highlighted in yellow. It contains three sets of configuration options for Connect 1, Connect 2, and Connect 3. Each set includes a "Connect" label, a radio button for "Enabled" (selected) or "Disabled", a "World Wide Port Name Target" field, and a "Boot LUN" field. The values are: Connect 1 (Enabled, 50:00:00:00:00:00:01, 1), Connect 2 (Enabled, 50:00:00:00:00:00:02, 2), and Connect 3 (Enabled, 50:00:00:00:00:00:03, 2). Below the configuration fields is an information box with an 'i' icon and the text "Configure general parameters that apply to all FCoE functionality." At the bottom, a black bar displays "PowerEdge R740" and "Service Tag : R740X02" on the left, and a "Back" button on the right.

Figure 10-6. System Setup: FCoE General Parameters

Windows FCoE Boot from SAN

FCoE boot from SAN information for Windows includes:

- [Windows Server 2012 R2 and 2016 FCoE Boot Installation](#)
- [Configuring FCoE](#)
- [FCoE Crash Dump](#)

Windows Server 2012 R2 and 2016 FCoE Boot Installation

For Windows Server 2012R2/2016 boot from SAN installation, QLogic requires the use of a “slipstream” DVD, or ISO image, with the latest QLogic drivers injected. See [“Injecting \(Slipstreaming\) Adapter Drivers into Windows Image Files”](#) on page 164.

The following procedure prepares the image for installation and booting in FCoE mode.

To set up Windows Server 2012R2/2016 FCoE boot:

1. Remove any local hard drives on the system to be booted (remote system).
2. Prepare the Windows OS installation media by following the slipstreaming steps in [“Injecting \(Slipstreaming\) Adapter Drivers into Windows Image Files” on page 164](#).
3. Load the latest QLogic FCoE boot images into the adapter NVRAM.
4. Configure the FCoE target to allow a connection from the remote device. Ensure that the target has sufficient disk space to hold the new OS installation.
5. Configure the UEFI HII to set the FCoE boot type on the required adapter port, correct initiator, and target parameters for FCoE boot.
6. Save the settings and reboot the system. The remote system should connect to the FCoE target, and then boot from the DVD-ROM device.
7. Boot from DVD and begin installation.
8. Follow the on-screen instructions.
9. On the window that shows the list of disks available for the installation, the FCoE target disk should be visible. This target is a disk connected through the FCoE boot protocol, located in the remote FCoE target.
10. To proceed with Windows Server 2012R2/2016 installation, select **Next**, and follow the on-screen instructions. The server will undergo a reboot multiple times as part of the installation process.
11. After the server boots to the OS, you should run the driver installer to complete the QLogic drivers and application installation.

Configuring FCoE

By default, DCB is enabled on QLogic 41xxx FCoE- and DCB-compatible C-NICs. QLogic 41xxx FCoE requires a DCB-enabled interface. For Windows operating systems, use QCC GUI or a command line utility to configure the DCB parameters.

FCoE Crash Dump

Crash dump functionality is currently supported for FCoE boot for the FastLinQ 41xxx Series Adapters.

No additional configuration is required for FCoE crash-dump generation when in FCoE boot mode.

Injecting (Slipstreaming) Adapter Drivers into Windows Image Files

To inject adapter drivers into the Windows image files:

1. Obtain the latest driver package for the applicable Windows Server version (2012, 2012 R2, or 2016).
2. Extract the driver package to a working directory:
 - a. Open a command line session and navigate to the folder that contains the driver package.
 - b. To start the driver installer, issue the following command:
setup.exe /a
 - c. In the Network location field, enter the path of the folder to which to extract the driver package. For example, type **c:\temp**.
 - d. Follow the driver installer instructions to install the drivers in the specified folder. In this example, the driver files are installed here:
c:\temp\Program File 64\QLogic Corporation\QDrivers
3. Download the Windows Assessment and Deployment Kit (ADK) version 10 from Microsoft:
<https://developer.microsoft.com/en-us/windows/hardware/windows-assessment-deployment-kit>
4. Open a command line session (with administrator privilege), and navigate through the release CD to the **Tools\Slipstream** folder.
5. Locate the **slipstream.bat** script file, and then issue the following command:

slipstream.bat <path>

Where <path> is the drive and subfolder that you specified in [Step 2](#). For example:

slipstream.bat "c:\temp\Program Files 64\QLogic Corporation\QDrivers"

NOTE

Note the following regarding the operating system installation media:

- Operating system installation media is expected to be a local drive. Network paths for operating system installation media are not supported.
- The `slipstream.bat` script injects the driver components in all the SKUs that are supported by the operating system installation media.

6. Burn a DVD containing the resulting driver ISO image file located in the working directory.
7. Install the Windows Server operating system using the new DVD.

Configuring Linux FCoE Offload

The QLogic FastLinQ 41xxx Series Adapter FCoE software consists of a single kernel module called `qedf.ko` (`qedf`). The `qedf` module is dependent on additional parts of the Linux kernel for specific functionality:

- **`qed.ko`** is the Linux eCore kernel module used for common QLogic FastLinQ 41xxx hardware initialization routines.
- **`libfcoe.ko`** is the Linux FCoE kernel library needed to conduct FCoE forwarder (FCF) solicitation and FCoE initialization protocol (FIP) fabric login (FLOGI).
- **`libfc.ko`** is the Linux FC kernel library needed for several functions, including:
 - ☐ Name server login and registration
 - ☐ rport session management
- **`scsi_transport_fc.ko`** is the Linux FC SCSI transport library used for remote port and SCSI target management.

These modules must be loaded before `qedf` can be functional, otherwise errors such as “unresolved symbol” can result. If the `qedf` module is installed in the distribution update path, the requisite modules are automatically loaded by `modprobe`. QLogic 41xxx Series Adapters support FCoE offload.

Differences Between qedf and bnx2fc

Significant differences exist between qedf—the driver for QLogic FastLinQ 41xxx 10/25GbE Controller (FCoE)—and the previous QLogic FCoE offload driver, bnx2fc. Differences include:

- qedf directly binds to a PCI function exposed by the CNA.
- qedf does not need the open-fcoe user space tools (fipvlan, fcoemon, fcoeadm) to initiate discovery.
- qedf issues FIP VLAN requests directly and does not need the fipvlan utility.
- qedf does not need an FCoE interface created by fipvlan for fcoemon.
- qedf does not sit on top of the net_device.
- qedf is not dependent on network drivers (such as bnx2x and cnic).
- qedf will automatically initiate FCoE discovery on link up (because it is not dependent on fipvlan or fcoemon for FCoE interface creation).

Configuring qedf.ko

No explicit configuration is required for qedf.ko. The driver automatically binds to the exposed FCoE functions of the CNA and begins discovery. This functionality is similar to the functionality and operation of QLogic's FC driver, qla2xx, as opposed to the older bnx2fc driver.

NOTE

For more information on FastLinQ driver installation, see [Chapter 3 Driver Installation](#).

The load qedf.ko kernel module performs the following:

```
# modprobe qed
# modprobe libfcoe
# modprobe qedf
```

Verifying FCoE Devices in Linux

Follow these steps to verify that the FCoE devices were detected correctly after installing and loading the qedf kernel module.

To verify FCoE devices in Linux:

1. Check `lsmod` to verify that the qedf and associated kernel modules were loaded:

```
# lsmod | grep qedf
69632 1 qedf libfc
143360 2 qedf,libfcoe scsi_transport_fc
65536 2 qedf,libfc qed
806912 1 qedf scsi_mod
262144 14
sg,hpsa,qedf,scsi_dh_alua,scsi_dh_rdac,dm_multipath,scsi_transport_fc,
scsi_transport_sas,libfc,scsi_transport_iscsi,scsi_dh_emc,libata,sd_mod,sr_mod
```

2. Check `dmesg` to verify that the FCoE devices were detected properly. In this example, the two detected FCoE CNA devices are SCSI host numbers 4 and 5.

```
# dmesg | grep qedf
[ 235.321185] [0000:00:00.0]: [qedf_init:3728]: QLogic FCoE Offload Driver
v8.18.8.0.
....
[ 235.322253] [0000:21:00.2]: [__qedf_probe:3142]:4: QLogic FastLinQ FCoE
Module qedf 8.18.8.0, FW 8.18.10.0
[ 235.606443] scsi host4: qedf
....
[ 235.624337] [0000:21:00.3]: [__qedf_probe:3142]:5: QLogic FastLinQ FCoE
Module qedf 8.18.8.0, FW 8.18.10.0
[ 235.886681] scsi host5: qedf
....
[ 243.991851] [0000:21:00.3]: [qedf_link_update:489]:5: LINK UP (40 GB/s).
```

3. Check for discovered FCoE devices using `lsblk -S`:

```
# lsblk -S
```

NAME	HCTL	TYPE	VENDOR	MODEL	REV	TRAN
sdb	5:0:0:0	disk	SANBlaze	VLUN P2T1L0	V7.3	fc
sdc	5:0:0:1	disk	SANBlaze	VLUN P2T1L1	V7.3	fc
sdd	5:0:0:2	disk	SANBlaze	VLUN P2T1L2	V7.3	fc
sde	5:0:0:3	disk	SANBlaze	VLUN P2T1L3	V7.3	fc
sdf	5:0:0:4	disk	SANBlaze	VLUN P2T1L4	V7.3	fc

sdg	5:0:0:5	disk	SANBlaze	VLUN P2T1L5	V7.3 fc
sdh	5:0:0:6	disk	SANBlaze	VLUN P2T1L6	V7.3 fc
sdi	5:0:0:7	disk	SANBlaze	VLUN P2T1L7	V7.3 fc
sdj	5:0:0:8	disk	SANBlaze	VLUN P2T1L8	V7.3 fc
sdk	5:0:0:9	disk	SANBlaze	VLUN P2T1L9	V7.3 fc

Configuration information for the host is located in `/sys/class/fc_host/hostX`, where `X` is the number of the SCSI host. In the preceding example, `X` could be 4 or 5. The `hostX` file contains attributes for the FCoE function, such as worldwide port name and fabric ID.

Boot from SAN Considerations

FCoE boot from SAN should work like FC boot from SAN, where the module simply needs to be injected by the driver update disk (DUD) into the installation environment. The disks from any remote targets are discovered automatically. Installation can then proceed as if the remote disks are local disks.

When installing RHEL 7.4, issue the following commands to blacklist the inbox drivers:

1. Boot from the RHEL 7.x installation media with the FCoE target already connected in UEFI.

```
Install Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7.x
```

```
Test this media & install Red Hat Enterprise 7.x
```

```
Troubleshooting -->
```

```
Use the UP and DOWN keys to change the selection
```

```
Press 'e' to edit the selected item or 'c' for a command prompt
```

2. To install an out-of-box driver, type `e`.
3. Select the kernel line, and then type `e`.
4. Issue the following command, and then press ENTER.

```
inst.dd modprobe.blacklist=qed modprobe.blacklist=qede  
modprobe.blacklist=qedr modprobe.blacklist=qedi  
modprobe.blacklist=qedf
```

NOTE

For SLES 12 SPx, to insure that the driver installs properly, mount the DUD ISO image file through virtual media.

11 SR-IOV Configuration

Single root input/output virtualization (SR-IOV) is a specification by the PCI SIG that enables a single PCI Express (PCIe) device to appear as multiple, separate physical PCIe devices. SR-IOV permits isolation of PCIe resources for performance, interoperability, and manageability.

NOTE

Some SR-IOV features may not be fully enabled in the current release.

This chapter provides instructions for:

- [Configuring SR-IOV on Windows](#)
- [Configuring SR-IOV on Linux](#)
- [Configuring SR-IOV on VMware](#)

Configuring SR-IOV on Windows

To configure SR-IOV on Windows:

1. Access the server BIOS System Setup, and then click **System BIOS Settings**.
2. On the System BIOS Settings page, click **Integrated Devices**.

3. On the Integrated Devices page (Figure 11-1):
 - a. Set the **SR-IOV Global Enable** option to **Enabled**.
 - b. Click **Back**.

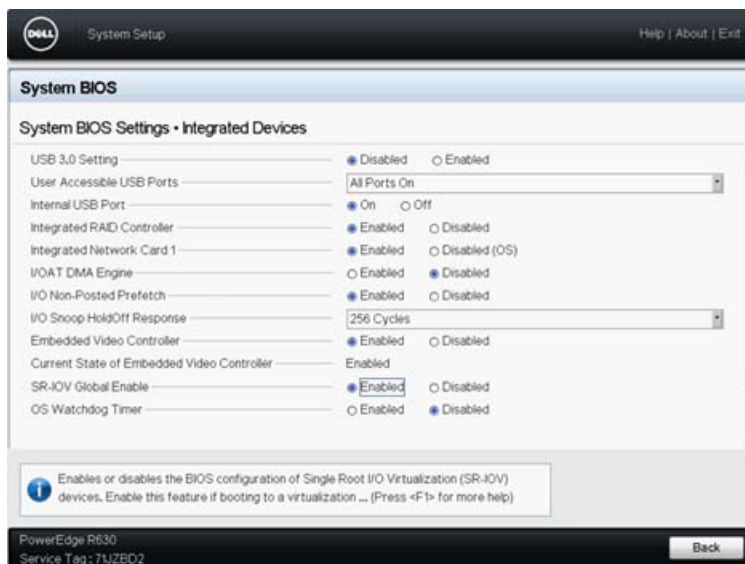


Figure 11-1. System Setup for SR-IOV: Integrated Devices

4. On the Main Configuration Page for the selected adapter, click **Device Level Configuration**.
5. On the Main Configuration Page - Device Level Configuration (Figure 11-2):
 - a. Set the **Virtualization Mode** to **SR-IOV** or **NPAR+SR-IOV** if you are using NPAR mode.
 - b. Click **Back**.



Figure 11-2. System Setup for SR-IOV: Device Level Configuration

6. On the Main Configuration Page, click **Finish**.

7. In the Warning - Saving Changes message box, click **Yes** to save the configuration.
8. In the Success - Saving Changes message box, click **OK**.
9. To enable SR-IOV on the miniport adapter:
 - a. Access Device Manager.
 - b. Open the miniport adapter properties, and then click the **Advanced** tab.
 - c. On the Advanced properties page (Figure 11-3) under **Property**, select **SR-IOV**, and then set the value to **Enabled**.
 - d. Click **OK**.

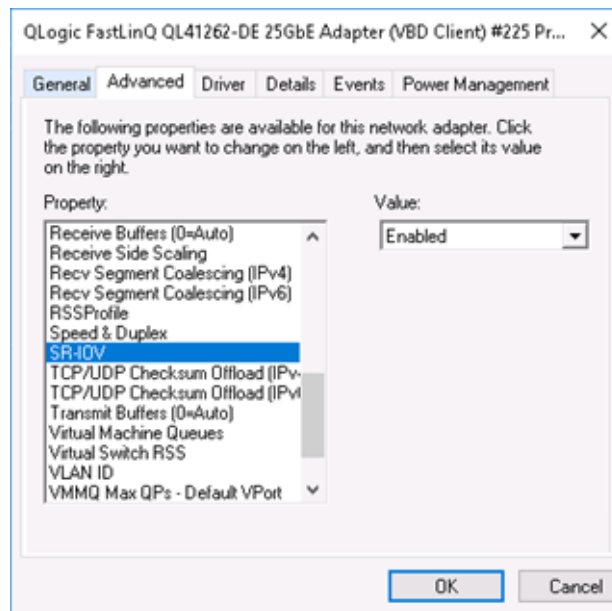


Figure 11-3. Adapter Properties, Advanced: Enabling SR-IOV

10. To create a Virtual Machine Switch with SR-IOV (Figure 11-4 on page 172):
 - a. Launch the Hyper-V Manager.
 - b. Select **Virtual Switch Manager**.
 - c. In the **Name** box, type a name for the virtual switch.
 - d. Under **Connection type**, select **External network**.

- e. Select the **Enable single-root I/O virtualization (SR-IOV)** check box, and then click **Apply**.

NOTE

Be sure to enable SR-IOV when you create the vSwitch. This option is unavailable after the vSwitch is created.

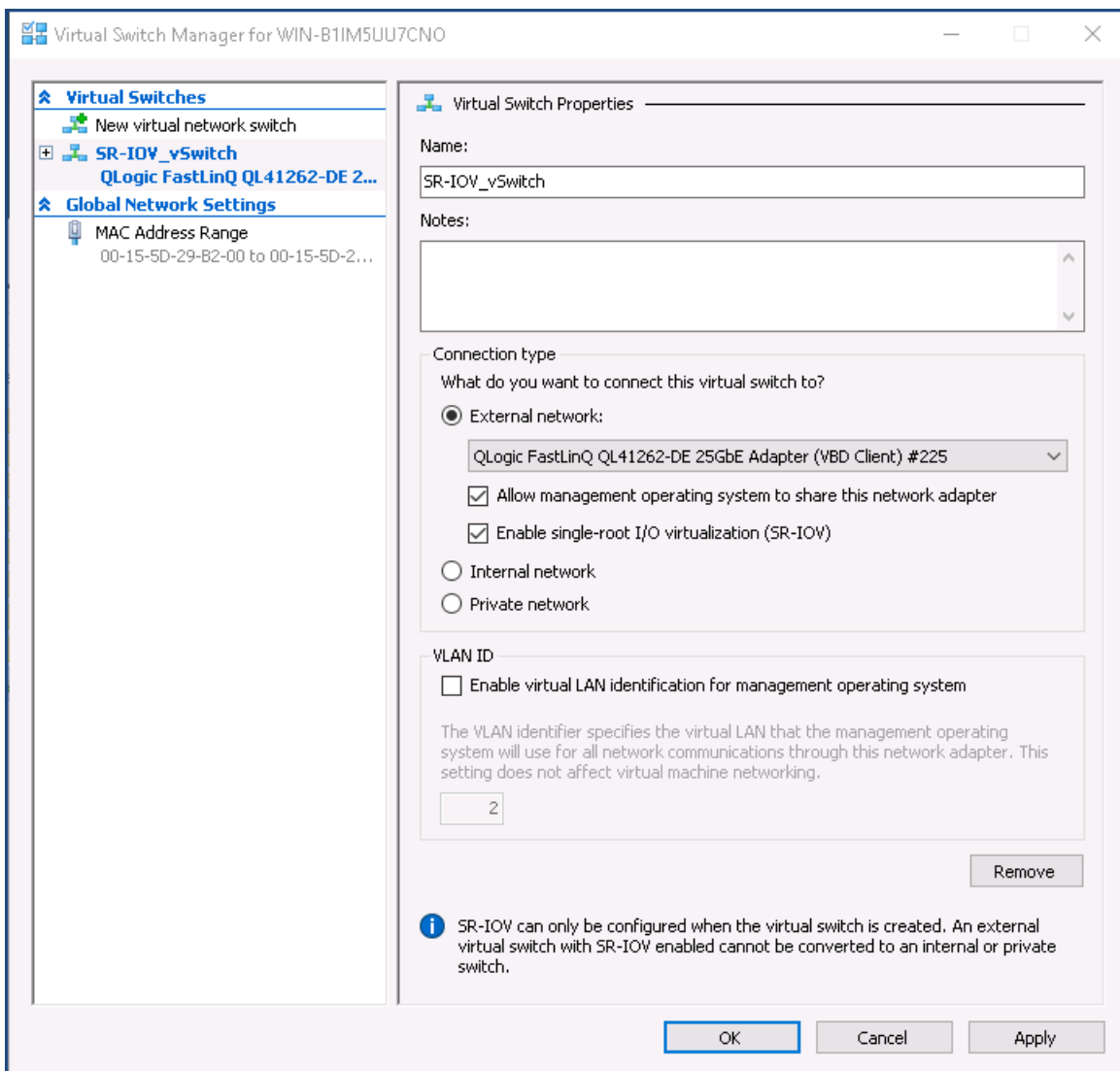


Figure 11-4. Virtual Switch Manager: Enabling SR-IOV

- f. The Apply Networking Changes message box advises you that **Pending changes may disrupt network connectivity**. To save your changes and continue, click **Yes**.
11. To get the virtual machine switch capability, issue the following Windows PowerShell command:

```
PS C:\Users\Administrator> Get-VMSwitch -Name SR-IOV_vSwitch | fl
```

Output of the `Get-VMSwitch` command includes the following SR-IOV capabilities:

<code>IovVirtualFunctionCount</code>	: 96
<code>IovVirtualFunctionsInUse</code>	: 1
12. To create a virtual machine (VM) and export the virtual function (VF) in the VM:
 - a. Create a virtual machine.
 - b. Add the VMNetworkadapter to the virtual machine.
 - c. Assign a virtual switch to the VMNetworkadapter.
 - d. In the Settings for VM <VM_Name> dialog box ([Figure 11-5](#)), Hardware Acceleration page, under **Single-root I/O virtualization**, select the **Enable SR-IOV** check box, and then click **OK**.

NOTE

After the virtual adapter connection is created, the SR-IOV setting can be enabled or disabled at any time (even while traffic is running).

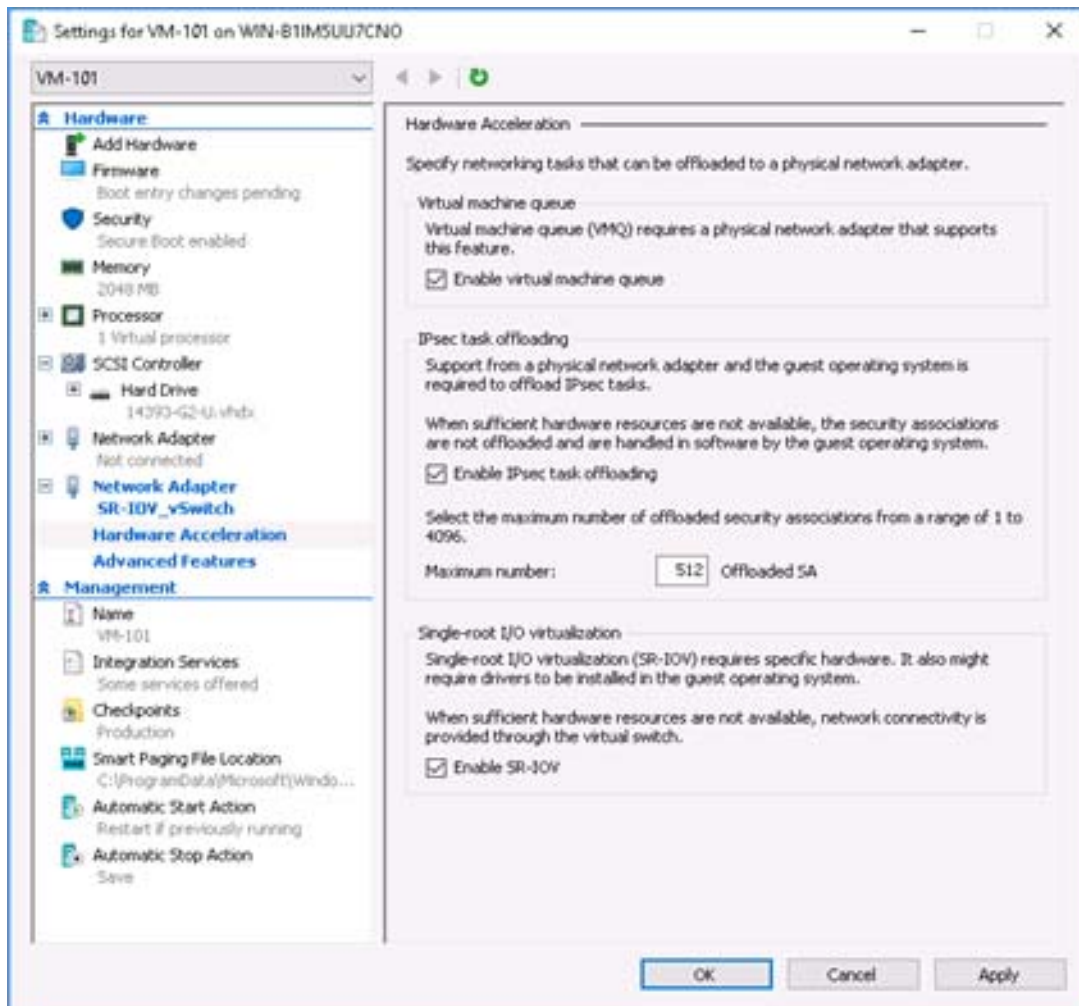


Figure 11-5. Settings for VM: Enabling SR-IOV

13. Install the QLogic drivers for the adapters detected in the VM. Use the latest drivers available from your vendor for your host OS (do not use inbox drivers).

NOTE

Be sure to use the same driver package on both the VM and the host system. For example, use the same qeVBD and qeND driver version on the Windows VM and in the Windows Hyper-V host.

After installing the drivers, the QLogic adapter is listed in the VM.
[Figure 11-6](#) shows an example.

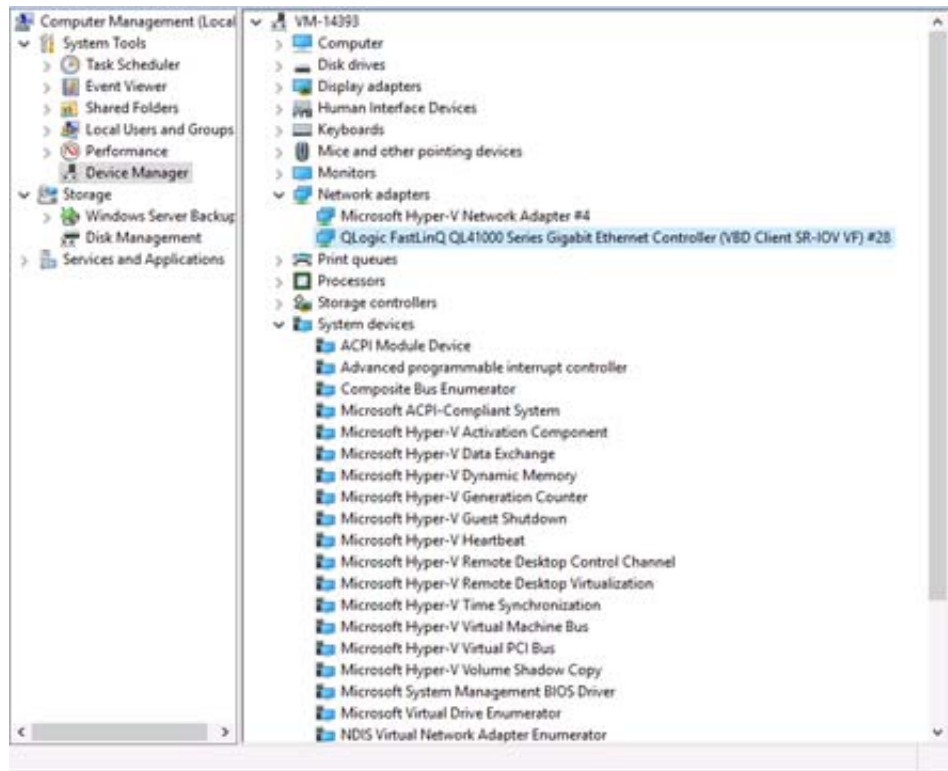


Figure 11-6. Device Manager: VM with QLogic Adapter

14. To view the SR-IOV VF details, issue the following Windows PowerShell command:

```
PS C:\Users\Administrator> Get-NetadapterSriovVf
```

[Figure 11-7](#) shows example output.

```
PS C:\Users\Administrator> Get-NetAdapterSriovVf
Name           FunctionID VPortID MacAddress      VmID              VmFriendlyName
-----
Ethernet 10    0          {2}    00-15-5D-29-B2-01 51F01C52-CDC6-4932-A95E-86D... VM-101
PS C:\Users\Administrator>
```

Figure 11-7. Windows PowerShell Command: Get-NetadapterSriovVf

Configuring SR-IOV on Linux

To configure SR-IOV on Linux:

1. Access the server BIOS System Setup, and then click **System BIOS Settings**.
2. On the System BIOS Settings page, click **Integrated Devices**.
3. On the System Integrated Devices page (see [Figure 11-1 on page 170](#)):
 - a. Set the **SR-IOV Global Enable** option to **Enabled**.
 - b. Click **Back**.
4. On the System BIOS Settings page, click **Processor Settings**.
5. On the Processor Settings ([Figure 11-8](#)) page:
 - a. Set the **Virtualization Technology** option to **Enabled**.
 - b. Click **Back**.

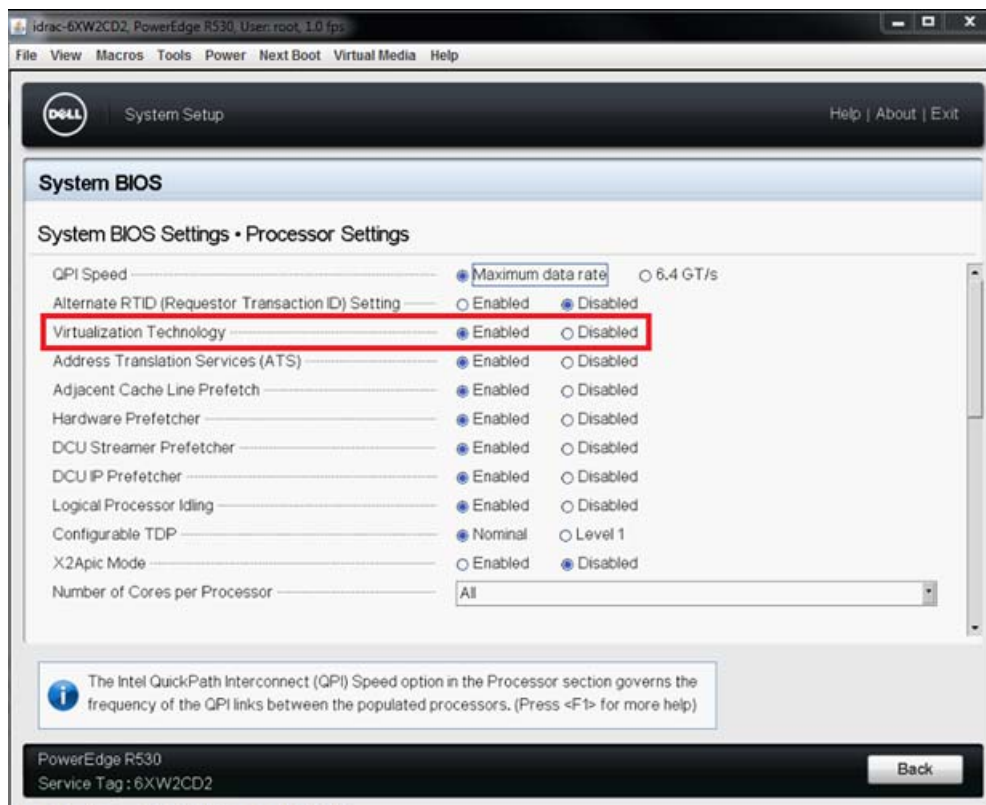


Figure 11-8. System Setup: Processor Settings for SR-IOV

6. On the System Setup page, select Device Settings.

7. On the Device Settings page, select **Port 1** for the QLogic adapter.
8. On the Device Level Configuration page ([Figure 11-9](#)):
 - a. Set the **Virtualization Mode** to **SR-IOV**.
 - b. Click **Back**.



Figure 11-9. System Setup for SR-IOV: Integrated Devices

9. On the Main Configuration Page, click **Finish**, save your settings, and then reboot the system.
10. To enable and verify virtualization:
 - a. Open the `grub.conf` file and configure the `iommu` parameter as shown in [Figure 11-10](#).
 - For Intel-based systems, add `intel_iommu=on`.
 - For AMD-based systems, add `amd_iommu=on`.

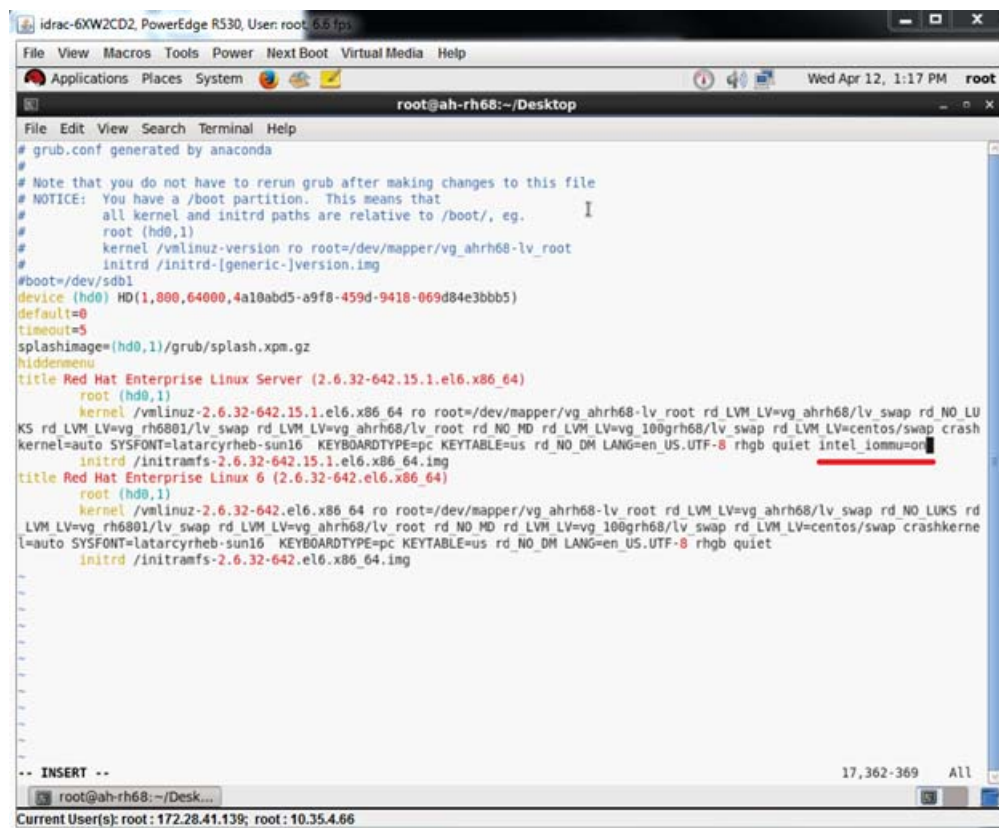


Figure 11-10. Editing the grub.conf File for SR-IOV

- b. Save the `grub.conf` file and then reboot the system.
- c. To verify that the changes are in effect, issue the following command:

```
dmesg | grep -I iommu
```

A successful input–output memory management unit (IOMMU) command output should show, for example:

```
Intel-IOMMU: enabled
```

- d. To view VF details (number of VFs and total VFs), issue the `find /sys/|grep -I sriov` command.
11. For a specific port, enable a quantity of VFs.
- a. Issue the following command to enable, for example, 8 VF on PCI instance 04:00.0 (bus 4, device 0, function 0):
- ```
[root@ah-rh68 ~]# echo 8 > /sys/devices/pci0000:00/0000:00:02.0/0000:04:00.0/sriov_numvfs
```



- b. Review the command output ([Figure 11-11](#)) to confirm that actual VFs were created on bus 4, device 2 (from the 0000:00:02.0 parameter), functions 0 through 7. Note that the actual device ID is different on the PFs (8070 in this example) versus the VFs (9090 in this example).

```
[root@ah-rh68 Desktop]#
[root@ah-rh68 Desktop]# echo 8 > /sys/devices/pci0000:00/0000:00:02.0/0000:04:00.0/sriov_numvfs
[root@ah-rh68 Desktop]#
[root@ah-rh68 Desktop]# lspci -vv|grep -i QLogic
04:00.0 Ethernet controller: QLogic Corp. Device 8070 (rev 02)
Subsystem: QLogic Corp. Device 000b
Product Name: QLogic 25GE 2P QL41262HxCU-DE Adapter
[V4] Vendor specific: NMVQLogic
04:00.1 Ethernet controller: QLogic Corp. Device 8070 (rev 02)
Subsystem: QLogic Corp. Device 000b
Product Name: QLogic 25GE 2P QL41262HxCU-DE Adapter
[V4] Vendor specific: NMVQLogic
04:02.0 Ethernet controller: QLogic Corp. Device 8090 (rev 02)
Subsystem: QLogic Corp. Device 000b
04:02.1 Ethernet controller: QLogic Corp. Device 8090 (rev 02)
Subsystem: QLogic Corp. Device 000b
04:02.2 Ethernet controller: QLogic Corp. Device 8090 (rev 02)
Subsystem: QLogic Corp. Device 000b
04:02.3 Ethernet controller: QLogic Corp. Device 8090 (rev 02)
Subsystem: QLogic Corp. Device 000b
04:02.4 Ethernet controller: QLogic Corp. Device 8090 (rev 02)
Subsystem: QLogic Corp. Device 000b
04:02.5 Ethernet controller: QLogic Corp. Device 8090 (rev 02)
Subsystem: QLogic Corp. Device 000b
04:02.6 Ethernet controller: QLogic Corp. Device 8090 (rev 02)
Subsystem: QLogic Corp. Device 000b
04:02.7 Ethernet controller: QLogic Corp. Device 8090 (rev 02)
Subsystem: QLogic Corp. Device 000b
[root@ah-rh68 Desktop]#
```

**Figure 11-11. Command Output for sriov\_numvfs**

12. To view a list of all PF and VF interfaces, issue the following command:

```
ip link show/ifconfig -a
```

[Figure 11-12](#) shows example output.

```
[root@ah-rh68 Desktop]# ip link show
1: lo: <LOOPBACK,UP,LOWER UP> mtu 65536 qdisc noqueue state UNKNOWN
link/loopback 00:00:00:00:00:00 brd 00:00:00:00:00:00
2: p2p1: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER UP> mtu 1500 qdisc mq state UP qlen 1000
link/ether 00:0e:1e:d6:7c:dc brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
vf 0 MAC 00:00:00:00:00:00, tx rate 10000 (Mbps), spoof checking off
vf 1 MAC 00:00:00:00:00:00, tx rate 10000 (Mbps), spoof checking off
vf 2 MAC 00:00:00:00:00:00, tx rate 10000 (Mbps), spoof checking off
vf 3 MAC 00:00:00:00:00:00, tx rate 10000 (Mbps), spoof checking off
vf 4 MAC 00:00:00:00:00:00, tx rate 10000 (Mbps), spoof checking off
vf 5 MAC 00:00:00:00:00:00, tx rate 10000 (Mbps), spoof checking off
vf 6 MAC 00:00:00:00:00:00, tx rate 10000 (Mbps), spoof checking off
vf 7 MAC 00:00:00:00:00:00, tx rate 10000 (Mbps), spoof checking off
```

**Figure 11-12. Command Output for ip link show Command**

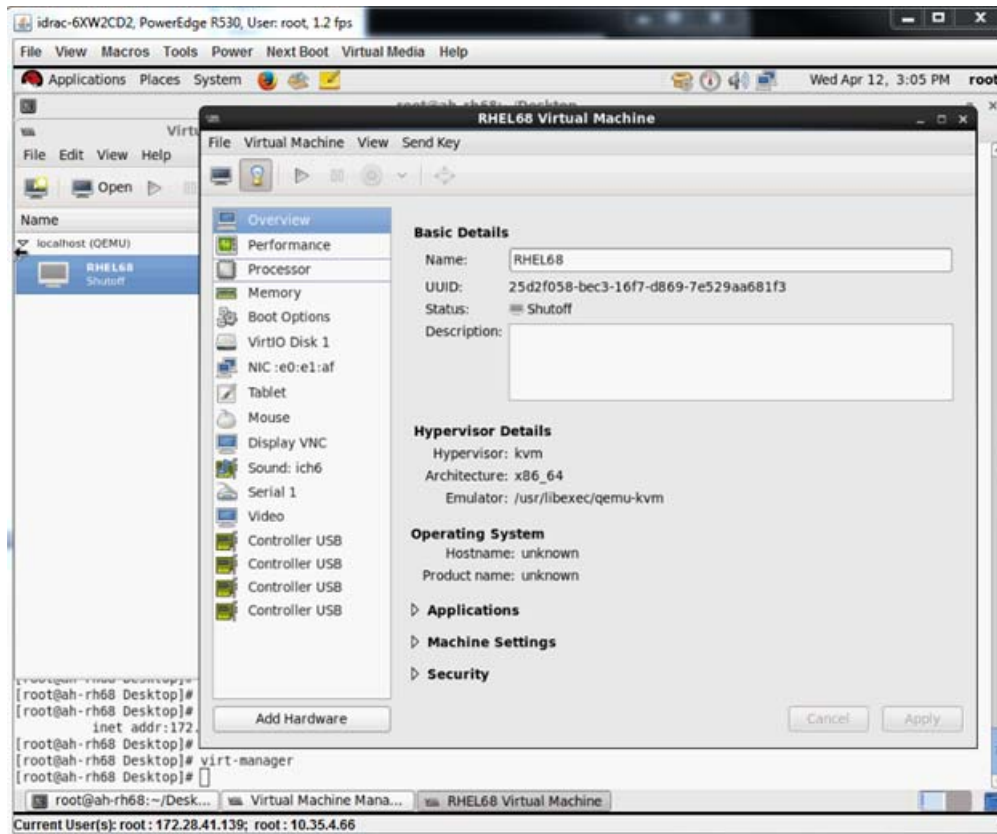
13. Assign and verify MAC addresses:

- a. To assign a MAC address to the VF, issue the following command:

```
ip link set <pf device> vf <vf index> mac <mac address>
```

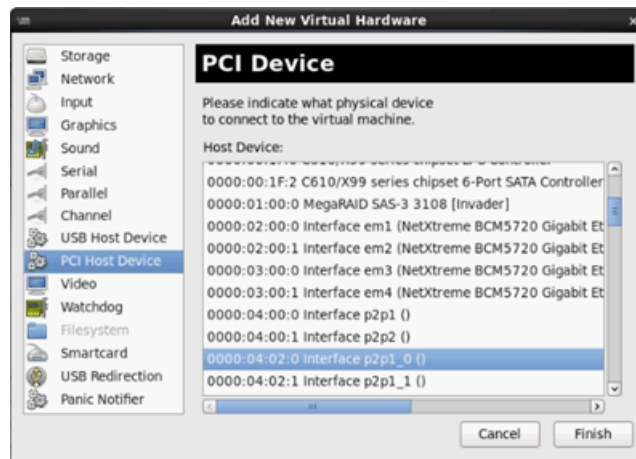


- b. Ensure that the VF interface is up and running with the assigned MAC address.
14. Power off the VM and attach the VF. (Some OSs support hot-plugging of VFs to the VM.)
  - a. In the Virtual Machine dialog box (Figure 11-13), click **Add Hardware**.



**Figure 11-13. RHEL68 Virtual Machine**

- b. In the left pane of the Add New Virtual Hardware dialog box (Figure 11-14), click **PCI Host Device**.
    - c. In the right pane, select a host device.
    - d. Click **Finish**.



**Figure 11-14. Add New Virtual Hardware**

15. Power on the VM and then issue the following command:  
**check lspci -vv|grep -I ether**
16. Install the drivers for the adapters detected in the VM. Use the latest drivers available from your vendor for your host OS (do not use inbox drivers). The same driver version must be installed on the host and the VM.
17. As needed, add more VFs in the VM.

## Configuring SR-IOV on VMware

**To configure SR-IOV on VMware:**

1. Access the server BIOS System Setup, and then click **System BIOS Settings**.
2. On the System BIOS Settings page, click **Integrated Devices**.
3. On the Integrated Devices page (see [Figure 11-1 on page 170](#)):
  - a. Set the **SR-IOV Global Enable** option to **Enabled**.
  - b. Click **Back**.
4. On the System Setup window, click **Device Settings**.
5. On the Device Settings page, select a port for the 25G 41xxx Series Adapter.
6. On the Device Level Configuration (see [Figure 11-2 on page 170](#)):
  - a. Set the **Virtualization Mode** to **SR-IOV**.
  - b. Click **Back**.

7. On the Main Configuration Page, click **Finish**.
8. Save the configuration settings and reboot the system.
9. To enable the needed quantity of VFs per port (in this example, 16 on each port of a dual-port adapter), issue the following command:

```
"esxcfg-module -s "max_vfs=16,16" qedentv"
```

---

**NOTE**

Each Ethernet function of the 41xxx Series Adapter must have it's own entry.

---

10. Reboot the host.
11. To verify that the changes are complete at the module level, issue the following command:

```
"esxcfg-module -g qedentv"
```

```
[root@localhost:~] esxcfg-module -g qedentv
qedentv enabled = 1 options = 'max_vfs=16,16'
```

12. To verify if actual VFs were created, issue the `lspci` command as follows:

```
[root@localhost:~] lspci | grep -i QLogic | grep -i 'ethernet\|network' | more
0000:05:00.0 Network controller: QLogic Corp. QLogic FastLinQ QL41xxx 10/25
GbE Ethernet Adapter [vmnic6]
0000:05:00.1 Network controller: QLogic Corp. QLogic FastLinQ QL41xxx 10/25
GbE Ethernet Adapter [vmnic7]
0000:05:02.0 Network controller: QLogic Corp. QLogic FastLinQ QL41xxx Series
10/25 GbE Controller (SR-IOV VF) [PF_0.5.0_VF_0]
0000:05:02.1 Network controller: QLogic Corp. QLogic FastLinQ QL41xxx Series
10/25 GbE Controller (SR-IOV VF) [PF_0.5.0_VF_1]
0000:05:02.2 Network controller: QLogic Corp. QLogic FastLinQ QL41xxx Series
10/25 GbE Controller (SR-IOV VF) [PF_0.5.0_VF_2]
0000:05:02.3 Network controller: QLogic Corp. QLogic FastLinQ QL41xQL41xxxxx
Series 10/25 GbE Controller (SR-IOV VF) [PF_0.5.0_VF_3]
.
.
.
0000:05:03.7 Network controller: QLogic Corp. QLogic FastLinQ QL41xxx Series
10/25 GbE Controller (SR-IOV VF) [PF_0.5.0_VF_15]
0000:05:0e.0 Network controller: QLogic Corp. QLogic FastLinQ QL41xxx Series
10/25 GbE Controller (SR-IOV VF) [PF_0.5.1_VF_0]
0000:05:0e.1 Network controller: QLogic Corp. QLogic FastLinQ QL41xxx Series
10/25 GbE Controller (SR-IOV VF) [PF_0.5.1_VF_1]
```

```
0000:05:0e.2 Network controller: QLogic Corp. QLogic FastLinQ QL41xxx Series
10/25 GbE Controller (SR-IOV VF) [PF_0.5.1_VF_2]
0000:05:0e.3 Network controller: QLogic Corp. QLogic FastLinQ QL41xxx Series
10/25 GbE Controller (SR-IOV VF) [PF_0.5.1_VF_3]
.
.
.
0000:05:0f.6 Network controller: QLogic Corp. QLogic FastLinQ QL41xxx Series
10/25 GbE Controller (SR-IOV VF) [PF_0.5.1_VF_14]
0000:05:0f.7 Network controller: QLogic Corp. QLogic FastLinQ QL41xxx Series
10/25 GbE Controller (SR-IOV VF) [PF_0.5.1_VF_15]
```

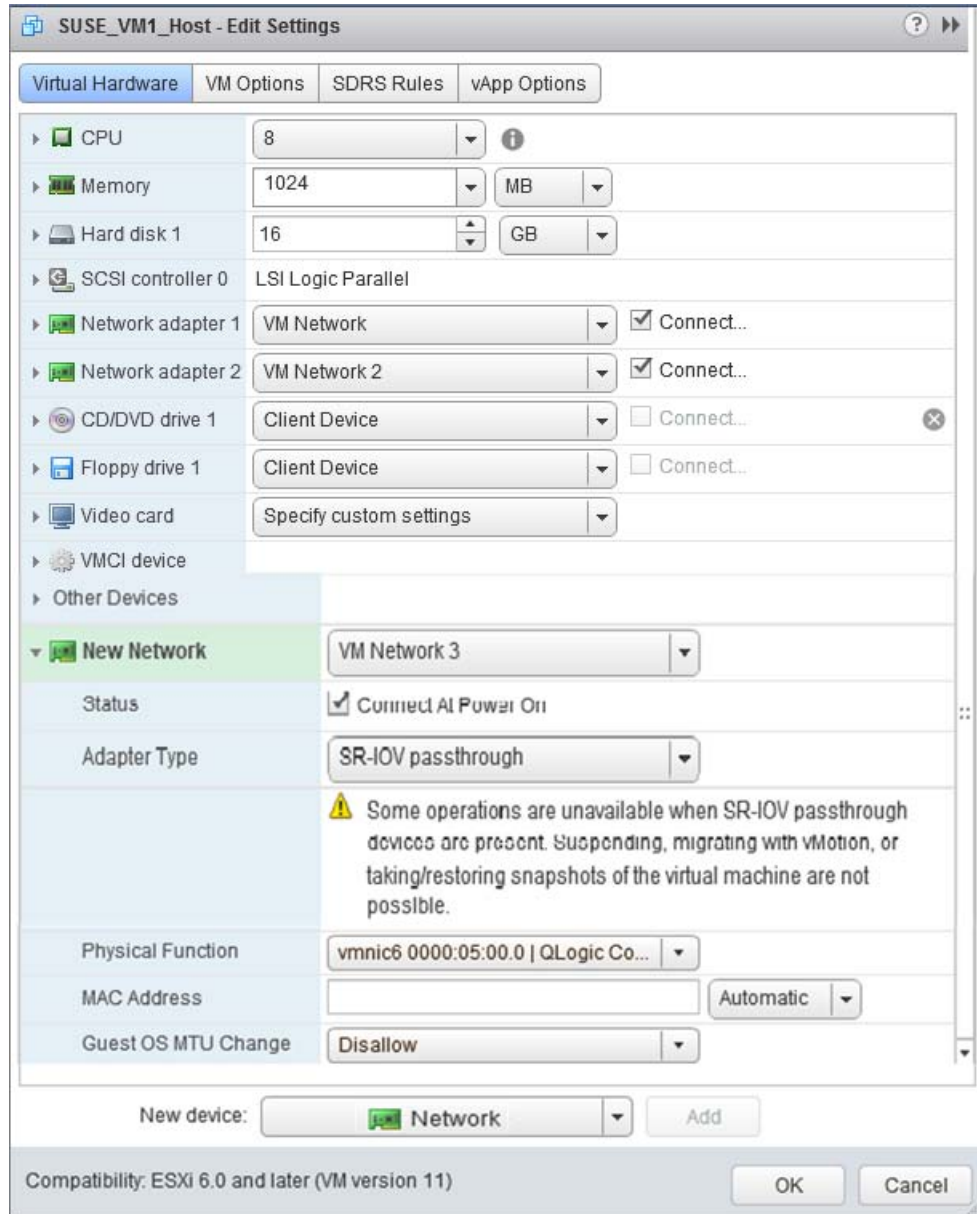
13. To validate the VFs per port, issue the `esxcli` command as follows:

```
[root@localhost:~] esxcli network sriovnic vf list -n vmnic6
```

| VF ID | Active | PCI Address | Owner World ID |
|-------|--------|-------------|----------------|
| ----- | -----  | -----       | -----          |
| 0     | true   | 005:02.0    | 60591          |
| 1     | true   | 005:02.1    | 60591          |
| 2     | false  | 005:02.2    | -              |
| 3     | false  | 005:02.3    | -              |
| 4     | false  | 005:02.4    | -              |
| 5     | false  | 005:02.5    | -              |
| 6     | false  | 005:02.6    | -              |
| 7     | false  | 005:02.7    | -              |
| 8     | false  | 005:03.0    | -              |
| 9     | false  | 005:03.1    | -              |
| 10    | false  | 005:03.2    | -              |
| 11    | false  | 005:03.3    | -              |
| 12    | false  | 005:03.4    | -              |
| 13    | false  | 005:03.5    | -              |
| 14    | false  | 005:03.6    | -              |
| 15    | false  | 005:03.7    | -              |

14. Attach VFs to the VM as follows:
  - a. Power off the VM and attach the VF. (Some OSs support hot-plugging of VFs to the VM.)
  - b. Add a host to a VMware vCenter Server Virtual Appliance (vCSA).
  - c. Click **Edit Settings** of the VM.
15. Complete the Edit Settings dialog box ([Figure 11-15](#)) as follows:
  - a. In the **New Device** box, select **Network**, and then click **Add**.
  - b. For **Adapter Type**, select **SR-IOV Passthrough**.
  - c. For **Physical Function**, select the QLogic VF.

- d. To save your configuration changes and close this dialog box, click **OK**.



**Figure 11-15. VMware Host Edit Settings**

16. Power on the VM, and then issue the `ifconfig -a` command to verify that the added network interface is listed.

17. Install the QLogic drivers for the adapters detected in the VM. Use the latest drivers available from your vendor for your host OS (do not use inbox drivers). The same driver version must be installed on the host and the VM.
18. As needed, add more VFs in the VM.

# 12 NVMe-oF Configuration with RDMA

Non-Volatile Memory Express over Fabrics (NVMe-oF) enables the use of alternate transports to PCIe to extend the distance over which an NVMe host device and an NVMe storage drive or subsystem can connect. NVMe-oF defines a common architecture that supports a range of storage networking fabrics for the NVMe block storage protocol over a storage networking fabric. This architecture includes enabling a front-side interface into storage systems, scaling out to large quantities of NVMe devices, and extending the distance within a data center over which NVMe devices and NVMe subsystems can be accessed.

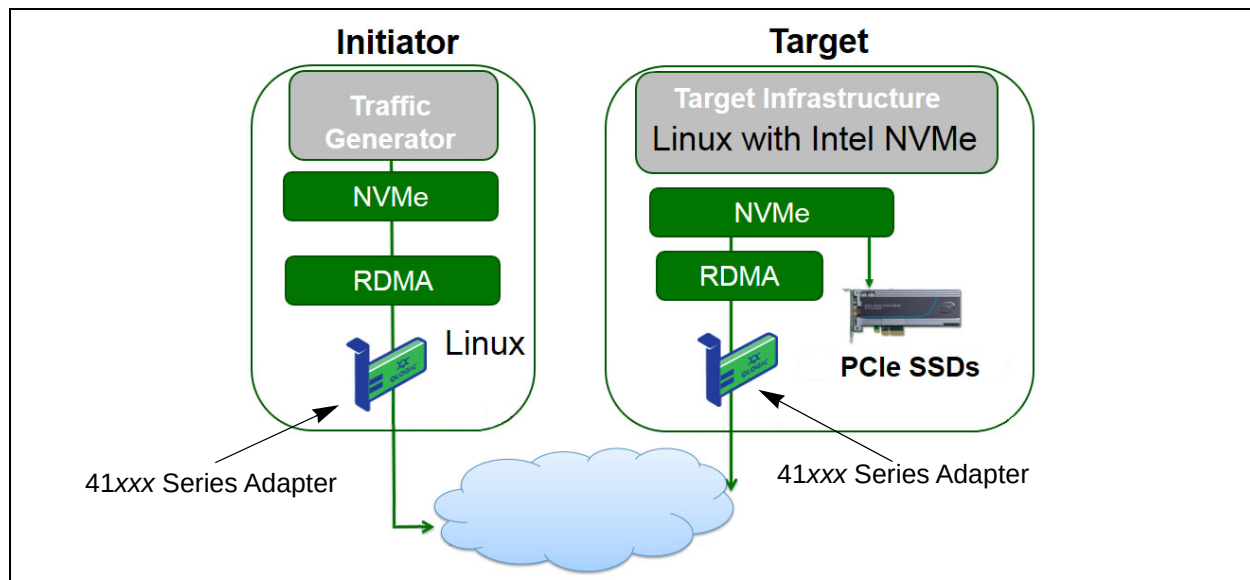
The NVMe-oF configuration procedures and options described in this chapter apply to Ethernet-based RDMA protocols, including RoCE and iWARP. The development of NVMe-oF with RDMA is defined by a technical sub-group of the NVMe organization.

This chapter demonstrates how to configure NVMe-oF for a simple network. The example network comprises the following:

- Two servers: an initiator and a target. The target server is equipped with a PCIe SSD drive.
- Operating system: RHEL 7.4 or SLES 12 SP3 on both servers
- Two adapters: One 41xxx Series Adapter installed in each server
- An optional switch configured for data center bridging (DCB) and relevant quality of service (QoS) policy



Figure 12-1 illustrates an example network.



**Figure 12-1. NVMe-oF Network**

The NVMe-oF configuration process covers the following procedures:

1. [Installing Device Drivers on Both Servers](#)
2. [Configuring the Target Server](#)
3. [Configuring the Initiator Server](#)
4. [Preconditioning the Target Server](#)
5. [Testing the NVMe-oF Devices](#)
6. [Optimizing Performance](#)

## Installing Device Drivers on Both Servers

After installing your operating system (RHEL 7.4 or SLES 12 SP3), install device drivers on both servers.

1. Install and load the FastLinQ drivers (QED, QEDE, libqedr/QEDR) following all installation instructions in the README.
2. Enable and start the RDMA service.

```
systemctl enable rdma
systemctl start rdma.service
```

Disregard the RDMA Service Failed error. All OFED modules required by QEDR are already loaded.

## Configuring the Target Server

You configure the target server after the reboot process. After the server is operating, you cannot change the configuration without rebooting. If you are using a startup script to configure the target server, consider pausing the script (using the `wait` command or something similar) as needed to ensure that each command finishes before executing the next command.

### To configure the target service:

1. Load target modules. Issue the following commands after each server reboot:

```
modprobe qedr
modprobe nvmet; modprobe nvmet-rdma
lsmod | grep nvme (confirm that the modules are loaded)
```

2. Create the target subsystem (NQN) with the name indicated by `<nvme-subsystem-name>`.

```
mkdir /sys/kernel/config/nvmet/subsystems/<nvme-subsystem-name>
cd /sys/kernel/config/nvmet/subsystems/<nvme-subsystem-name>
```

3. Create multiple unique NQNs for additional NVMe devices as needed.

4. Set the target parameters, as listed in [Table 12-1](#).

**Table 12-1. Target Parameters**

| Command                                                                                         | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| # <b>echo 1 &gt; attr_allow_any_host</b>                                                        | Allow any host to connect.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| # <b>mkdir namespaces/1</b>                                                                     | Create a namespace                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| # <b>echo -n /dev/nvme0n1 &gt; namespaces/1/device_path</b>                                     | Set the NVMe device path. The NVMe device path can differ between systems. Check the device path using the <code>lsblk</code> command. This system has two NVMe devices: <code>nvme0n1</code> and <code>nvme1n1</code> .<br><br><pre>[root@localhost home]# lsblk NAME        MAJ:MIN RM  SIZE RO TYPE MOUNTPOINT nvme1n1     259:0    0 372.6G  0 disk sda         8:0      0   1.1T  0 disk ├─sda2       8:2      0   505G  0 part / ├─sda3       8:3      0     8G  0 part [SWAP] └─sda1       8:1      0     1G  0 part /boot/efi nvme0n1     259:1    0 372.6G  0 disk</pre> |
| # <b>echo 1 &gt; namespaces/1/enable</b>                                                        | Enable the namespace.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| # <b>mkdir /sys/kernel/config/nvmet/ports/1</b><br># <b>cd /sys/kernel/config/nvmet/ports/1</b> | Create NVMe port 1.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| # <b>echo 1.1.1.1 &gt; addr_traddr</b>                                                          | Set the same IP address. For example, 1.1.1.1 is the IP address for the target port of the 41xxx Series Adapter.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| # <b>echo rdma &gt; addr_trtype</b>                                                             | Set the transport type RDMA.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| # <b>echo 4420 &gt; addr_trsvcid</b>                                                            | Set the RDMA port number. The socket port number for NVMe-oF is typically 4420. However, any port number can be used if it is used consistently throughout the configuration.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| # <b>echo ipv4 &gt; addr_adrfam</b>                                                             | Set the IP address type.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |

5. Create a symbolic link (symlink) to the newly created NQN subsystem::  

```
ln -s /sys/kernel/config/nvmet/subsystems/
nvme-subsystem-name subsystems/nvme-subsystem-name
```
6. Confirm that the NVMe target is listening on the port as follows:  

```
dmesg | grep nvmet_rdma
[8769.470043] nvmet_rdma: enabling port 1 (1.1.1.1:4420)
```

## Configuring the Initiator Server

You configure the initiator server after the reboot process. After the server is operating, you cannot change the configuration without rebooting. If you are using a startup script to configure the initiator server, consider pausing the script (using the `wait` command or something similar) as needed to ensure that each command finishes before executing the next command.

### To configure the initiator server:

1. Load the NVMe modules. Issue these commands after each server reboot:

```
modprobe qedr
modprobe nvme-rdma
```

2. Download, compile and install the `nvme-cli` Initiator utility. Issue these commands at the first configuration—you do not need to issue these commands after each reboot.

```
git clone https://github.com/linux-nvme/nvme-cli.git
cd nvme-cli
make && make install
```

3. Verify the installation version as follows:

```
nvme version
```

4. Discover the NVMe-oF target as follows:

```
nvme discover -t rdma -a 1.1.1.1 -s 1023
```

Make note of the subsystem NQN (subnqn) of the discovered target (Figure 12-2) for use in Step 5.

```
[root@localhost home]# nvme discover -t rdma -a 1.1.1.1 -s 1023
Discovery Log Number of Records 1, Generation counter 1
=====Discovery Log Entry 0=====
trtype: rdma
adrfam: ipv4
subtype: nvme subsystem
treq: not specified
portid: 1
trsvcid: 1023
subnqn: nvme-qlogic-tgt1
traddr: 1.1.1.1
rdma_prtype: not specified
rdma_qptype: connected
rdma_cms: rdma-cm
rdma_pkey: 0x0000
```

**Figure 12-2. Subsystem NQN**

5. Connect to the discovered NVMe-oF target (nvme-qlogic-tgt1) using NQN. Issue the following command after each server reboot. For example:  

```
nvme connect -t rdma -n nvme-qlogic-tgt1 -a 1.1.1.1 -s 1023
```
6. Confirm the NVMe-oF target connection with the NVMe-oF device as follows:  

```
dmesg | grep nvme
lsblk
list nvme
```

Figure 12-3 shows an example.

```
[95146.257048] nvme nvme0: new ctrl: NQN "nvme-qlogic-tgt1", addr 1.1.1.1:1023
[root@localhost home]#
[root@localhost home]# lsblk
NAME MAJ:MIN RM SIZE RO TYPE MOUNTPOINT
sda 8:0 0 1.1T 0 disk
├─sda2 8:2 0 493.2G 0 part /
├─sda3 8:3 0 8G 0 part [SWAP]
└─sda1 8:1 0 1G 0 part /boot/efi
nvme0n1 259:0 0 372.6G 0 disk
```

**Figure 12-3. Confirm NVMe-oF Connection**

## Preconditioning the Target Server

NVMe target servers that are tested out-of-the-box show a higher-than-expected performance. Before running a benchmark, the target server needs to be *prefilled* or *preconditioned*.

**To precondition the target server:**

1. Secure-erase the target server with vendor-specific tools (similar to formatting). This test example uses an Intel NVMe SSD device, which requires the Intel Data Center Tool that is available at the following link:  
<https://downloadcenter.intel.com/download/23931/Intel-Solid-State-Drive-Data-Center-Tool>
2. Precondition the target server (nvme0n1) with data, which guarantees that all available memory is filled. This example uses the "DD" disk utility:  

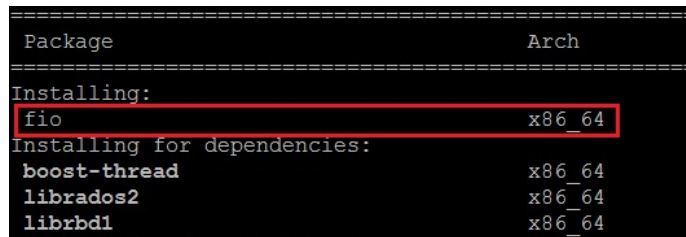
```
dd if=/dev/zero bs=1024k of=/dev/nvme0n1
```

## Testing the NVMe-oF Devices

Compare the latency of the local NVMe device on the target server with that of the NVMe-oF device on the initiator server to show the latency that NVMe adds to the system.

1. Update the Repository (Repo) source and install the Flexible Input/Output (FIO) benchmark utility on both the target and initiator servers as follows:

```
yum install fio
```



| Package                      | Arch   |
|------------------------------|--------|
| Installing:                  |        |
| fio                          | x86_64 |
| Installing for dependencies: |        |
| boost-thread                 | x86_64 |
| librados2                    | x86_64 |
| librbd1                      | x86_64 |

**Figure 12-4. FIO Utility Installation**

2. Run the FIO utility to measure the latency of the initiator NVMe-Of device. Issue the following command:

```
fio --filename=/dev/nvme0n1 --direct=1 --time_based
--rw=randread --refill_buffers --norandommap --randrepeat=0
--ioengine=libaio --bs=4k --iodepth=1 --numjobs=1
--runtime=60 --group_reporting --name=temp.out
```

FIO reports two latency types: submission and completion. Submission latency (slat) measures application-to-kernel latency. Completion latency (clat), measures end-to-end kernel latency. The industry-accepted method is to read *clat percentiles* in the 99.00th range.

In this example, the initiator device NVMe-oF latency is 30usec.

3. Run FIO to measure the latency of the local NVMe device on the target server. Issue the following command:

```
fio --filename=/dev/nvme0n1 --direct=1 --time_based
--rw=randread --refill_buffers --norandommap --randrepeat=0
--ioengine=libaio --bs=4k --iodepth=1 --numjobs=1
--runtime=60 --group_reporting --name=temp.out
```

In this example, the target NVMe device latency is 8µsec. The total latency that results from the use of NVMe-oF is the difference between the initiator device NVMe-oF latency (30µsec) and the target device NVMe-oF latency (8µsec), or 22µsec.

4. Run FIO to measure bandwidth of the local NVMe device on the target server. Issue the following command:

```
fio --verify=crc32 --do_verify=1 --bs=8k --numjobs=1
--iodepth=32 --loops=1 --ioengine=libaio --direct=1
--invalidate=1 --fsync_on_close=1 --randrepeat=1
--norandommap --time_based --runtime=60
--filename=/dev/nvme0n1 --name=Write-BW-to-NVMe-Device
--rw=randwrite
```

where `--rw` can be `randread` for reads only, `randwrite` for writes only, and `randrw` for reads and writes.

## Optimizing Performance

To optimize performance on both initiator and target servers:

1. Configure the following system BIOS settings:
  - ☐ Power Profiles = 'Max Performance' or equivalent
  - ☐ ALL C-States = disabled
  - ☐ Hyperthreading = disabled
2. Configure the Linux kernel parameters by editing the `grub` file (`/etc/default/grub`).
  - a. Add parameters to end of line `GRUB_CMDLINE_LINUX`:

```
GRUB_CMDLINE_LINUX="nosoftlockup intel_idle.max_cstate=0
processor.max_cstate=1 mce=ignore_ce idle=poll"
```
  - b. Save the `grub` file.
  - c. Rebuild the `grub` file. To rebuild the `grub` file for a legacy BIOS boot, issue the following command:

```
grub2-mkconfig -o /boot/grub2/grub.cfg
```

 (Legacy BIOS boot)  
To rebuild the `grub` file for an EFI boot, issue the following command:

```
grub2-mkconfig -o /boot/efi/EFI/<os>/grub.cfg
```

 (EFI boot)
  - d. Reboot the server to implement the changes.
3. Set the IRQ affinity for all 41xxx Series Adapters. The `multi_rss-affin.sh` file is a script file that is listed in [“.IRQ Affinity \(multi\\_rss-affin.sh\)” on page 196](#).

```
systemctl stop irqbalance
./multi_rss-affin.sh eth1
```

4. Set the CPU frequency. The `cpufreq.sh` file is a script that is listed in [“CPU Frequency \(cpufreq.sh\)” on page 197](#).

**# ./cpufreq.sh**

The following sections list the scripts that are used in [Steps 3](#) and [4](#).



## .IRQ Affinity (multi\_rss-affin.sh)

The following script sets the IRQ affinity.

```
#!/bin/bash
#RSS affinity setup script
#input: the device name (ethX)
#OFFSET=0 0/1 0/1/2 0/1/2/3
#FACTOR=1 2 3 4
OFFSET=0
FACTOR=1
LASTCPU='cat /proc/cpuinfo | grep processor | tail -n1 | cut -d":" -f2'
MAXCPUID='echo 2 $LASTCPU ^ p | dc'
OFFSET='echo 2 $OFFSET ^ p | dc'
FACTOR='echo 2 $FACTOR ^ p | dc'
CPUID=1

for eth in $*; do

NUM='grep $eth /proc/interrupts | wc -l'
NUM_FP=$((${NUM}))

INT='grep -m 1 $eth /proc/interrupts | cut -d ":" -f 1'

echo "$eth: ${NUM} (${NUM_FP} fast path) starting irq ${INT}"

CPUID=$((CPUID*OFFSET))
for ((A=1; A<=${NUM_FP}; A=${A}+1)) ; do
INT='grep -m $A $eth /proc/interrupts | tail -1 | cut -d ":" -f 1'
SMP='echo $CPUID 16 o p | dc'
echo ${INT} smp affinity set to ${SMP}
echo $((${SMP})) > /proc/irq/${INT}/smp_affinity
CPUID=$((CPUID*FACTOR))
if [${CPUID} -gt ${MAXCPUID}]; then
CPUID=1
CPUID=$((CPUID*OFFSET))
fi
done
done
```

## CPU Frequency (cpufreq.sh)

The following script sets the CPU frequency.

```
#Usage "./nameofscript.sh"
grep -E '^model name|^cpu MHz' /proc/cpuinfo
cat /sys/devices/system/cpu/cpu0/cpufreq/scaling_governor
for CPUFREQ in /sys/devices/system/cpu/cpu*/cpufreq/scaling_governor; do [-f
$CPUFREQ] || continue; echo -n performance > $CPUFREQ; done
cat /sys/devices/system/cpu/cpu0/cpufreq/scaling_governor
```

### To configure the network or memory settings:

```
sysctl -w net.ipv4.tcp_mem="16777216 16777216 16777216"
sysctl -w net.ipv4.tcp_wmem="4096 65536 16777216"
sysctl -w net.ipv4.tcp_rmem="4096 87380 16777216"
sysctl -w net.core.wmem_max=16777216
sysctl -w net.core.rmem_max=16777216
sysctl -w net.core.wmem_default=16777216
sysctl -w net.core.rmem_default=16777216
sysctl -w net.core.optmem_max=16777216
sysctl -w net.ipv4.tcp_low_latency=1
sysctl -w net.ipv4.tcp_timestamps=0
sysctl -w net.ipv4.tcp_sack=1
sysctl -w net.ipv4.tcp_window_scaling=0
sysctl -w net.ipv4.tcp_adv_win_scale=1
```

---

### NOTE

The following commands apply only to the initiator server.

---

```
echo noop > /sys/block/nvme0n1/queue/scheduler
echo 0 > /sys/block/nvme0n1/queue/add_random
echo 2 > /sys/block/nvme0n1/queue/nomerges
```

# 13 Windows Server 2016

This chapter provides the following information for Windows Server 2016:

- [Configuring RoCE Interfaces with Hyper-V](#)
- [RoCE over Switch Embedded Teaming](#)
- [Configuring QoS for RoCE](#)
- [Configuring VMMQ](#)
- [Configuring VXLAN](#)
- [Configuring Storage Spaces Direct](#)
- [Deploying and Managing a Nano Server](#)

## Configuring RoCE Interfaces with Hyper-V

In Windows Server 2016, Hyper-V with Network Direct Kernel Provider Interface (NDKPI) Mode-2, host virtual network adapters (host virtual NICs) support RDMA.

---

### NOTE

DCBX is required for RoCE over Hyper-V. To configure DCBX, either:

- [Configure through the HII \(see “Preparing the Adapter” on page 65\).](#)
  - [Configure using QoS \(see “Configuring QoS for RoCE” on page 205\).](#)
- 

RoCE configuration procedures in this section include:

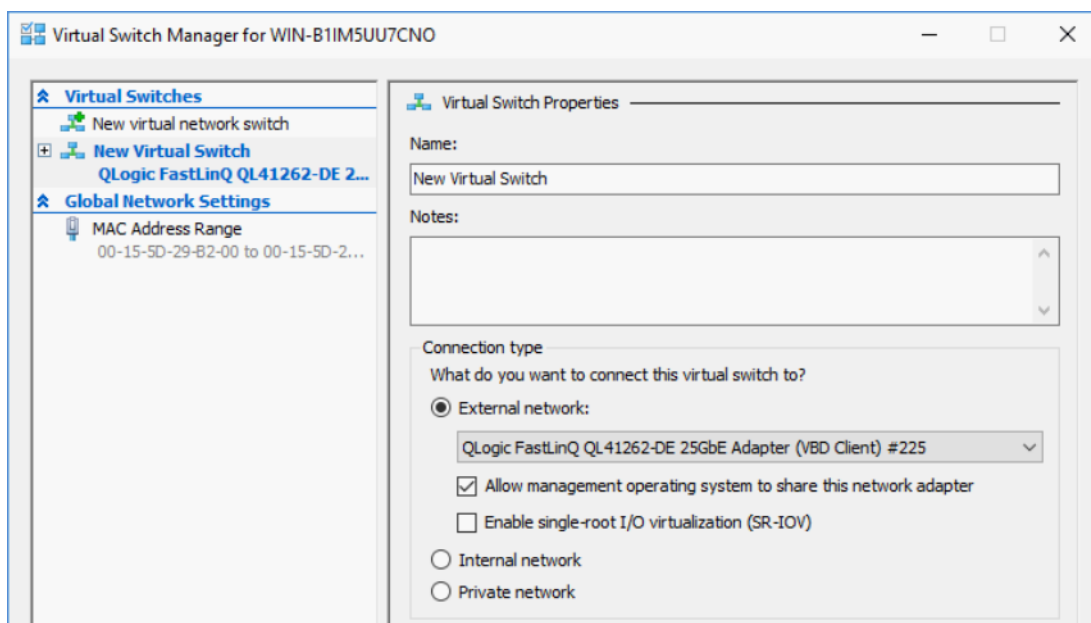
- [Creating a Hyper-V Virtual Switch with an RDMA Virtual NIC](#)
- [Adding a VLAN ID to Host Virtual NIC](#)
- [Verifying If RoCE is Enabled](#)
- [Adding Host Virtual NICs \(Virtual Ports\)](#)
- [Mapping the SMB Drive and Running RoCE Traffic](#)

## Creating a Hyper-V Virtual Switch with an RDMA Virtual NIC

Follow the procedures in this section to create a Hyper-V virtual switch and then enable RDMA in the host VNIC.

**To create a Hyper-V virtual switch with an RDMA virtual NIC:**

1. Launch Hyper-V Manager.
2. Click **Virtual Switch Manager** (see [Figure 13-1](#)).



**Figure 13-1. Enabling RDMA in Host Virtual NIC**

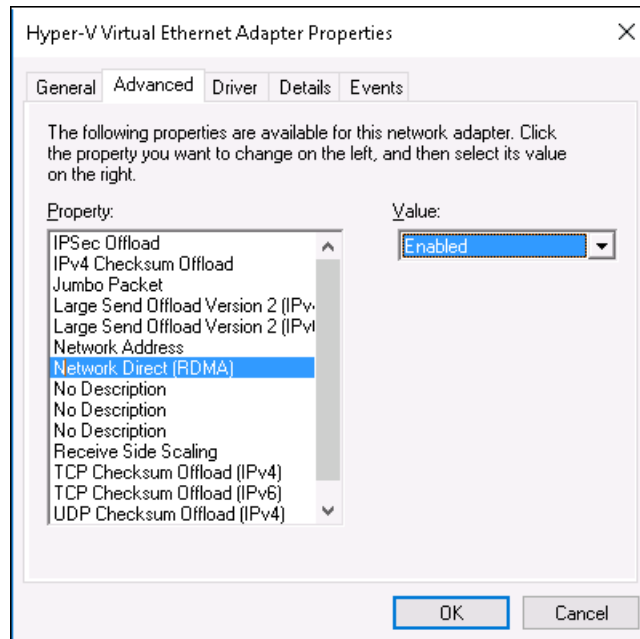
3. Create a virtual switch.
4. Select the **Allow management operating system to share this network adapter** check box.

In Windows Server 2016, a new parameter—Network Direct (RDMA)—is added in the Host virtual NIC.

**To enable RDMA in a host virtual NIC:**

1. Open the Hyper-V Virtual Ethernet Adapter Properties window.
2. Click the **Advanced** tab.
3. On the Advanced page ([Figure 13-2](#)):
  - a. Under **Property**, select **Network Direct (RDMA)**.
  - b. Under **Value**, select **Enabled**.

- c. Click **OK**.



**Figure 13-2. Hyper-V Virtual Ethernet Adapter Properties**

4. To enable RDMA, issue the following Windows PowerShell command:
- ```
PS C:\Users\Administrator> Enable-NetAdapterRdma "vEthernet  
(New Virtual Switch)"  
PS C:\Users\Administrator>
```

Adding a VLAN ID to Host Virtual NIC

To add VLAN ID to a host virtual NIC:

1. To find the host virtual NIC name, issue the following Windows PowerShell command:
- ```
PS C:\Users\Administrator> Get-VMNetworkAdapter -ManagementOS
```

Figure 13-3 shows the command output.

```
PS C:\Users\Administrator> Get-VMNetworkAdapter -ManagementOS
```

| Name               | IsManagementOs | VMName | SwitchName         | MacAddress   | Status | IPAddresses |
|--------------------|----------------|--------|--------------------|--------------|--------|-------------|
| New Virtual Switch | True           |        | New Virtual Switch | 000E1EC41F0B | {Ok}   |             |

**Figure 13-3. Windows PowerShell Command: Get-VMNetworkAdapter**

2. To set the VLAN ID to the host virtual NIC, issue the following Windows PowerShell command:

```
PS C:\Users\Administrator> Set-VMNetworkAdapterVlan
-VMNetworkAdapterName "New Virtual Switch" -VlanId 5 -Access
-Management05
```

#### NOTE

Note the following about adding a VLAN ID to a host virtual NIC:

- A VLAN ID must be assigned to a host virtual NIC. The same VLAN ID must be assigned to all the interfaces, and on the switch.
- Make sure that the VLAN ID is not assigned to the physical Interface when using a host virtual NIC for RoCE.
- If you are creating more than one host virtual NIC, you can assign a different VLAN to each host virtual NIC.

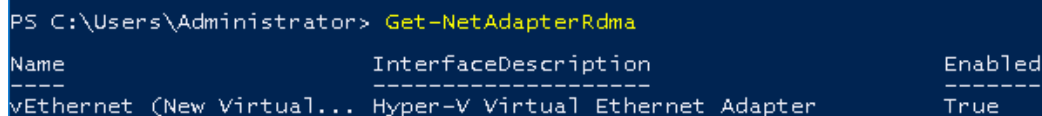
## Verifying If RoCE is Enabled

To verify if the RoCE is enabled:

- Issue the following Windows PowerShell command:

```
Get-NetAdapterRdma
```

Command output lists the RDMA supported adapters as shown in [Figure 13-4](#).



```
PS C:\Users\Administrator> Get-NetAdapterRdma
```

| Name                      | InterfaceDescription             | Enabled |
|---------------------------|----------------------------------|---------|
| ----                      | -----                            | -----   |
| vEthernet (New Virtual... | Hyper-V Virtual Ethernet Adapter | True    |

**Figure 13-4. Windows PowerShell Command: Get-NetAdapterRdma**

## Adding Host Virtual NICs (Virtual Ports)

To add host virtual NICs:

1. To add a host virtual NIC, issue the following command:  

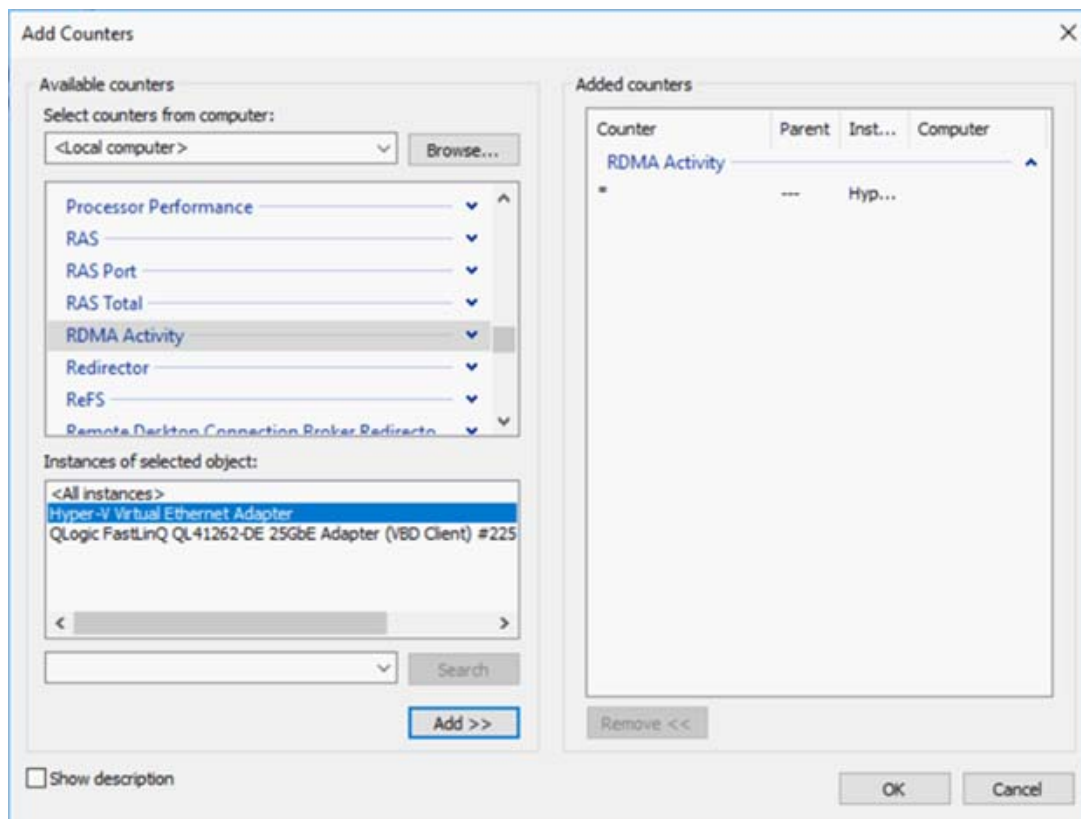
```
Add-VMNetworkAdapter -SwitchName "New Virtual Switch" -Name
SMB - Management05
```
2. Enable RDMA on host virtual NICs as shown in [“To enable RDMA in a host virtual NIC:” on page 199](#).
3. To assign a VLAN ID to the virtual port, issue the following command:  

```
Set-VMNetworkAdapterVlan -VMNetworkAdapterName SMB -VlanId 5
-Access -Management05
```

## Mapping the SMB Drive and Running RoCE Traffic

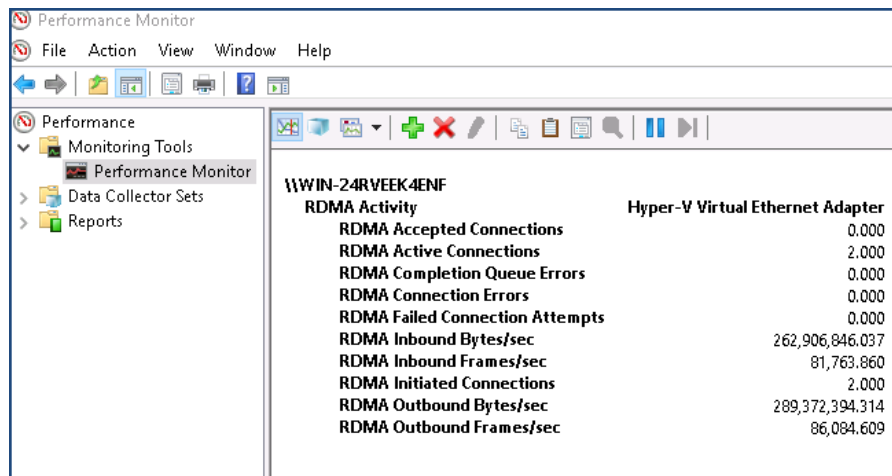
To map the SMB drive and run the RoCE traffic:

1. Launch the Performance Monitor (Perfmon).
2. Complete the Add Counters dialog box (Figure 13-5) as follows:
  - a. Under **Available counters**, select **RDMA Activity**.
  - b. Under **Instances of selected object**, select the adapter.
  - c. Click **Add**.



**Figure 13-5. Add Counters Dialog Box**

If the RoCE traffic is running, counters appear as shown in [Figure 13-6](#).



**Figure 13-6. Performance Monitor Shows RoCE Traffic**

## RoCE over Switch Embedded Teaming

Switch Embedded Teaming (SET) is Microsoft's alternative NIC teaming solution available to use in environments that include Hyper-V and the Software Defined Networking (SDN) stack in Windows Server 2016 Technical Preview. SET integrates limited NIC Teaming functionality into the Hyper-V Virtual Switch.

Use SET to group between one and eight physical Ethernet network adapters into one or more software-based virtual network adapters. These adapters provide fast performance and fault tolerance if a network adapter failure occurs. To be placed on a team, SET member network adapters must all be installed in the same physical Hyper-V host.

RoCE over SET procedures included in this section:

- [Creating a Hyper-V Virtual Switch with SET and RDMA Virtual NICs](#)
- [Enabling RDMA on SET](#)
- [Assigning a VLAN ID on SET](#)
- [Running RDMA Traffic on SET](#)



## Creating a Hyper-V Virtual Switch with SET and RDMA Virtual NICs

To create a Hyper-V virtual switch with SET and RDMA virtual NICs:

- To create a SET, issue the following Windows PowerShell command:

```
PS C:\Users\Administrator> New-VMSwitch -Name SET
-NetAdapterName "Ethernet 2","Ethernet 3"
-EnableEmbeddedTeaming $true
```

Figure 13-7 shows command output.

```
PS C:\Users\Administrator> New-VMSwitch -Name SET -NetAdapterName "Ethernet 2","Ethernet 3" -EnableEmbeddedTeaming $true
Name SwitchType NetAdapterInterfaceDescription

SET External Teamed-Interface
```

**Figure 13-7. Windows PowerShell Command: New-VMSwitch**

## Enabling RDMA on SET

To enable RDMA on SET:

1. To view the SET on the adapter, issue the following Windows PowerShell command:

```
PS C:\Users\Administrator> Get-NetAdapter "vEthernet (SET)"
```

Figure 13-8 shows command output.

```
PS C:\Users\Administrator> Get-NetAdapter "vEthernet (SET)"
Name InterfaceDescription ifIndex Status MacAddress LinkSpeed

vEthernet (SET) Hyper-V Virtual Ethernet Adapter 46 Up 00-0E-1E-C4-04-F8 50 Gbps
```

**Figure 13-8. Windows PowerShell Command: Get-NetAdapter**

2. To enable RDMA on SET, issue the following Windows PowerShell command:

```
PS C:\Users\Administrator> Enable-NetAdapterRdma "vEthernet
(SET)"
```

## Assigning a VLAN ID on SET

To assign a VLAN ID on SET:

- To assign a VLAN ID on SET, issue the following Windows PowerShell command:

```
PS C:\Users\Administrator> Set-VMNetworkAdapterVlan
-VMNetworkAdapterName "SET" -VlanId 5 -Access -ManagementOS
```

#### NOTE

Note the following when adding a VLAN ID to a host virtual NIC:

- Make sure that the VLAN ID is not assigned to the physical Interface when using host virtual NIC for RoCE.
- If you are creating more than one host virtual NIC, a different VLAN can be assigned to each host virtual NIC.

## Running RDMA Traffic on SET

For information about running RDMA traffic on SET, go to:

<https://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/mt403349.aspx>

## Configuring QoS for RoCE

The two methods of configuring quality of service (QoS) include:

- [Configuring QoS by Disabling DCBX on the Adapter](#)
- [Configuring QoS by Enabling DCBX on the Adapter](#)

### Configuring QoS by Disabling DCBX on the Adapter

All configuration must be completed on all of the systems in use before configuring quality of service by disabling DCBX on the adapter. The priority-based flow control (PFC), enhanced transition services (ETS), and traffic classes configuration must be the same on the switch and server.

**To configure QoS by disabling DCBX:**

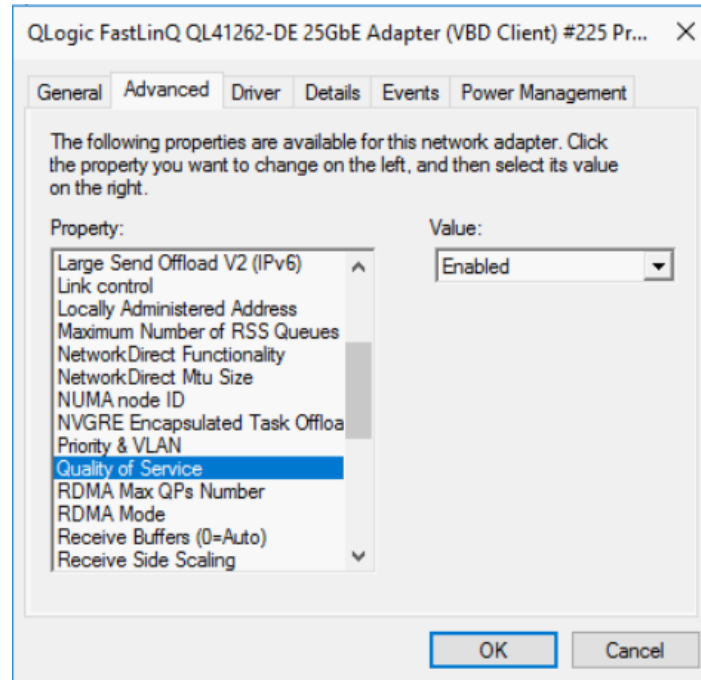
1. Disable DCBX on the adapter.
2. Using HII, set the **RoCE Priority** to **0**.
3. To install the DCB role in the host, issue the following Windows PowerShell command:

```
PS C:\Users\Administrators> Install-WindowsFeature
Data-Center-Bridging
```

4. To set the **DCBX Willing** mode to **False**, issue the following Windows PowerShell command:

```
PS C:\Users\Administrators> set-NetQosDcbxSetting -Willing 0
```

5. Enable QoS in the miniport as follows:
  - a. Open the miniport window, and then click the **Advanced** tab.
  - b. On the adapter's Advanced Properties page (Figure 13-9) under **Property**, select **Quality of Service**, and then set the value to **Enabled**.
  - c. Click **OK**.



**Figure 13-9. Advanced Properties: Enable QoS**

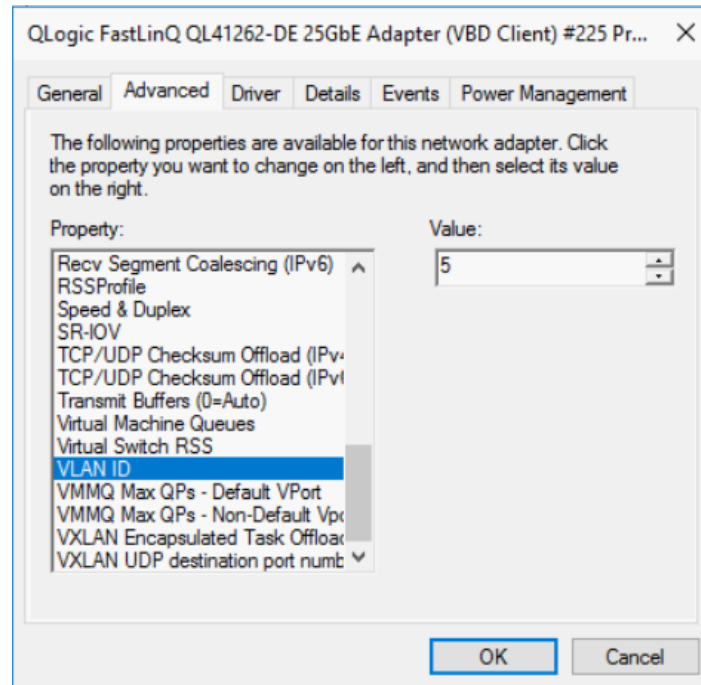
6. Assign the VLAN ID to the interface as follows:
  - a. Open the miniport window, and then click the **Advanced** tab.
  - b. On the adapter's Advanced Properties page (Figure 13-10) under **Property**, select **VLAN ID**, and then set the value.
  - c. Click **OK**.

---

**NOTE**

The preceding step is required for priority flow control (PFC).

---



**Figure 13-10. Advanced Properties: Setting VLAN ID**

7. To enable priority flow control for RoCE on a specific priority, issue the following command:

```
PS C:\Users\Administrators> Enable-NetQoSFlowControl
-Priority 4
```

---

**NOTE**

If configuring RoCE over Hyper-V, do not assign a VLAN ID to the physical interface.

---

8. To disable priority flow control on any other priority, issue the following commands:

```
PS C:\Users\Administrator> Disable-NetQosFlowControl 0,1,2,3,5,6,7
```

```
PS C:\Users\Administrator> Get-NetQosFlowControl
```

| Priority | Enabled | PolicySet | IfIndex | IfAlias |
|----------|---------|-----------|---------|---------|
| -----    | -----   | -----     | -----   | -----   |
| 0        | False   | Global    |         |         |
| 1        | False   | Global    |         |         |
| 2        | False   | Global    |         |         |
| 3        | False   | Global    |         |         |
| 4        | True    | Global    |         |         |
| 5        | False   | Global    |         |         |
| 6        | False   | Global    |         |         |
| 7        | False   | Global    |         |         |

9. To configure QoS and assign relevant priority to each type of traffic, issue the following commands (where Priority 4 is tagged for RoCE and Priority 0 is tagged for TCP):

```
PS C:\Users\Administrators> New-NetQosPolicy "SMB"
-NetDirectPortMatchCondition 445 -PriorityValue8021Action 4 -PolicyStore
ActiveStore
```

```
PS C:\Users\Administrators> New-NetQosPolicy "TCP" -IPProtocolMatchCondition
TCP -PriorityValue8021Action 0 -Policystore ActiveStore
```

```
PS C:\Users\Administrator> Get-NetQosPolicy -PolicyStore activestore
```

```
Name : tcp
Owner : PowerShell / WMI
NetworkProfile : All
Precedence : 127
JobObject :
IPProtocol : TCP
PriorityValue : 0
```

```
Name : smb
Owner : PowerShell / WMI
NetworkProfile : All
Precedence : 127
JobObject :
NetDirectPort : 445
PriorityValue : 4
```

10. To configure ETS for all traffic classes defined in the previous step, issue the following commands:

```
PS C:\Users\Administrators> New-NetQoSTrafficClass -name "RDMA class"
-priority 4 -bandwidthPercentage 50 -Algorithm ETS
```

```
PS C:\Users\Administrators> New-NetQoSTrafficClass -name "TCP class" -priority
0 -bandwidthPercentage 30 -Algorithm ETS
```

```
PS C:\Users\Administrator> Get-NetQoSTrafficClass
```

| Name       | Algorithm | Bandwidth(%) | Priority | PolicySet | IfIndex | IfAlias |
|------------|-----------|--------------|----------|-----------|---------|---------|
| [Default]  | ETS       | 20           | 2-3,5-7  | Global    |         |         |
| RDMA class | ETS       | 50           | 4        | Global    |         |         |
| TCP class  | ETS       | 30           | 0        | Global    |         |         |

11. To see the network adapter QoS from the preceding configuration, issue the following Windows PowerShell command:

```
PS C:\Users\Administrator> Get-NetAdapterQos
```

```
Name : SLOT 4 Port 1
Enabled : True
Capabilities :
Hardware Current

MacSecBypass : NotSupported NotSupported
DcbxSupport : None None
NumTCs(Max/ETS/PFC) : 4/4/4 4/4/4

OperationalTrafficClasses : TC TSA Bandwidth Priorities
-- --
0 ETS 20% 2-3,5-7
1 ETS 50% 4
2 ETS 30% 0

OperationalFlowControl : Priority 4 Enabled
OperationalClassifications : Protocol Port/Type Priority

Default 0
NetDirect 445 4
```

12. Create a startup script to make the settings persistent across the system reboots.
13. Run RDMA traffic and verify as described in [“RoCE Configuration” on page 62](#).

## Configuring QoS by Enabling DCBX on the Adapter

All configuration must be completed on all of the systems in use. The PFC, ETS, and traffic classes configuration must be the same on the switch and server.

### To configure QoS by enabling DCBX:

1. Enable DCBX (IEEE, CEE, or Dynamic).
2. Using HII, set the **RoCE Priority** to **0**.
3. To install the DCB role in the host, issue the following Windows PowerShell command:

```
PS C:\Users\Administrators> Install-WindowsFeature
Data-Center-Bridging
```

---

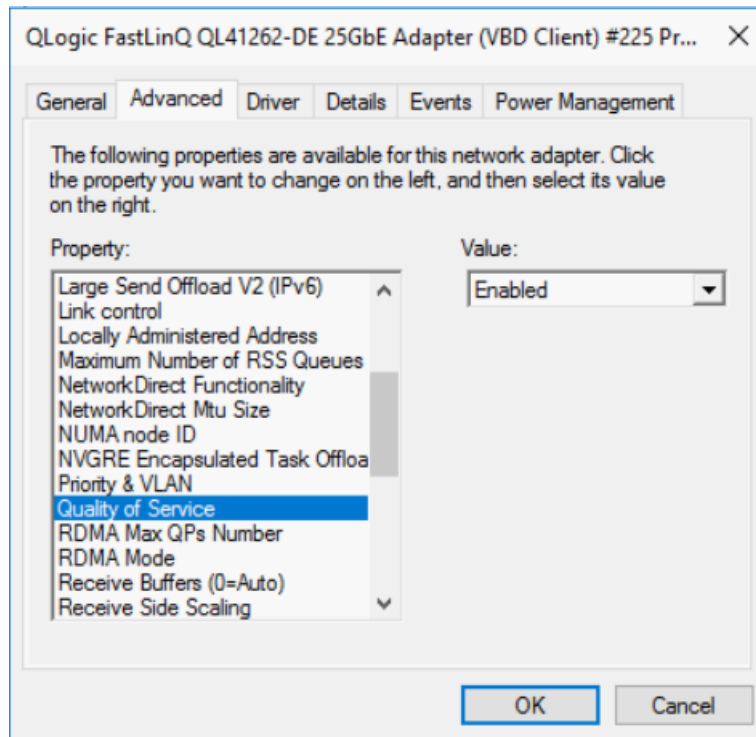
#### NOTE

For this configuration, set **DCBX Protocol** to **CEE**.

---

4. To set the **DCBX Willing** mode to **True**, issue the following command:  
PS C:\Users\Administrators> **set-NetQosDcbxSetting -Willing 1**

5. Enable QoS in the miniport as follows:
  - a. On the adapter's Advanced Properties page (Figure 13-11) under **Property**, select **Quality of Service**, and then set the value to **Enabled**.
  - b. Click **OK**.

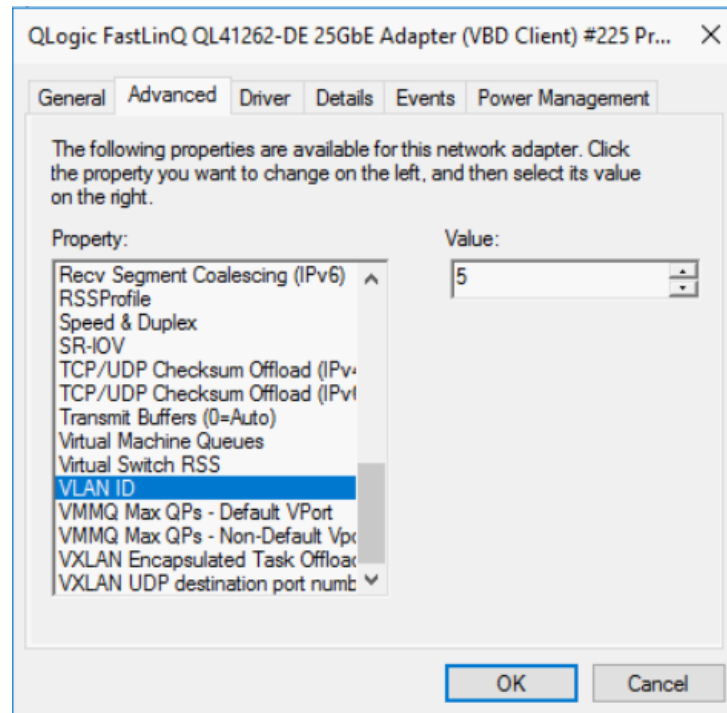


**Figure 13-11. Advanced Properties: Enabling QoS**

6. Assign the VLAN ID to the interface (required for PFC) as follows:
  - a. Open the miniport window, and then click the **Advanced** tab.
  - b. On the adapter's Advanced Properties page (Figure 13-12) under **Property**, select **VLAN ID**, and then set the value.



- c. Click **OK**.



**Figure 13-12. Advanced Properties: Setting VLAN ID**

7. To configure the switch, issue the following Windows PowerShell command:

```
PS C:\Users\Administrators> Get-NetAdapterQoS
```

```
Name : Ethernet 5
Enabled : True
Capabilities :
 Hardware Current

 MacSecBypass : NotSupported NotSupported
 DcbxSupport : CEE CEE
 NumTCs(Max/ETS/PFC) : 4/4/4 4/4/4

OperationalTrafficClasses : TC TSA Bandwidth Priorities
 -- --
 0 ETS 5% 0-3, 5-7
 1 ETS 95% 4

OperationalFlowControl : Priority 4 Enabled
OperationalClassifications : Protocol Port/Type Priority

```

```

 NetDirect 445 4

RemoteTrafficClasses : TC TSA Bandwidth Priorities
 -- --- -
 0 ETS 5% 0-3,5-7
 1 ETS 95% 4

RemoteFlowControl : Priority 4 Enabled
RemoteClassifications : Protocol Port/Type Priority

 NetDirect 445 4

```

#### NOTE

The preceding example is taken when the adapter port is connected to an Arista 7060X switch. In this example, the switch PFC is enabled on Priority 4. RoCE App TLVs are defined. The two traffic classes are defined as TC0 and TC1, where TC1 is defined for RoCE. **DCBX Protocol** mode is set to **CEE**. For Arista switch configuration, refer to [“Preparing the Ethernet Switch” on page 65](#). When the adapter is in **Willing** mode, it accepts Remote Configuration and shows it as **Operational Parameters**.

## Configuring VMMQ

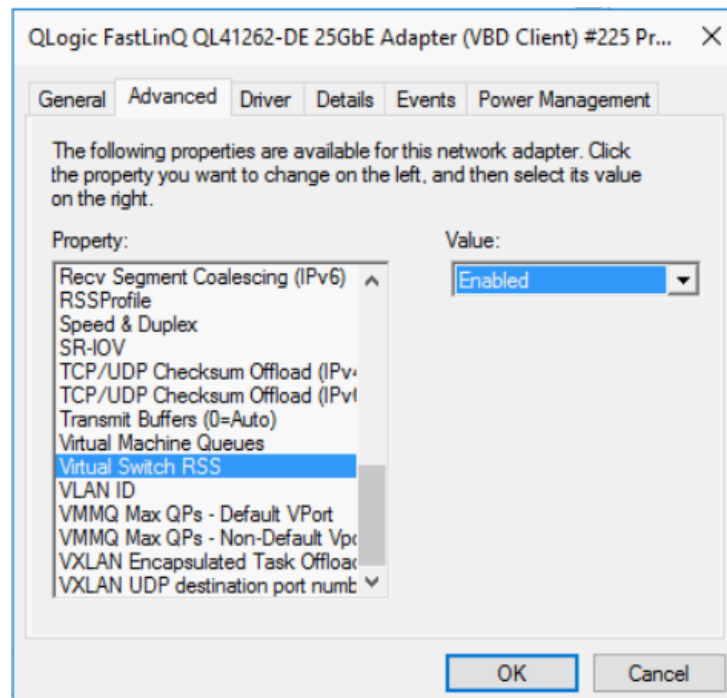
Virtual machine multiqueue (VMMQ) configuration information includes:

- [Enabling VMMQ on the Adapter](#)
- [Setting the VMMQ Max QPs Default and Non-Default VPort](#)
- [Creating a Virtual Machine Switch with or Without SR-IOV](#)
- [Enabling VMMQ on the Virtual Machine Switch](#)
- [Getting the Virtual Machine Switch Capability](#)
- [Creating a VM and Enabling VMMQ on VMNetworkadapters in the VM](#)
- [Default and Maximum VMMQ Virtual NIC](#)
- [Enabling and Disabling VMMQ on a Management NIC](#)
- [Monitoring Traffic Statistics](#)

## Enabling VMMQ on the Adapter

To enable VMMQ on the adapter:

1. Open the miniport window, and then click the **Advanced** tab.
2. On the Advanced Properties page (Figure 13-13) under **Property**, select **Virtual Switch RSS**, and then set the value to **Enabled**.
3. Click **OK**.

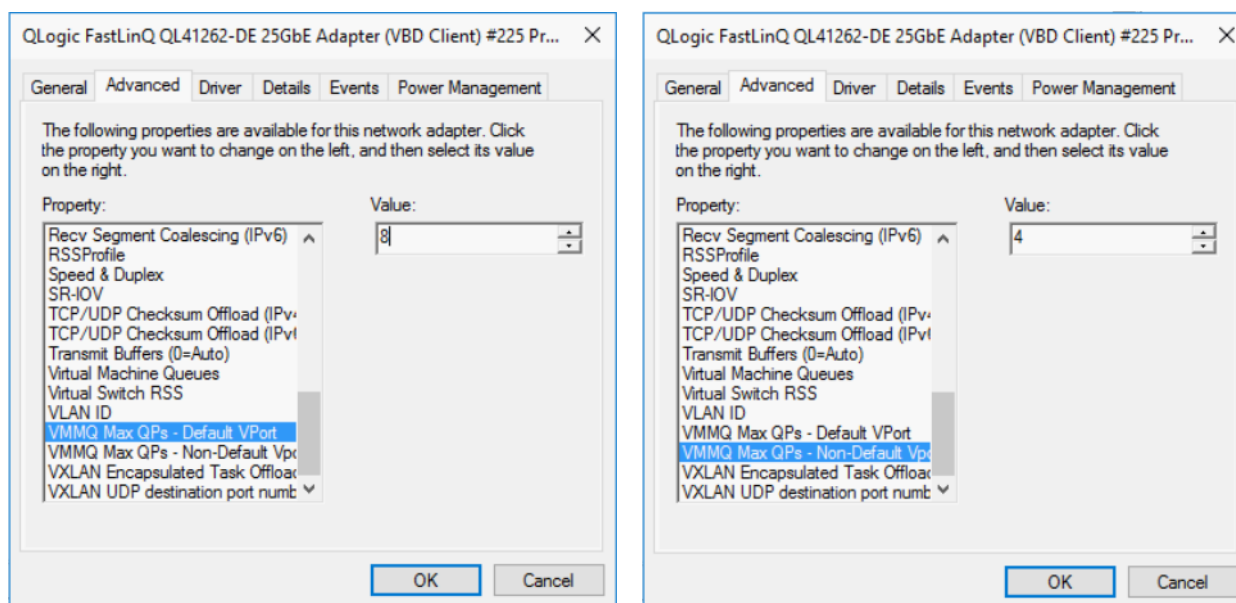


**Figure 13-13. Advanced Properties: Enabling Virtual Switch RSS**

## Setting the VMMQ Max QPs Default and Non-Default VPort

To set the VMMQ maximum QPs default and non-default VPort:

1. Open the miniport window, and click the **Advanced** tab.
2. On the Advanced Properties page (Figure 13-14) under **Property**, select one of the following:
  - ☐ **VMMQ Max QPs Default VPort**
  - ☐ **VMMQ Max QPs - Non-Default VPort**
3. If applicable, adjust the **Value** for the selected property.



**Figure 13-14. Advanced Properties: Setting VMMQ**

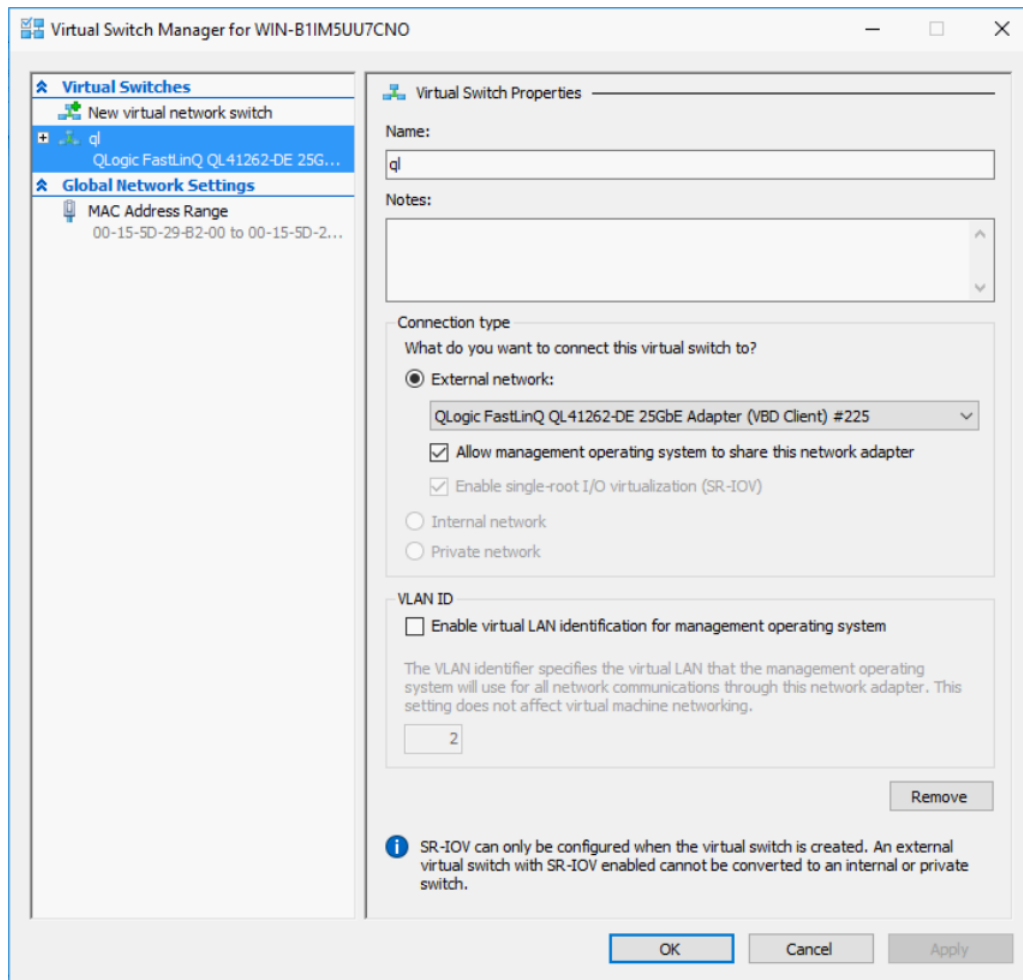
4. Click **OK**.

## Creating a Virtual Machine Switch with or Without SR-IOV

To create a virtual machine switch with or without SR-IOV:

1. Launch the Hyper-V Manager.
2. Select **Virtual Switch Manager** (see Figure 13-15).
3. In the **Name** box, type a name for the virtual switch.

4. Under **Connection type**:
  - a. Click **External network**.
  - b. Select the **Allow management operating system to share this network adapter** check box.



**Figure 13-15. Virtual Switch Manager**

5. Click **OK**.

## Enabling VMMQ on the Virtual Machine Switch

To enable VMMQ on the virtual machine switch:

- Issue the following Windows PowerShell command:  

```
PS C:\Users\Administrators> Set-VMSwitch -name q1
-defaultqueuevmmqenabled $true -defaultqueuevmmqqueuepairs 4
```

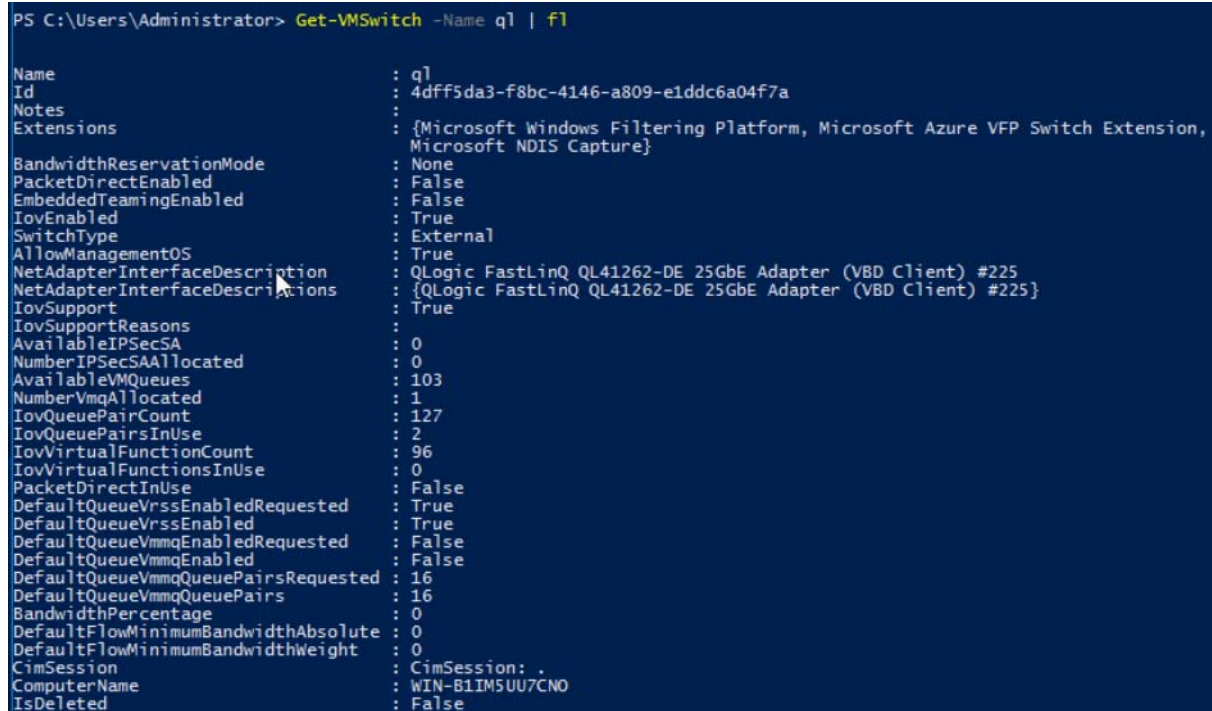
## Getting the Virtual Machine Switch Capability

To get the virtual machine switch capability:

- Issue the following Windows PowerShell command:  

```
PS C:\Users\Administrator> Get-VMSwitch -Name q1 | fl
```

Figure 13-16 shows example output.



```
PS C:\Users\Administrator> Get-VMSwitch -Name q1 | fl
Name : q1
Id : 4dff5da3-f8bc-4146-a809-e1ddc6a04f7a
Notes :
Extensions : {Microsoft Windows Filtering Platform, Microsoft Azure VFP Switch Extension,
Microsoft NDIS Capture}
BandwidthReservationMode : None
PacketDirectEnabled : False
EmbeddedTeamingEnabled : False
IovEnabled : True
SwitchType : External
AllowManagementOS : True
NetAdapterInterfaceDescription : QLogic FastLinQ QL41262-DE 25GbE Adapter (VBD Client) #225
NetAdapterInterfaceDescriptions : {QLogic FastLinQ QL41262-DE 25GbE Adapter (VBD Client) #225}
IovSupport : True
IovSupportReasons :
AvailableIPSecSA : 0
NumberIPSecSAAllocated : 0
AvailableVMQueues : 103
NumberVmqAllocated : 1
IovQueuePairCount : 127
IovQueuePairsInUse : 2
IovVirtualFunctionCount : 96
IovVirtualFunctionsInUse : 0
PacketDirectInUse : False
DefaultQueueVrssEnabledRequested : True
DefaultQueueVrssEnabled : True
DefaultQueueVmmqEnabledRequested : False
DefaultQueueVmmqEnabled : False
DefaultQueueVmmqQueuePairsRequested : 16
DefaultQueueVmmqQueuePairs : 16
BandwidthPercentage : 0
DefaultFlowMinimumBandwidthAbsolute : 0
DefaultFlowMinimumBandwidthWeight : 0
CimSession : CimSession:
ComputerName : WIN-B1IM5U07CNO
IsDeleted : False
```

**Figure 13-16. Windows PowerShell Command: Get-VMSwitch**

## Creating a VM and Enabling VMMQ on VMNetworkadapters in the VM

To create a virtual machine (VM) and enable VMMQ on VMNetworksadapters in the VM:

1. Create a VM.
2. Add the VMNetworkadapter to the VM.
3. Assign a virtual switch to the VMNetworkadapter.
4. To enable VMMQ on the VM, issue the following Windows PowerShell command:

```
PS C:\Users\Administrators> set-vmnetworkadapter -vmname vm1
-VMNetworkAdapterName "network adapter" -vmmqenabled $true
-vmmqqueuepairs 4
```

---

### NOTE

For an SR-IOV capable virtual switch: If the VM switch and hardware acceleration is SR-IOV-enabled, you must create 10 VMs with 8 virtual NICs each to utilize VMMQ. This requirement is because the SR-IOV has precedence over VMMQ.

---

Example output of 64 virtual functions and 16 VMMQs is shown here:

```
PS C:\Users\Administrator> get-netadaptervport
```

| Name       | ID | MacAddress        | VID | ProcMask | FID | State     | ITR      | QPairs |
|------------|----|-------------------|-----|----------|-----|-----------|----------|--------|
| ----       | -- | -----             | --- | -----    | --- | -----     | ---      | -----  |
| Ethernet 3 | 0  | 00-15-5D-36-0A-FB |     | 0:0      | PF  | Activated | Unknown  | 4      |
| Ethernet 3 | 1  | 00-0E-1E-C4-C0-A4 |     | 0:8      | PF  | Activated | Adaptive | 4      |
| Ethernet 3 | 2  |                   |     | 0:0      | 0   | Activated | Unknown  | 1      |
| Ethernet 3 | 3  |                   |     | 0:0      | 1   | Activated | Unknown  | 1      |
| Ethernet 3 | 4  |                   |     | 0:0      | 2   | Activated | Unknown  | 1      |
| Ethernet 3 | 5  |                   |     | 0:0      | 3   | Activated | Unknown  | 1      |
| Ethernet 3 | 6  |                   |     | 0:0      | 4   | Activated | Unknown  | 1      |
| Ethernet 3 | 7  |                   |     | 0:0      | 5   | Activated | Unknown  | 1      |
| Ethernet 3 | 8  |                   |     | 0:0      | 6   | Activated | Unknown  | 1      |
| Ethernet 3 | 9  |                   |     | 0:0      | 7   | Activated | Unknown  | 1      |
| Ethernet 3 | 10 |                   |     | 0:0      | 8   | Activated | Unknown  | 1      |
| Ethernet 3 | 11 |                   |     | 0:0      | 9   | Activated | Unknown  | 1      |
| .          |    |                   |     |          |     |           |          |        |
| .          |    |                   |     |          |     |           |          |        |
| .          |    |                   |     |          |     |           |          |        |
| Ethernet 3 | 64 |                   |     | 0:0      | 62  | Activated | Unknown  | 1      |
| Ethernet 3 | 65 |                   |     | 0:0      | 63  | Activated | Unknown  | 1      |
| Ethernet 3 | 66 | 00-15-5D-36-0A-04 |     | 0:16     | PF  | Activated | Adaptive | 4      |
| Ethernet 3 | 67 | 00-15-5D-36-0A-05 |     | 1:0      | PF  | Activated | Adaptive | 4      |
| Ethernet 3 | 68 | 00-15-5D-36-0A-06 |     | 0:0      | PF  | Activated | Adaptive | 4      |

| Name       | ID | MacAddress        | VID | ProcMask | FID | State     | ITR      | QPairs |
|------------|----|-------------------|-----|----------|-----|-----------|----------|--------|
| -----      | -- | -----             | --- | -----    | --- | -----     | ---      | -----  |
| Ethernet 3 | 69 | 00-15-5D-36-0A-07 |     | 0:8      | PF  | Activated | Adaptive | 4      |
| Ethernet 3 | 70 | 00-15-5D-36-0A-08 |     | 0:16     | PF  | Activated | Adaptive | 4      |
| Ethernet 3 | 71 | 00-15-5D-36-0A-09 |     | 1:0      | PF  | Activated | Adaptive | 4      |
| Ethernet 3 | 72 | 00-15-5D-36-0A-0A |     | 0:0      | PF  | Activated | Adaptive | 4      |
| Ethernet 3 | 73 | 00-15-5D-36-0A-0B |     | 0:8      | PF  | Activated | Adaptive | 4      |
| Ethernet 3 | 74 | 00-15-5D-36-0A-F4 |     | 0:16     | PF  | Activated | Adaptive | 4      |
| Ethernet 3 | 75 | 00-15-5D-36-0A-F5 |     | 1:0      | PF  | Activated | Adaptive | 4      |
| Ethernet 3 | 76 | 00-15-5D-36-0A-F6 |     | 0:0      | PF  | Activated | Adaptive | 4      |
| Ethernet 3 | 77 | 00-15-5D-36-0A-F7 |     | 0:8      | PF  | Activated | Adaptive | 4      |
| Ethernet 3 | 78 | 00-15-5D-36-0A-F8 |     | 0:16     | PF  | Activated | Adaptive | 4      |
| Ethernet 3 | 79 | 00-15-5D-36-0A-F9 |     | 1:0      | PF  | Activated | Adaptive | 4      |
| Ethernet 3 | 80 | 00-15-5D-36-0A-FA |     | 0:0      | PF  | Activated | Adaptive | 4      |

```
PS C:\Users\Administrator> get-netadaptervmq
```

| Name       | InterfaceDescription  | Enabled | BaseVmQProcessor | MaxProcessors | NumberOfReceive<br>Queues |
|------------|-----------------------|---------|------------------|---------------|---------------------------|
| -----      | -----                 | -----   | -----            | -----         | -----                     |
| Ethernet 4 | QLogic FastLinQ 41xxx | False   | 0:0              | 16            | 1                         |

## Default and Maximum VMMQ Virtual NIC

According to the current implementation, a maximum quantity of 4 VMMQs is available per virtual NIC; that is, up to 16 virtual NICs.

Four default queues are available as previously set using Windows PowerShell commands. The maximum default queue can currently be set to 8. To verify the maximum default queue, use the VMswitch capability.

## Enabling and Disabling VMMQ on a Management NIC

**To enable or disable VMMQ on a management NIC:**

- To enable VMMQ on a management NIC, issue the following command:

```
PS C:\Users\Administrator> Set-VMNetworkAdapter -ManagementOS
-vmmqEnabled $true
```

The MOS VNIC has four VMMQs.

- To disable VMMQ on a management NIC, issue the following command:

```
PS C:\Users\Administrator> Set-VMNetworkAdapter -ManagementOS
-vmmqEnabled $false
```

A VMMQ will also be available for the multicast open shortest path first (MOSPF).



## Monitoring Traffic Statistics

To monitor virtual function traffic in a virtual machine, issue the following Windows PowerShell command:

```
PS C:\Users\Administrator> Use get-netadapterstatistics | fl
```

## Configuring VXLAN

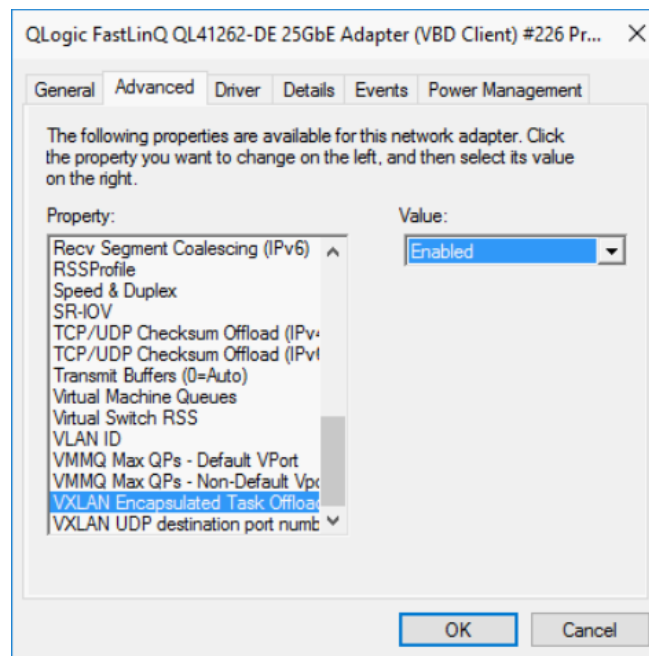
VXLAN configuration information includes:

- [Enabling VXLAN Offload on the Adapter](#)
- [Deploying a Software Defined Network](#)

### Enabling VXLAN Offload on the Adapter

To enable VXLAN offload on the adapter:

1. Open the miniport window, and then click the **Advanced** tab.
2. On the Advanced Properties page ([Figure 13-17](#)) under **Property**, select **VXLAN Encapsulated Task Offload**.



**Figure 13-17. Advanced Properties: Enabling VXLAN**

3. Set the **Value** to **Enabled**.
4. Click **OK**.

## Deploying a Software Defined Network

To take advantage of VXLAN encapsulation task offload on virtual machines, you must deploy a Software Defined Networking (SDN) stack that utilizes a Microsoft Network Controller.

For more details, refer to the following Microsoft TechNet link on Software Defined Networking:

<https://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/windows-server-docs/networking/sdn/software-defined-networking--sdn->

## Configuring Storage Spaces Direct

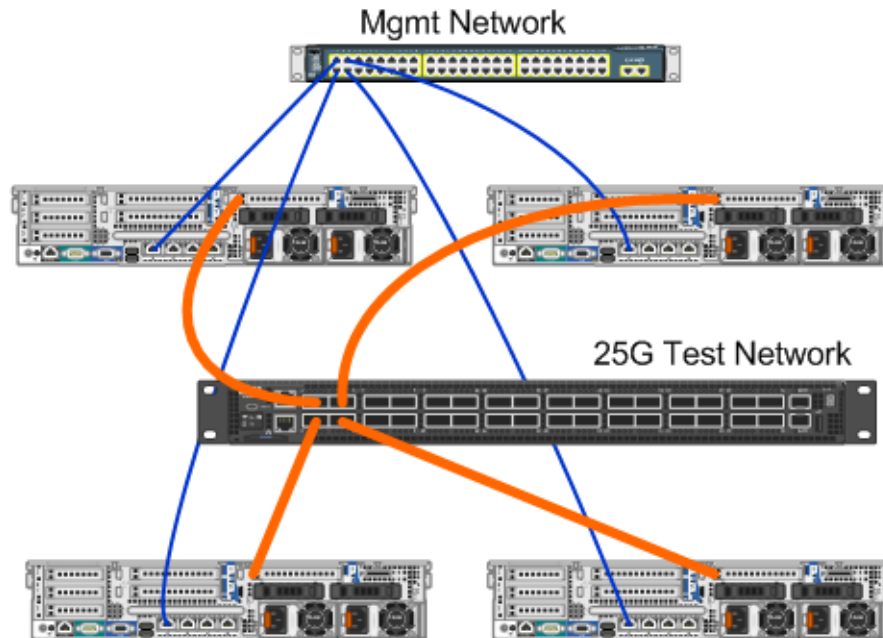
Windows Server 2016 introduces Storage Spaces Direct, which allows you to build highly available and scalable storage systems with local storage.

For more information, refer to the following Microsoft TechnNet link:

<https://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/windows-server-docs/storage/storage-spaces/storage-spaces-direct-windows-server-2016>

## Configuring the Hardware

Figure 13-18 shows an example of hardware configuration.



**Figure 13-18. Example Hardware Configuration**

---

### NOTE

The disks used in this example are 4 × 400G NVMe™, and 12 × 200G SSD disks.

---

## Deploying a Hyper-Converged System

This section includes instructions to install and configure the components of a Hyper-Converged system using the Windows Server 2016. The act of deploying a Hyper-Converged system can be divided into the following three high-level phases:

- [Deploying the Operating System](#)
- [Configuring the Network](#)
- [Configuring Storage Spaces Direct](#)

## Deploying the Operating System

### To deploy the operating systems:

1. Install the operating system.
2. Install the Windows server roles (Hyper-V).
3. Install the following features:
  - ☐ Failover
  - ☐ Cluster
  - ☐ Data center bridging (DCB)
4. Connect the nodes to domain and adding domain accounts.

## Configuring the Network

To deploy Storage Spaces Direct, the Hyper-V switch must be deployed with RDMA-enabled host virtual NICs.

---

### NOTE

The following procedure assumes that there are four RDMA NIC ports.

---

### To configure the network on each server:

1. Configure the physical network switch as follows:
  - a. Connect all adapter NICs to the switch port.

---

### NOTE

If your test adapter has more than one NIC port, you must connect both ports to the same switch.

---

- b. Enable the switch port and make sure that the switch port supports switch-independent teaming mode, and is also part of multiple VLAN networks.

Example Dell switch configuration:

```
no ip address
mtu 9416
portmode hybrid
switchport
dcb-map roce_S2D
protocol lldp
dcbx version cee
no shutdown
```

2. Enable **Network Quality of Service**.

---

**NOTE**

Network Quality of Service is used to ensure that the Software Defined Storage system has enough bandwidth to communicate between the nodes to ensure resiliency and performance. To configure QoS on the adapter, see [“Configuring QoS for RoCE” on page 205](#).

---

3. Create a Hyper-V virtual switch with SET and RDMA virtual NIC as follows:

- a. To identify the network adapters, issue the following command:

```
Get-NetAdapter | FT
Name,InterfaceDescription,Status,LinkSpeed
```

- b. To create the virtual switch connected to all of the physical network adapters, and then enable the switch embedded teaming, issue the following command:

```
New-VMSwitch -Name SETswitch -NetAdapterName
"<port1>","<port2>","<port3>","<port4>" -
EnableEmbeddedTeaming $true
```

- c. To add host virtual NICs to the virtual switch, issue the following commands:

```
Add-VMNetworkAdapter -SwitchName SETswitch -Name SMB_1 -
managementOS
Add-VMNetworkAdapter -SwitchName SETswitch -Name SMB_2 -
managementOS
```

---

**NOTE**

The preceding commands configure the virtual NIC from the virtual switch that you just configured for the management operating system to use.

---

- d. To configure the host virtual NIC to use a VLAN, issue the following commands:

```
Set-VMNetworkAdapterVlan -VMNetworkAdapterName "SMB_1"
-VlanId 5 -Access -ManagementOS
Set-VMNetworkAdapterVlan -VMNetworkAdapterName "SMB_2"
-VlanId 5 -Access -ManagementOS
```

---

**NOTE**

These commands can be on the same or different VLANs.

---

- e. To verify that the VLAN ID is set, issue the following command:  
**Get-VMNetworkAdapterVlan -ManagementOS**
- f. To disable and enable each host virtual NIC adapter so that the VLAN is active, issue the following command:  
**Disable-NetAdapter "vEthernet (SMB\_1)"**  
**Enable-NetAdapter "vEthernet (SMB\_1)"**  
**Disable-NetAdapter "vEthernet (SMB\_2)"**  
**Enable-NetAdapter "vEthernet (SMB\_2)"**
- g. To enable RDMA on the host virtual NIC adapters, issue the following command:  
**Enable-NetAdapterRdma "SMB1", "SMB2"**
- h. To verify RDMA capabilities, issue the following command:  
**Get-SmbClientNetworkInterface | where RdmaCapable -EQ \$true**

## Configuring Storage Spaces Direct

Configuring Storage Spaces Direct in Windows Server 2016 includes the following steps:

- [Step 1. Running Cluster Validation Tool](#)
- [Step 2. Creating a Cluster](#)
- [Step 3. Configuring a Cluster Witness](#)
- [Step 4. Cleaning Disks Used for Storage Spaces Direct](#)
- [Step 5. Enabling Storage Spaces Direct](#)
- [Step 6. Creating Virtual Disks](#)
- [Step 7. Creating or Deploying Virtual Machines](#)

### Step 1. Running Cluster Validation Tool

Run the cluster validation tool to make sure server nodes are configured correctly to create a cluster using Storage Spaces Direct.

Issue the following Windows PowerShell command to validate a set of servers for use as Storage Spaces Direct cluster:

```
Test-Cluster -Node <MachineName1, MachineName2, MachineName3,
MachineName4> -Include "Storage Spaces Direct", Inventory,
Network, "System Configuration"
```

### Step 2. Creating a Cluster

Create a cluster with the four nodes (which was validated for cluster creation) in [Step 1. Running Cluster Validation Tool](#).

To create a cluster, issue the following Windows PowerShell command:

```
New-Cluster -Name <ClusterName> -Node <MachineName1, MachineName2,
MachineName3, MachineName4> -NoStorage
```

The `-NoStorage` parameter is required. If it is not included, the disks are automatically added to the cluster, and you must remove them before enabling Storage Spaces Direct. Otherwise, they will not be included in the Storage Spaces Direct storage pool.

### Step 3. Configuring a Cluster Witness

You should configure a witness for the cluster, so that this four-node system can withstand two nodes failing or being offline. With these systems, you can configure file share witness or cloud witness.

For more information, go to:

<https://blogs.msdn.microsoft.com/clustering/2014/03/31/configuring-a-file-share-witness-on-a-scale-out-file-server/>

### Step 4. Cleaning Disks Used for Storage Spaces Direct

The disks intended to be used for Storage Spaces Direct must be empty, and without partitions or other data. If a disk has partitions or other data, it will not be included in the Storage Spaces Direct system.

The following Windows PowerShell command can be placed in a Windows PowerShell script (.PS1) file and executed from the management system in an open Windows PowerShell (or Windows PowerShell ISE) console with Administrator privileges.

---

#### NOTE

Running this script helps identify the disks on each node that can be used for Storage Spaces Direct and removes all data and partitions from those disks.

---

```
icm (Get-Cluster -Name HCNanoUSClu3 | Get-ClusterNode) {
 Update-StorageProviderCache

 Get-StoragePool |? IsPrimordial -eq $false | Set-StoragePool
 -IsReadOnly:$false -ErrorAction SilentlyContinue

 Get-StoragePool |? IsPrimordial -eq $false | Get-VirtualDisk |
 Remove-VirtualDisk -Confirm:$false -ErrorAction SilentlyContinue

 Get-StoragePool |? IsPrimordial -eq $false | Remove-StoragePool
 -Confirm:$false -ErrorAction SilentlyContinue

 Get-PhysicalDisk | Reset-PhysicalDisk -ErrorAction
 SilentlyContinue

 Get-Disk |? Number -ne $null |? IsBoot -ne $true |? IsSystem -ne
 $true |? PartitionStyle -ne RAW |% {
 $_ | Set-Disk -isoffline:$false
 $_ | Set-Disk -isreadonly:$false
 $_ | Clear-Disk -RemoveData -RemoveOEM -Confirm:$false
 $_ | Set-Disk -isreadonly:$true
 $_ | Set-Disk -isoffline:$true
 }
 Get-Disk |? Number -ne $null |? IsBoot -ne $true |? IsSystem -ne
 $true |? PartitionStyle -eq RAW | Group -NoElement -Property
 FriendlyName
}
} | Sort -Property PsComputerName,Count
```

### Step 5. Enabling Storage Spaces Direct

After creating the cluster, issue the `Enable-ClusterStorageSpacesDirect` Windows PowerShell cmdlet. The cmdlet places the storage system into the Storage Spaces Direct mode and automatically does the following:

- Creates a single large pool that has a name such as *S2D on Cluster1*.
- Configures Storage Spaces Direct cache. If there is more than one media type available for Storage Spaces Direct use, it configures the most efficient type as cache devices (in most cases, read and write).
- Creates two tiers—**Capacity** and **Performance**—as default tiers. The cmdlet analyzes the devices and configures each tier with the mix of device types and resiliency.

### Step 6. Creating Virtual Disks

If the Storage Spaces Direct was enabled, it creates a single pool using all of the disks. It also names the pool (for example *S2D on Cluster1*), with the name of the cluster that is specified in the name.



The following Windows PowerShell command creates a virtual disk with both mirror and parity resiliency on the storage pool:

```
New-Volume -StoragePoolFriendlyName "S2D*" -FriendlyName
<VirtualDiskName> -FileSystem CSVFS_ReFS -StorageTierfriendlyNames
Capacity,Performance -StorageTierSizes <Size of capacity tier in
size units, example: 800GB>, <Size of Performance tier in size
units, example: 80GB> -CimSession <ClusterName>
```

### Step 7. Creating or Deploying Virtual Machines

You can provision the virtual machines onto the nodes of the hyper-converged S2D cluster. Store the virtual machine's files on the system's CSV namespace (for example, c:\ClusterStorage\Volume1), similar to clustered virtual machines on failover clusters.

## Deploying and Managing a Nano Server

Windows Server 2016 offers Nano Server as a new installation option. Nano Server is a remotely administered server operating system optimized for private clouds and data centers. It is similar to Windows Server in Server Core mode, but is significantly smaller, has no local logon capability, and supports only 64-bit applications, tools, and agents. The Nano Server takes less disk space, sets up faster, and requires fewer updates and restarts than Windows Server. When it does restart, it restarts much faster.

### Roles and Features

[Table 13-1](#) shows the roles and features that are available in this release of Nano Server, along with the Windows PowerShell options that will install the packages for them. Some packages are installed directly with their own Windows PowerShell options (such as `-Compute`). Others are installed as extensions to the `-Packages` option, which you can combine in a comma-separated list.

**Table 13-1. Roles and Features of Nano Server**

| Role or Feature                                                                                                                                                                           | Options                    |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| Hyper-V role                                                                                                                                                                              | <code>-Compute</code>      |
| Failover Clustering                                                                                                                                                                       | <code>-Clustering</code>   |
| Hyper-V guest drivers for hosting the Nano Server as a virtual machine                                                                                                                    | <code>-GuestDrivers</code> |
| Basic drivers for a variety of network adapters and storage controllers. This is the same set of drivers included in a Server Core installation of Windows Server 2016 Technical Preview. | <code>-OEMDrivers</code>   |

**Table 13-1. Roles and Features of Nano Server (Continued)**

| Role or Feature                                                                                                                 | Options                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| File Server role and other storage components                                                                                   | -Storage                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Windows Defender Antimalware, including a default signature file                                                                | -Defender                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Reverse forwarders for application compatibility; for example, common application frameworks such as Ruby, Node.js, and others. | -ReverseForwarders                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| DNS Server Role                                                                                                                 | -Packages Microsoft-NanoServer-DNS-Package                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Desired State Configuration (DSC)                                                                                               | -Packages Microsoft-NanoServer-DSC-Package                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Internet Information Server (IIS)                                                                                               | -Packages Microsoft-NanoServer-IIS-Package                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Host Support for Windows Containers                                                                                             | -Containers                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| System Center Virtual Machine Manager Agent                                                                                     | -Packages Microsoft-Windows-Server-SCVMM-Package<br>-Packages Microsoft-Windows-Server-SCVMM-Compute-Package<br>Note: Use this package only if you are monitoring Hyper-V. If you install this package, do not use the -Compute option for the Hyper-V role; instead use the -Packages option to install -Packages Microsoft-NanoServer-Compute-Package, Microsoft-Windows-Server-SCVMM-Compute-Package. |
| Network Performance Diagnostics Service (NPDS)                                                                                  | -Packages Microsoft-NanoServer-NPDS-Package                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Data Center Bridging                                                                                                            | -Packages Microsoft-NanoServer-DCB-Package                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |

The next sections describe how to configure a Nano Server image with the required packages, and how to add additional device drivers specific to QLogic devices. They also explain how to use the Nano Server Recovery Console, how to manage a Nano Server remotely, and how to run Ntttcp traffic from a Nano Server.

## Deploying a Nano Server on a Physical Server

Follow these steps to create a Nano Server virtual hard disk (VHD) that will run on a physical server using the preinstalled device drivers.

### To deploy the Nano Server:

1. Download the Windows Server 2016 OS image.
2. Mount the ISO.
3. Copy the following files from the `NanoServer` folder to a folder on your hard drive:
  - ☐ `NanoServerImageGenerator.psm1`
  - ☐ `Convert-WindowsImage.ps1`
4. Start Windows PowerShell as an administrator.
5. Change directory to the folder where you pasted the files from [Step 3](#).
6. Import the `NanoServerImageGenerator` script by issuing the following command:  
**`Import-Module .\NanoServerImageGenerator.psm1 -Verbose`**
7. To create a VHD that sets a computer name and includes the OEM drivers and Hyper-V, issue the following Windows PowerShell command:

---

#### NOTE

This command will prompt you for an administrator password for the new VHD.

---

```
New-NanoServerImage -DeploymentType Host -Edition
<Standard/Datacenter> -MediaPath <path to root of media>
-BasePath
.\Base -TargetPath .\NanoServerPhysical\NanoServer.vhd
-ComputerName
<computer name> -Compute -Storage -Cluster -OEMDrivers -
Compute
-DriversPath "<Path to Qlogic Driver sets>"
```

Example:

```
New-NanoServerImage -DeploymentType Host -Edition Datacenter
-MediaPath C:\tmp\TP4_iso\Bld_10586_iso
-BasePath ".\Base" -TargetPath
"C:\Nano\PhysicalSystem\Nano_phy_vhd.vhd" -ComputerName
"Nano-server1" -Compute -Storage -Cluster -OEMDrivers
-DriversPath
"C:\Nano\Drivers"
```

In the preceding example, C:\Nano\Drivers is the path for QLogic drivers. This command takes about 10 to 15 minutes to create a VHD file. A sample output for this command is shown here:

```
Windows(R) Image to Virtual Hard Disk Converter for Windows(R) 10
Copyright (C) Microsoft Corporation. All rights reserved.
Version 10.0.14300.1000.amd64fre.rs1_release_svc.160324-1723
INFO : Looking for the requested Windows image in the WIM file
INFO : Image 1 selected (ServerDatacenterNano)...
INFO : Creating sparse disk...
INFO : Mounting VHD...
INFO : Initializing disk...
INFO : Creating single partition...
INFO : Formatting windows volume...
INFO : Windows path (I:) has been assigned.
INFO : System volume location: I:
INFO : Applying image to VHD. This could take a while...
INFO : Image was applied successfully.
INFO : Making image bootable...
INFO : Fixing the Device ID in the BCD store on VHD...
INFO : Drive is bootable. Cleaning up...
INFO : Dismounting VHD...
INFO : Closing Windows image...
INFO : Done.
Done. The log is at:
C:\Users\ADMINI~1\AppData\Local\Temp\2\NanoServerImageGenerator.log
```

8. Log in as an administrator on the physical server where you want to run the Nano Server VHD.

9. To copy the VHD to the physical server and configure it to boot from the new VHD:
  - a. Go to **Computer Management > Storage > Disk Management**.
  - b. Right-click **Disk Management** and select **Attach VHD**.
  - c. Provide the VHD file path.
  - d. Click **OK**.
  - e. Run **bcdboot d:\windows**.

---

**NOTE**

In this example, the VHD is attached under D:\.

---

- f. Right-click **Disk Management** and select **Detach VHD**.
10. Reboot the physical server into the Nano Server VHD.
11. Log in to the Recovery Console using the administrator and password you supplied while running the script in [Step 7](#).
12. Obtain the IP address of the Nano Server computer.
13. Use Windows PowerShell remoting (or other remote management) tool to connect and remotely manage the server.

## Deploying a Nano Server in a Virtual Machine

**To create a Nano Server virtual hard drive (VHD) to run in a virtual machine:**

1. Download the Windows Server 2016 OS image.
2. Go to the `NanoServer` folder from the downloaded file in [Step 1](#).
3. Copy the following files from the `NanoServer` folder to a folder on your hard drive:
  - ☐ `NanoServerImageGenerator.psm1`
  - ☐ `Convert-WindowsImage.ps1`
4. Start Windows PowerShell as an administrator.
5. Change directory to the folder where you pasted the files from [Step 3](#).
6. Import the `NanoServerImageGenerator` script by issuing the following command:

```
Import-Module .\NanoServerImageGenerator.psm1 -Verbose
```

7. Issue the following Windows PowerShell command to create a VHD that sets a computer name and includes the Hyper-V guest drivers:

---

**NOTE**

This following command will prompt you for an administrator password for the new VHD.

---

```
New-NanoServerImage -DeploymentType Guest -Edition
<Standard/Datacenter> -MediaPath <path to root of media>
-BasePath
.\Base -TargetPath .\NanoServerPhysical\NanoServer.vhd
-ComputerName
<computer name> -GuestDrivers
```

Example:

```
New-NanoServerImage -DeploymentType Guest -Edition Datacenter
-MediaPath C:\tmp\TP4_iso\Bld_10586_iso
-BasePath .\Base -TargetPath .\Nano1\VM_NanoServer.vhd
-ComputerName
Nano-VM1 -GuestDrivers
```

The preceding command takes about 10 to 15 minutes to create a VHD file. A sample output for this command follows:

```
PS C:\Nano> New-NanoServerImage -DeploymentType Guest -Edition
Datacenter -MediaPath
C:\tmp\TP4_iso\Bld_10586_iso -BasePath .\Base -TargetPath
.\Nano1\VM_NanoServer.vhd -ComputerName Nano-VM1 -GuestDrivers
cmdlet New-NanoServerImage at command pipeline position 1
Supply values for the following parameters:
Windows(R) Image to Virtual Hard Disk Converter for Windows(R) 10
Copyright (C) Microsoft Corporation. All rights reserved.
Version 10.0.14300.1000.amd64fre.rs1_release_svc.160324-1723
INFO : Looking for the requested Windows image in the WIM file
INFO : Image 1 selected (ServerTuva)...
INFO : Creating sparse disk...
INFO : Attaching VHD...
INFO : Initializing disk...
INFO : Creating single partition...
INFO : Formatting windows volume...
INFO : Windows path (G:) has been assigned.
INFO : System volume location: G:
```

```
INFO : Applying image to VHD. This could take a while...
INFO : Image was applied successfully.
INFO : Making image bootable...
INFO : Fixing the Device ID in the BCD store on VHD...
INFO : Drive is bootable. Cleaning up...
INFO : Closing VHD...
INFO : Deleting pre-existing VHD : Base.vhd...
INFO : Closing Windows image...
INFO : Done.
Done. The log is at:
C:\Users\ADMINI~1\AppData\Local\Temp\2\NanoServerImageGenerator.log
```

8. Create a new virtual machine in Hyper-V Manager, and use the VHD created in [Step 7](#).
9. Boot the virtual machine.
10. Connect to the virtual machine in Hyper-V Manager.
11. Log in to the Recovery Console using the administrator and password you supplied while running the script in [Step 7](#).
12. Obtain the IP address of the Nano Server computer.
13. Use Windows PowerShell remoting (or other remote management) tool to connect and remotely manage the server.

## Managing a Nano Server Remotely

Options for managing Nano Server remotely include Windows PowerShell, Windows Management Instrumentation (WMI), Windows Remote Management, and Emergency Management Services (EMS). This section describes how to access Nano Server using Windows PowerShell remoting.

### Managing a Nano Server with Windows PowerShell Remoting

**To manage Nano Server with Windows PowerShell remoting:**

1. Add the IP address of the Nano Server to your management computer's list of trusted hosts.

---

**NOTE**

Use the recovery console to find the server IP address.

---

2. Add the account you are using to the Nano Server's administrators.
3. (Optional) Enable **CredSSP** if applicable.

## Adding the Nano Server to a List of Trusted Hosts

At an elevated Windows PowerShell prompt, add the Nano Server to the list of trusted hosts by issuing the following command:

```
Set-Item WSMan:\localhost\Client\TrustedHosts "<IP address of Nano Server>"
```

### Examples:

```
Set-Item WSMan:\localhost\Client\TrustedHosts "172.28.41.152"
```

```
Set-Item WSMan:\localhost\Client\TrustedHosts "*"
```

---

### NOTE

The preceding command sets all host servers as trusted hosts.

---

## Starting the Remote Windows PowerShell Session

At an elevated local Windows PowerShell session, start the remote Windows PowerShell session by issuing the following commands:

```
$ip = "<IP address of Nano Server>"
```

```
$user = "$ip\Administrator"
```

```
Enter-PSSession -ComputerName $ip -Credential $user
```

You can now run Windows PowerShell commands on the Nano Server as usual. However, not all Windows PowerShell commands are available in this release of Nano Server. To see which commands are available, issue the command `Get-Command -CommandType Cmdlet`. To stop the remote session, issue the command `Exit-PSSession`.

For more details on Nano Server, go to:

<https://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/mt126167.aspx>

## Managing QLogic Adapters on a Windows Nano Server

To manage QLogic adapters in Nano Server environments, refer to the Windows QConvergeConsole GUI and Windows QLogic Control Suite CLI management tools and associated documentation, available from the Cavium Web site.

## RoCE Configuration

### To manage the Nano Server with Windows PowerShell remoting:

1. Connect to the Nano Server through Windows PowerShell Remoting from another machine. For example:

```
PS C:\Windows\system32> $ip="172.28.41.152"
```

```
PS C:\Windows\system32> $user="172.28.41.152\Administrator"
```



```
PS C:\Windows\system32> Enter-PSSession -ComputerName $ip
-Credential $user
```

#### NOTE

In the preceding example, the Nano Server IP address is 172.28.41.152 and the user name is Administrator.

If the Nano Server connects successfully, the following is returned:

```
[172.28.41.152]: PS C:\Users\Administrator\Documents>
```

2. To determine if the drivers are installed and the link is up, issue the following Windows PowerShell command:

```
[172.28.41.152]: PS C:\Users\Administrator\Documents>
Get-NetAdapter
```

Figure 13-19 shows example output.

```
[172.28.41.178]: PS C:\Users\Administrator\Documents> Get-NetAdapter
```

| Name            | InterfaceDescription                    | ifIndex | Status | MacAddress        | LinkSpeed |
|-----------------|-----------------------------------------|---------|--------|-------------------|-----------|
| SLOT 2 4 Port 2 | QLogic FastLinQ QL41262-DE 25GbE...#238 | 6       | Up     | 00-0E-1E-FD-AB-C1 | 25 Gbps   |

**Figure 13-19. Windows PowerShell Command: Get-NetAdapter**

3. To verify whether the RDMA is enabled on the adapter, issue the following Windows PowerShell command:

```
[172.28.41.152]: PS C:\Users\Administrator\Documents>
Get-NetAdapterRdma
```

Figure 13-20 shows example output.

```
[172.28.41.178]: PS C:\Users\Administrator\Documents> Get-NetAdapterRdma
```

| Name            | InterfaceDescription                     | Enabled |
|-----------------|------------------------------------------|---------|
| SLOT 2 4 Port 2 | QLogic FastLinQ QL41262-DE 25GbE Adap... | True    |
| SLOT 2 3 Port 1 | QLogic FastLinQ QL41262-DE 25GbE Adap... | True    |

**Figure 13-20. Windows PowerShell Command: Get-NetAdapterRdma**

4. To assign an IP address and VLAN ID to all interfaces of the adapter, issue the following Windows PowerShell commands:

```
[172.28.41.152]: PS C:\> Set-NetAdapterAdvancedProperty
-InterfaceAlias "slot 1 port 1" -RegistryKeyword vlanid
-RegistryValue 5
[172.28.41.152]: PS C:\> netsh interface ip set address
name="SLOT 1 Port 1" static 192.168.10.10 255.255.255.0
```

5. To create SMBShare on the Nano Server, issue the following Windows PowerShell command:

```
[172.28.41.152]: PS C:\Users\Administrator\Documents>
New-Item -Path c:\ -Type Directory -Name smbshare -Verbose
```

Figure 13-21 shows example output.

```
[172.28.41.152]: PS C:\Users\Administrator\Documents> New-Item -Path c:\ -Type Directory -Name smbshare -Verbose
VERBOSE: Performing the operation "Create Directory" on target "Destination: C:\smbshare".

Directory: C:\

Mode LastWriteTime Length Name
---- -
d----- 4/25/2016 1:34 AM smbshare
```

**Figure 13-21. Windows PowerShell Command: New-Item**

```
[172.28.41.152]: PS C:\> New-SMBShare -Name "smbshare" -Path
c:\smbshare -FullAccess Everyone
```

Figure 13-22 shows example output.

```
[172.28.41.152]: PS C:\> New-SMBShare -Name "smbshare" -Path c:\smbshare -FullAccess Everyone

Name ScopeName Path Description

smbshare * c:\smbshare
```

**Figure 13-22. Windows PowerShell Command: New-SMBShare**

6. To map the SMBShare as a network drive in the client machine, issue the following Windows PowerShell command:

---

**NOTE**

The IP address of an interface on the Nano Server is 192.168.10.10.

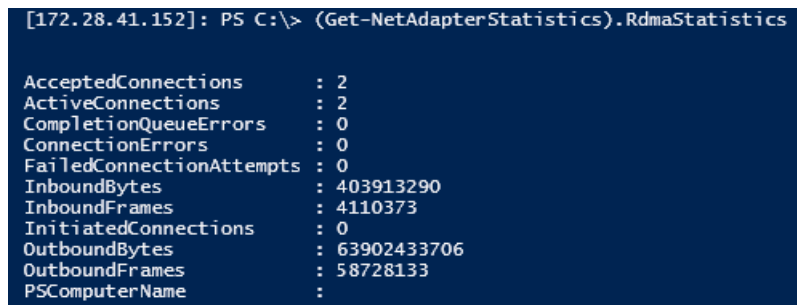
---

```
PS C:\Windows\system32> net use z: \\192.168.10.10\smbshare
This command completed successfully.
```

7. To perform read/write on SMBShare and check RDMA statistics on the Nano Sever, issue the following Windows PowerShell command:

```
[172.28.41.152]: PS C:\>
(Get-NetAdapterStatistics).RdmaStatistics
```

Figure 13-23 shows the command output.

A screenshot of a Windows PowerShell terminal window. The prompt is [172.28.41.152]: PS C:\>. The command entered is (Get-NetAdapterStatistics).RdmaStatistics. The output is a list of statistics with their values.

```
[172.28.41.152]: PS C:\> (Get-NetAdapterStatistics).RdmaStatistics
AcceptedConnections : 2
ActiveConnections : 2
CompletionQueueErrors : 0
ConnectionErrors : 0
FailedConnectionAttempts : 0
InboundBytes : 403913290
InboundFrames : 4110373
InitiatedConnections : 0
OutboundBytes : 63902433706
OutboundFrames : 58728133
PSComputerName :
```

**Figure 13-23. Windows PowerShell Command: Get-NetAdapterStatistics**

# 14 Troubleshooting

This chapter provides the following troubleshooting information:

- [Troubleshooting Checklist](#)
- [Verifying that Current Drivers Are Loaded](#)
- [Testing Network Connectivity](#)
- [Microsoft Virtualization with Hyper-V](#)
- [Linux-specific Issues](#)
- [Miscellaneous Issues](#)
- [Collecting Debug Data](#)

## Troubleshooting Checklist

---

### CAUTION

Before you open the server cabinet to add or remove the adapter, review the [“Safety Precautions” on page 6](#).

---

The following checklist provides recommended actions to resolve problems that may arise while installing the 41xxx Series Adapter or running it in your system.

- Inspect all cables and connections. Verify that the cable connections at the network adapter and the switch are attached properly.
- Verify the adapter installation by reviewing [“Installing the Adapter” on page 7](#). Ensure that the adapter is properly seated in the slot. Check for specific hardware problems, such as obvious damage to board components or the PCI edge connector.
- Verify the configuration settings and change them if they are in conflict with another device.
- Verify that your server is using the latest BIOS.
- Try inserting the adapter in another slot. If the new position works, the original slot in your system may be defective.

- Replace the failed adapter with one that is known to work properly. If the second adapter works in the slot where the first one failed, the original adapter is probably defective.
- Install the adapter in another functioning system, and then run the tests again. If the adapter passes the tests in the new system, the original system may be defective.
- Remove all other adapters from the system, and then run the tests again. If the adapter passes the tests, the other adapters may be causing contention.

## Verifying that Current Drivers Are Loaded

Ensure that the current drivers are loaded for your Windows, Linux, or VMware system.

### Verifying Drivers in Windows

See the Device Manager to view vital information about the adapter, link status, and network connectivity.

### Verifying Drivers in Linux

To verify that the qed.ko driver is loaded properly, issue the following command:

```
lsmod | grep -i <module name>
```

If the driver is loaded, the output of this command shows the size of the driver in bytes. The following example shows the drivers loaded for the qed module:

```
lsmod | grep -i qed
qed 199238 1
qedde 1417947 0
```

If you reboot after loading a new driver, you can issue the following command to verify that the currently loaded driver is the correct version:

```
modinfo qede
```

Or, you can issue the following command:

```
[root@test1]# ethtool -i eth2
driver: qede
version: 8.4.7.0
firmware-version: mfw 8.4.7.0 storm 8.4.7.0
bus-info: 0000:04:00.2
```

If you loaded a new driver, but have not yet rebooted, the `modinfo` command will not show the updated driver information. Instead, issue the following `dmesg` command to view the logs. In this example, the last entry identifies the driver that will be active upon reboot.

```
dmesg | grep -i "QLogic" | grep -i "qede"

[10.097526] QLogic FastLinQ 4xxxx Ethernet Driver qede x.x.x.x
[23.093526] QLogic FastLinQ 4xxxx Ethernet Driver qede x.x.x.x
[34.975396] QLogic FastLinQ 4xxxx Ethernet Driver qede x.x.x.x
[34.975896] QLogic FastLinQ 4xxxx Ethernet Driver qede x.x.x.x
[3334.975896] QLogic FastLinQ 4xxxx Ethernet Driver qede x.x.x.x
```

## Verifying Drivers in VMware

To verify that the VMware ESXi drivers are loaded, issue the following command:

```
esxcli software vib list
```

## Testing Network Connectivity

This section provides procedures for testing network connectivity in Windows and Linux environments.

---

### NOTE

When using forced link speeds, verify that both the adapter and the switch are forced to the same speed.

---

## Testing Network Connectivity for Windows

Test network connectivity using the `ping` command.

**To determine if the network connection is working:**

1. Click **Start**, and then click **Run**.
2. In the **Open** box, type `cmd`, and then click **OK**.
3. To view the network connection to be tested, issue the following command:  
`ipconfig /all`
4. Issue the following command, and then press ENTER.  
`ping <ip_address>`

The displayed ping statistics indicate whether or not the network connection is working.

## Testing Network Connectivity for Linux

### To verify that the Ethernet interface is up and running:

1. To check the status of the Ethernet interface, issue the `ifconfig` command.
2. To check the statistics on the Ethernet interface, issue the `netstat -i` command.

### To verify that the connection has been established:

1. Ping an IP host on the network. From the command line, issue the following command:

**ping <ip\_address>**

2. Press ENTER.

The displayed ping statistics indicate whether or not the network connection is working.

The adapter link speed can be forced to 10Gbps or 25Gbps using either the operating system GUI tool or the `ethtool` command, `ethtool -s ethX speed SSSS`.

## Microsoft Virtualization with Hyper-V

Microsoft Virtualization is a hypervisor virtualization system for Windows Server 2012 R2. For more information on Hyper-V, go to:

<https://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/Dn282278.aspx>

## Linux-specific Issues

**Problem:** Errors appear when compiling driver source code.

**Solution:** Some installations of Linux distributions do not install the development tools and kernel sources by default. Before compiling driver source code, ensure that the development tools for the Linux distribution that you are using are installed.

## Miscellaneous Issues

**Problem:** The 41xxx Series Adapter has shut down, and an error message appears indicating that the fan on the adapter has failed.

**Solution:** The 41xxx Series Adapter may intentionally shut down to prevent permanent damage. Contact QLogic Technical Support for assistance.

**Problem:** In an ESXi environment, with the iSCSI driver (qedil) installed, sometimes, the VI-client cannot access the host. This is due to the termination of the hostd daemon, which affects connectivity with the VI-client.

**Solution:** Contact VMware technical support.

## Collecting Debug Data

Use the commands in [Table 14-1](#) to collect debug data.

**Table 14-1. Collecting Debug Data Commands**

| Debug Data  | Description                                        |
|-------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| dmesg -T    | Kernel logs                                        |
| ethtool -d  | Register dump                                      |
| sys_info.sh | System information; available in the driver bundle |



# A Adapter LEDs

Table A-1 lists the LED indicators for the state of the adapter port link and activity.

**Table A-1. Adapter Port Link and Activity LEDs**

| Port LED     | LED Appearance           | Network State                |
|--------------|--------------------------|------------------------------|
| Link LED     | Off                      | No link (cable disconnected) |
|              | Continuously illuminated | Link                         |
| Activity LED | Off                      | No port activity             |
|              | Blinking                 | Port activity                |

# **B** Cables and Optical Modules

This appendix provides the following information for the supported cables and optical modules:

- [Supported Specifications](#)
- [Tested Cables and Optical Modules](#)

## **Supported Specifications**

The 41xxx Series Adapters support a variety of cables and optical modules that comply with SFF8024. Specific form factor compliance is as follows:

- SFPs:
  - ☐ SFF8472 (for memory map)
  - ☐ SFF8419 or SFF8431 (low speed signals and power)
- Quad small form factor pluggable (QSFP):
  - ☐ SFF8636 (for memory map)
  - ☐ SFF8679 or SFF8436 (low speed signals and power)
- Optical modules electrical input/output, active copper cables (ACC), and active optical cables (AOC):
  - ☐ 10G—SFF8431 limiting interface
  - ☐ 25G—IEEE802.3by Annex 109B (25GAUI)

## Tested Cables and Optical Modules

QLogic does not guarantee that every cable or optical module that satisfies the compliance requirements will operate with the 41xxx Series Adapters. QLogic has tested the components listed in [Table B-1](#) and presents this list for your convenience.

**Table B-1. Tested Cables and Optical Modules**

| Speed/Form Factor          | Manufacturer | Part Number | Type                   | Cable Length <sup>a</sup> | Gauge |
|----------------------------|--------------|-------------|------------------------|---------------------------|-------|
| <b>Cables</b>              |              |             |                        |                           |       |
| 10G DAC <sup>b</sup>       | Dell         | 407-BBBK    | SFP+10G-to-SFP+10G     | 1                         | 30    |
|                            |              | 407-BBBI    | SFP+10G-to-SFP+10G     | 3                         | 26    |
|                            |              | 407-BBBP    | SFP+10G-to-SFP+10G     | 5                         | 26    |
| 25G DAC                    | Amphenol®    | NDCCGF0001  | SFP28-25G-to-SFP28-25G | 1                         | 30    |
|                            |              | NDCCGF0003  | SFP28-25G-to-SFP28-25G | 3                         | 30    |
|                            |              | NDCCGJ0003  | SFP28-25G-to-SFP28-25G | 3                         | 26    |
|                            |              | NDCCGJ0005  | SFP28-25G-to-SFP28-25G | 5                         | 26    |
| 40G DAC Splitter (4 × 10G) | Dell         | 470-AAVO    | QSFP+40G-to-4xSFP+10G  | 1                         | 26    |
|                            |              | 470-AAXG    | QSFP+40G-to-4xSFP+10G  | 3                         | 26    |
|                            |              | 470-AAXH    | QSFP+40G-to-4xSFP+10G  | 5                         | 26    |

**Table B-1. Tested Cables and Optical Modules (Continued)**

| Speed/Form Factor           | Manufacturer | Part Number      | Type                                | Cable Length <sup>a</sup> | Gauge |
|-----------------------------|--------------|------------------|-------------------------------------|---------------------------|-------|
| 100G DAC Splitter (4 × 25G) | Amphenol     | NDAQGJ-0001      | QSFP28-100G-to-4xSFP28-25G          | 1                         | 26    |
|                             |              | NDAQGF-0002      | QSFP28-100G-to-4xSFP28-25G          | 2                         | 30    |
|                             |              | NDAQGF-0003      | QSFP28-100G-to-4xSFP28-25G          | 3                         | 30    |
|                             |              | NDAQGJ-0005      | QSFP28-100G-to-4xSFP28-25G          | 5                         | 26    |
|                             | Dell         | 026FN3 Rev A00   | QSFP28-100G-to-4xSFP28-25G          | 1                         | 26    |
|                             |              | 0YFNDD Rev A00   | QSFP28-100G-to-4xSFP28-25G          | 2                         | 26    |
|                             |              | 07R9N9 Rev A00   | QSFP28-100G-to-4xSFP28-25G          | 3                         | 26    |
|                             | FCI          | 10130795-4050LF  | QSFP28-100G-to-4xSFP28-25G          | 5                         | 26    |
| <b>Optical Solutions</b>    |              |                  |                                     |                           |       |
| 10G Optical Transceivers    | Avago        | AFBR-703SMZ      | SFP+ SR                             | N/A                       | N/A   |
|                             |              | AFBR-701SDZ      | SFP+ LR                             | N/A                       | N/A   |
|                             | Finisar      | FTLX8571D3BCL-QL | SFP+ SR                             | N/A                       | N/A   |
|                             |              | FTLX1471D3BCL-QL | SFP+ LR                             | N/A                       | N/A   |
| 25G Optical Transceivers    | Finisar      | FTLF8536P4BCL    | SFP28 Optical Transceiver SR        | N/A                       | N/A   |
|                             |              | FTLF8538P4BCL    | SFP28 Optical Transceiver SR no FEC | N/A                       | N/A   |

**Table B-1. Tested Cables and Optical Modules (Continued)**

| Speed/Form Factor    | Manufacturer | Part Number  | Type      | Cable Length <sup>a</sup> | Gauge |
|----------------------|--------------|--------------|-----------|---------------------------|-------|
| 10G AOC <sup>c</sup> | Dell         | 470-ABLV     | SFP+ AOC  | 2                         | N/A   |
|                      |              | 470-ABLZ     | SFP+ AOC  | 3                         | N/A   |
|                      |              | 470-ABLT     | SFP+ AOC  | 5                         | N/A   |
|                      |              | 470-ABML     | SFP+ AOC  | 7                         | N/A   |
|                      |              | 470-ABLU     | SFP+ AOC  | 10                        | N/A   |
|                      |              | 470-ABMD     | SFP+ AOC  | 15                        | N/A   |
|                      |              | 470-ABMJ     | SFP+ AOC  | 15                        | N/A   |
| 25G AOC              | InnoLight    | TF-PY003-N00 | SFP28 AOC | 3                         | N/A   |
|                      |              | TF-PY020-N00 | SFP28 AOC | 20                        | N/A   |

<sup>a</sup> Cable length is indicated in meters.

<sup>b</sup> DAC is direct attach cable.

<sup>c</sup> AOC is active optical cable.

## Tested Switches

Table B-2 lists the switches that have been tested for interoperability with the 41xxx Series Adapters. This list is based on switches that are available at the time of product release, and is subject to change over time as new switches enter the market or are discontinued.

**Table B-2. Switches Tested for Interoperability**

| Manufacturer | Ethernet Switch Model |
|--------------|-----------------------|
| Arista       | 7060X                 |
| Cisco        | Nexus 3132            |
|              | Nexus 5548 and 5596T  |
|              | Nexus 6000            |
| Dell EMC     | Z9100                 |
| HPE          | FlexFabric 5950       |
| Mellanox     | SN2700                |

# C Dell Z9100 Switch Configuration

The 41xxx Series Adapters support connections with the Dell Z9100 Ethernet Switch. However, until the auto-negotiation process is standardized, the switch must be explicitly configured to connect to the adapter at 25Gbps.

## To configure a Dell Z9100 switch port to connect to the 41xxx Series Adapter at 25Gbps:

1. Establish a serial port connection between your management workstation and the switch.
2. Open a command line session, and then log in to the switch as follows:  
Login: **admin**  
Password: **admin**
3. Enable configuration of the switch port:  
Dell> **enable**  
Password: xxxxxx  
Dell# **config**
4. Identify the module and port to be configured. The following example uses module 1, port 5:  

```
Dell(conf)#stack-unit 1 port 5 ?
portmode Set portmode for a module
Dell(conf)#stack-unit 1 port 5 portmode ?
dual Enable dual mode
quad Enable quad mode
single Enable single mode
Dell(conf)#stack-unit 1 port 5 portmode quad ?
speed Each port speed in quad mode
Dell(conf)#stack-unit 1 port 5 portmode quad speed ?
10G Quad port mode with 10G speed
25G Quad port mode with 25G speed
```

```
Dell(conf)#stack-unit 1 port 5 portmode quad speed 25G
```

For information about changing the adapter link speed, see [“Testing Network Connectivity” on page 241](#).

5. Verify that the port is operating at 25Gbps:

```
Dell# Dell#show running-config | grep "port 5"
stack-unit 1 port 5 portmode quad speed 25G
```

6. To disable auto-negotiation on switch port 5, follow these steps:

- a. Identify the switch port interface (module 1, port 5, interface 1) and confirm the auto-negotiation status:

```
Dell(conf)#interface tw 1/5/1

Dell(conf-if-tf-1/5/1)#intf-type cr4 ?
autoneg Enable autoneg
```

- b. Disable auto-negotiation:

```
Dell(conf-if-tf-1/5/1)#no intf-type cr4 autoneg
```

- c. Verify that auto-negotiation is disabled.

```
Dell(conf-if-tf-1/5/1)#do show run interface tw 1/5/1
!
interface twentyFiveGigE 1/5/1
no ip address
mtu 9416
switchport
flowcontrol rx on tx on
no shutdown
no intf-type cr4 autoneg
```

For more information about configuring the Dell Z9100 switch, refer to the *Dell Z9100 Switch Configuration Guide* on the Dell Support Web site:

[support.dell.com](http://support.dell.com)

# D Feature Constraints

This appendix provides information about feature constraints implemented in the current release.

These feature coexistence constraints may be removed in a future release. At that time, you should be able to use the feature combinations without any additional configuration steps beyond what would be usually required to enable the features.

## **Concurrent FCoE and iSCSI Is Not Supported on the Same Port in NPAR Mode**

The current release does not support configuration of both FCoE and iSCSI on PFs belonging to the same physical port when in NPAR Mode (concurrent FCoE and iSCSI is only supported on the same port in Default Mode). Either FCoE or iSCSI is allowed on a physical port in NPAR Mode.

After a PF with either iSCSI or FCoE personality has been configured on a port using either HII or QLogic management tools, configuration of the storage protocol on another PF is disallowed by those management tools.

Because storage personality is disabled by default, only the personality that has been configured using HII or QLogic management tools is written in NVRAM configuration. When this limitation is removed, users can configure additional PFs on the same port for storage in NPAR Mode.

## **Concurrent RoCE and iWARP Is Not Supported on the Same Port**

RoCE and iWARP are not supported on the same port. HII and QLogic management tools do not allow users to configure both concurrently.

## **NPAR Configuration Is Not Supported if SR-IOV Is Already Configured**

If SR-IOV is already configured, NPAR configuration is not allowed unless SR-IOV is first disabled.

- NPAR is configured using either HII or QLogic management tools. When NPAR is enabled, device- and adapter-level configuration for multiple PCIe functions are listed on all ports of the adapter.
- SR-IOV is configured using either HII or QLogic management tools. When SR-IOV is enabled, adapter-level configuration is not allowed if NPAR is already configured.



**RoCE and iWARP Configuration Is Not Supported if NPAR Is Already Configured**

If NPAR is already configured on the adapter, you cannot configure RoCE or iWARP. Currently, RDMA can be enabled on all PFs and the RDMA transport type (RoCE or iWARP) can be configured on a per-port basis. The per-port configuration is reflected in the per-PF settings by HII and QLogic management tools.

`RDMANICModeOnPort` can be enabled and disabled. However, `RDMANICModeOnPartition` is currently set to disabled and cannot be enabled.

**NIC and SAN Boot to Base Is Supported Only on Select PFs**

Ethernet and PXE boot are currently supported only on PF0 and PF1. In NPAR configuration, other PFs do not support Ethernet and PXE boot.

- When the **Virtualization Mode** is set to **NPAR**, non-offloaded FCoE boot is supported on Partition 2 (PF2 and PF3) and iSCSI boot is supported on Partition 3 (PF4 and PF5). iSCSI and FCoE boot is limited to a single target per boot session. iSCSI boot target LUN support is limited to LUN ID 0 only.
- When the **Virtualization Mode** is set to **None** or **SR-IOV**, boot from SAN is not supported.

# Glossary

## ACPI

The *Advanced Configuration and Power Interface (ACPI)* specification provides an open standard for unified operating system-centric device configuration and power management. The ACPI defines platform-independent interfaces for hardware discovery, configuration, power management, and monitoring. The specification is central to operating system-directed configuration and Power Management (OSPM), a term used to describe a system implementing ACPI, which therefore removes device management responsibilities from legacy firmware interfaces.

## adapter

The board that interfaces between the host system and the target devices. Adapter is synonymous with Host Bus Adapter, host adapter, and board.

## adapter port

A port on the adapter board.

## Advanced Configuration and Power Interface

See [ACPI](#).

## bandwidth

A measure of the volume of data that can be transmitted at a specific transmission rate. A 1Gbps or 2Gbps Fibre Channel port can transmit or receive at nominal rates of 1 or 2Gbps, depending on the device to which it is connected. This corresponds to actual bandwidth values of 106MB and 212MB, respectively.

## BAR

Base address register. Used to hold memory addresses used by a device, or offsets for port addresses. Typically, memory address BARs must be located in physical RAM while I/O space BARs can reside at any memory address (even beyond physical memory).

## base address register

See [BAR](#).

## basic input output system

See [BIOS](#).

## BIOS

Basic input output system. Typically in Flash PROM, the program (or utility) that serves as an interface between the hardware and the operating system and allows booting from the adapter at startup.

## data center bridging

See [DCB](#).

### **data center bridging exchange**

See [DCBX](#).

### **DCB**

Data center bridging. Provides enhancements to existing 802.1 bridge specifications to satisfy the requirements of protocols and applications in the data center. Because existing high-performance data centers typically comprise multiple application-specific networks that run on different link layer technologies (Fibre Channel for storage and Ethernet for network management and LAN connectivity), DCB enables 802.1 bridges to be used for the deployment of a converged network where all applications can be run over a single physical infrastructure.

### **DCBX**

Data center bridging exchange. A protocol used by [DCB](#) devices to exchange configuration information with directly connected peers. The protocol may also be used for misconfiguration detection and for configuration of the peer.

### **device**

A [target](#), typically a disk drive. Hardware such as a disk drive, tape drive, printer, or keyboard that is installed in or connected to a system. In Fibre Channel, a *target device*.

### **DHCP**

Dynamic host configuration protocol. Enables computers on an IP network to extract their configuration from servers that have information about the computer only after it is requested.

### **driver**

The software that interfaces between the file system and a physical data storage device or network media.

### **dynamic host configuration protocol**

See [DHCP](#).

### **eCore**

A layer between the OS and the hardware and firmware. It is device-specific and OS-agnostic. When eCore code requires OS services (for example, for memory allocation, PCI configuration space access, and so on) it calls an abstract OS function that is implemented in OS-specific layers. eCore flows may be driven by the hardware (for example, by an interrupt) or by the OS-specific portion of the driver (for example, loading and unloading the load and unload).

### **EEE**

Energy-efficient Ethernet. A set of enhancements to the twisted-pair and backplane Ethernet family of computer networking standards that allows for less power consumption during periods of low data activity. The intention was to reduce power consumption by 50 percent or more, while retaining full compatibility with existing equipment. The Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers (IEEE), through the IEEE 802.3az task force, developed the standard.

### **EFI**

Extensible firmware interface. A specification that defines a software interface between an operating system and platform firmware. EFI is a replacement for the older BIOS firmware interface present in all IBM PC-compatible personal computers.

### **energy-efficient Ethernet**

See [EEE](#).

### **enhanced transmission selection**

See [ETS](#).

## **Ethernet**

The most widely used LAN technology that transmits information between computers, typically at speeds of 10 and 100 million bits per second (Mbps).

## **ETS**

Enhanced transmission selection. A standard that specifies the enhancement of transmission selection to support the allocation of bandwidth among traffic classes. When the offered load in a traffic class does not use its allocated bandwidth, enhanced transmission selection allows other traffic classes to use the available bandwidth. The bandwidth-allocation priorities coexist with strict priorities. ETS includes managed objects to support bandwidth allocation. For more information, refer to:

<http://ieee802.org/1/pages/802.1az.html>

## **extensible firmware interface**

See [EFI](#).

## **FCoE**

Fibre Channel over Ethernet. A new technology defined by the T11 standards body that allows traditional Fibre Channel storage networking traffic to travel over an Ethernet link by encapsulating Fibre Channel frames inside Layer 2 Ethernet frames. For more information, visit [www.fcoe.com](http://www.fcoe.com).

## **Fibre Channel over Ethernet**

See [FCoE](#).

## **file transfer protocol**

See [FTP](#).

## **FTP**

File transfer protocol. A standard network protocol used to transfer files from one host to another host over a TCP-based network, such as the Internet. FTP is required for out-of-band firmware uploads that will complete faster than in-band firmware uploads.

## **human interface infrastructure**

See [HII](#).

## **HII**

Human interface infrastructure. A specification (part of UEFI 2.1) for managing user input, localized strings, fonts, and forms, that allows OEMs to develop graphical interfaces for preboot configuration.

## **IEEE**

Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers. An international nonprofit organization for the advancement of technology related to electricity.

## **Internet Protocol**

See [IP](#).

## **Internet small computer system interface**

See [iSCSI](#).

## **Internet wide area RDMA protocol**

See [iWARP](#).

## **IP**

Internet protocol. A method by which data is sent from one computer to another over the Internet. IP specifies the format of packets, also called *datagrams*, and the addressing scheme.

## **IQN**

iSCSI qualified name. iSCSI node name based on the initiator manufacturer and a unique device name section.

### iSCSI

Internet small computer system interface. Protocol that encapsulates data into IP packets to send over Ethernet connections.

### iSCSI qualified name

See [IQN](#).

### iWARP

Internet wide area [RDMA](#) protocol. A networking protocol that implements RDMA for efficient data transfer over IP networks. iWARP is designed for multiple environments, including LANs, storage networks, data center networks, and WANs.

### jumbo frames

Large IP frames used in high-performance networks to increase performance over long distances. Jumbo frames generally means 9,000 bytes for Gigabit [Ethernet](#), but can refer to anything over the IP [MTU](#), which is 1,500 bytes on an Ethernet.

### large send offload

See [LSO](#).

### Layer 2

Refers to the data link layer of the multilayered communication model, Open Systems Interconnection (OSI). The function of the data link layer is to move data across the physical links in a network, where a switch redirects data messages at the Layer 2 level using the destination MAC address to determine the message destination.

### Link Layer Discovery Protocol

See [LLDP](#).

### LLDP

A vendor-neutral Layer 2 protocol that allows a network device to advertise its identity and capabilities on the local network. This protocol supersedes proprietary protocols like Cisco Discovery Protocol, Extreme Discovery Protocol, and Nortel Discovery Protocol (also known as SONMP).

Information gathered with LLDP is stored in the device and can be queried using SNMP. The topology of a LLDP-enabled network can be discovered by crawling the hosts and querying this database.

### LSO

Large send offload. LSO Ethernet adapter feature that allows the TCP/IP network stack to build a large (up to 64KB) TCP message before sending it to the adapter. The adapter hardware segments the message into smaller data packets (frames) that can be sent over the wire: up to 1,500 bytes for standard Ethernet frames and up to 9,000 bytes for jumbo Ethernet frames. The segmentation process frees up the server CPU from having to segment large TCP messages into smaller packets that will fit inside the supported frame size.

### maximum transmission unit

See [MTU](#).

### message signaled interrupts

See [MSI](#), [MSI-X](#).

### **MSI, MSI-X**

Message signaled interrupts. One of two PCI-defined extensions to support message signaled interrupts (MSIs), in PCI 2.2 and later and PCI Express. MSIs are an alternative way of generating an interrupt through special messages that allow emulation of a pin assertion or deassertion.

MSI-X (defined in PCI 3.0) allows a device to allocate any number of interrupts between 1 and 2,048 and gives each interrupt separate data and address registers. Optional features in MSI (64-bit addressing and interrupt masking) are mandatory with MSI-X.

### **MTU**

Maximum transmission unit. Refers to the size (in bytes) of the largest packet (IP datagram) that a specified layer of a communications protocol can transfer.

### **network interface card**

See [NIC](#).

### **NIC**

Network interface card. Computer card installed to enable a dedicated network connection.

### **NIC partitioning**

See [NPAR](#).

### **non-volatile random access memory**

See [NVRAM](#).

### **non-volatile memory express**

See [NVMe](#).

### **NPAR**

[NIC](#) partitioning. The division of a single NIC port into multiple physical functions or partitions, each with a user-configurable bandwidth and personality (interface type). Personalities include [NIC](#), [FCoE](#), and [iSCSI](#).

### **NVRAM**

Non-volatile random access memory. A type of memory that retains data (configuration settings) even when power is removed. You can manually configure NVRAM settings or restore them from a file.

### **NVMe**

A storage access method designed for solid-state drives (SSDs).

### **OFED™**

OpenFabrics Enterprise Distribution. An open source software for RDMA and kernel bypass applications.

### **PCI™**

Peripheral component interface. A 32-bit local bus specification introduced by Intel®.

### **PCI Express (PCIe)**

A third-generation I/O standard that allows enhanced Ethernet network performance beyond that of the older peripheral component interconnect (PCI) and PCI extended (PCI-X) desktop and server slots.

### **QoS**

Quality of service. Refers to the methods used to prevent bottlenecks and ensure business continuity when transmitting data over virtual ports by setting priorities and allocating bandwidth.

**quality of service**

See [QoS](#).

**PF**

Physical function.

**RDMA**

Remote direct memory access. The ability for one node to write directly to the memory of another (with address and size semantics) over a network. This capability is an important feature of [VI](#) networks.

**reduced instruction set computer**

See [RISC](#).

**remote direct memory access**

See [RDMA](#).

**RISC**

Reduced instruction set computer. A computer microprocessor that performs fewer types of computer instructions, thereby operating at higher speeds.

**RDMA over Converged Ethernet**

See [RoCE](#).

**RoCE**

RDMA over Converged Ethernet. A network protocol that allows remote direct memory access (RDMA) over a converged or a non-converged Ethernet network. RoCE is a link layer protocol that allows communication between any two hosts in the same Ethernet broadcast domain.

**SCSI**

Small computer system interface. A high-speed interface used to connect devices, such as hard drives, CD drives, printers, and scanners, to a computer. The SCSI can connect many devices using a single controller. Each device is accessed by an individual identification number on the SCSI controller bus.

**SerDes**

Serializer/deserializer. A pair of functional blocks commonly used in high-speed communications to compensate for limited input/output. These blocks convert data between serial data and parallel interfaces in each direction.

**serializer/deserializer**

See [SerDes](#).

**single root input/output virtualization**

See [SR-IOV](#).

**small computer system interface**

See [SCSI](#).

**SR-IOV**

Single root input/output virtualization. A specification by the PCI SIG that enables a single PCIe device to appear as multiple, separate physical PCIe devices. SR-IOV permits isolation of PCIe resources for performance, interoperability, and manageability.

**target**

The storage-device endpoint of a SCSI session. Initiators request data from targets. Targets are typically disk-drives, tape-drives, or other media devices. Typically a SCSI peripheral device is the target but an adapter may, in some cases, be a target. A target can contain many LUNs.

A target is a device that responds to a requested by an initiator (the host system). Peripherals are targets, but for some commands (for example, a SCSI COPY command), the peripheral may act as an initiator.

## **TCP**

Transmission control protocol. A set of rules to send data in packets over the Internet protocol.

## **TCP/IP**

Transmission control protocol/Internet protocol. Basic communication language of the Internet.

## **TLV**

Type-length-value. Optional information that may be encoded as an element inside of the protocol. The type and length fields are fixed in size (typically 1–4 bytes), and the value field is of variable size. These fields are used as follows:

- **Type**—A numeric code that indicates the kind of field that this part of the message represents.
- **Length**—The size of the value field (typically in bytes).
- **Value**—Variable-sized set of bytes that contains data for this part of the message.

## **transmission control protocol**

See [TCP](#).

## **transmission control protocol/Internet protocol**

See [TCP/IP](#).

## **type-length-value**

See [TLV](#).

## **UDP**

User datagram protocol. A connectionless transport protocol without any guarantee of packet sequence or delivery. It functions directly on top of IP.

## **UEFI**

Unified extensible firmware interface. A specification detailing an interface that helps hand off control of the system for the preboot environment (that is, after the system is powered on, but before the operating system starts) to an operating system, such as Windows or Linux. UEFI provides a clean interface between operating systems and platform firmware at boot time, and supports an architecture-independent mechanism for initializing add-in cards.

## **unified extensible firmware interface**

See [UEFI](#).

## **user datagram protocol**

See [UDP](#).

## **VF**

Virtual function.

## **VI**

Virtual interface. An initiative for remote direct memory access across Fibre Channel and other communication protocols. Used in clustering and messaging.

## **virtual interface**

See [VI](#).

## **virtual logical area network**

See [VLAN](#).

## **virtual machine**

See [VM](#).



## **VLAN**

Virtual logical area network (LAN). A group of hosts with a common set of requirements that communicate as if they were attached to the same wire, regardless of their physical location. Although a VLAN has the same attributes as a physical LAN, it allows for end stations to be grouped together even if they are not located on the same LAN segment. VLANs enable network reconfiguration through software, instead of physically relocating devices.

## **VM**

Virtual machine. A software implementation of a machine (computer) that executes programs like a real machine.

## **wake on LAN**

See [WoL](#).

## **WoL**

Wake on LAN. An Ethernet computer networking standard that allows a computer to be remotely switched on or awakened by a network message sent usually by a simple program executed on another computer on the network.



**Corporate Headquarters** Cavium, Inc. 2315 N. First Street San Jose, CA 95131 408-943-7100

**International Offices** UK | Ireland | Germany | France | India | Japan | China | Hong Kong | Singapore | Taiwan | Israel

---

Copyright © 2017, 2018 Cavium, Inc. All rights reserved worldwide. QLogic Corporation is a wholly owned subsidiary of Cavium, Inc. QLogic, FastLinQ, QConvergeConsole, and QLogic Control Suite are registered trademarks or trademarks of Cavium, Inc. All other brand and product names are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective owners.

This document is provided for informational purposes only and may contain errors. Cavium reserves the right, without notice, to make changes to this document or in product design or specifications. Cavium disclaims any warranty of any kind, expressed or implied, and does not guarantee that any results or performance described in the document will be achieved by you. All statements regarding Cavium's future direction and intent are subject to change or withdrawal without notice and represent goals and objectives only.

